AIP

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION PUBLICATION

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

SEVENTEENTH EDITION

20 FEBRUARY 2003

CONSULT NOTAM FOR LATEST INFORMATION

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

AIP

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION PUBLICATION

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

PART 1

GENERAL (GEN)

PART 1 − GENERAL (GEN)

GEN 0.

GEN 0.1 Preface

1. Name of the Publishing Authority

1.1 The United States of America Aeronautical Information Publication (AIP) is published by the authority of the Federal Aviation Administration.

2. Applicable ICAO Documents

2.1 The AIP is prepared in accordance with the Standards and Recommended Practices (SARP) of Annex 15 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation and the Aeronautical Information Services Manual (ICAO Doc 8126). Charts contained in the AIP are produced in accordance with Annex 4 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation and the Aeronautical Chart Manual (ICAO Doc 8697). Differences from ICAO Standards, Recommended Practices and Procedures are given in subsection GEN 1.7.

3. The AIP Structure and Established Regular Amendment Interval

3.1 The AIP structure

The AIP is made up of three Parts; General (GEN), En Route (ENR), and Aerodromes (AD); each divided into sections and subsections as applicable, containing various types of information subjects.

3.1.1 Part 1 − General (GEN)

Part 1 consists of five sections containing information as briefly described hereafter:

3.1.1.1 GEN 0. − Preface; Record of AIP Amendments; Checklist of AIP Pages; and Table of Contents to Part 1.

3.1.1.2 GEN 1. National Regulations and Requirements – Designated Authorities; Entry, Transit, and Departure of Aircraft; Entry, Transit, and Departure of Passengers and Crew; Entry, Transit, and Departure of Cargo; Aircraft Instruments, Equipment, and Flight Documents; Summary of National Regulations and International Agreements/Conventions; and Differences from ICAO Standards, Recommended Practices, and Procedures.

3.1.1.3 GEN 2. Tables and Codes − Measuring System, Time System, Aircraft Markings; Abbreviations Used in AIS Publications; Chart Symbols; Location Indicators; List of Radio Navigation Aids; Conversion Tables; and Sunrise/Sunset Tables.

3.1.1.4 GEN 3. Services − Aeronautical Information Services; Aeronautical Charts; Air Traffic Services; Communication Services; Meteorological Services; and Search and Rescue.

3.1.1.5 GEN 4. Charges for Aerodromes/Heliports and Air Navigation Services − Fees and Charges; and Air Navigation Facility Charges.

3.1.2 Part 2 − En Route (ENR)

Part 2 consists of six sections containing information as briefly described hereafter:

3.1.2.1 ENR 0. − Checklist of AIP Pages; and the Table of Contents to Part 2.

3.1.2.2 ENR 1. General Rules and Procedures – General Rules; Visual Flight Rules; Instrument Flight Rules; ATS Airspace Classification; Holding, Approach, and Departure Procedures; Radar Services and Procedures; Altimeter Setting Procedures; Flight Planning; Interception of Civil Aircraft; Medical Facts for Pilots; and Safety, Hazard and Accident Reports.

3.1.2.3 ENR 2. Air Traffic Services Airspace.

3.1.2.4 ENR 3. ATS routes − Area Navigation Routes; and Other Routes.

3.1.2.5 ENR 4. Radio Navigation Aids/Systems – Radio Navigation Aids – En Route; and Special Navigation Systems.

3.1.2.6 ENR 5. Navigation Warnings − Prohibited, Restricted, and Other Areas; Military Exercise and Training Areas; Bird Migration and Areas with Sensitive Fauna; and Potential Flight Hazards.

3.1.3 Part 3 − Aerodromes (AD)

Part 3 consists of three sections containing information as briefly described hereafter:

3.1.3.1 AD 0. − Checklist of AIP Pages; and Table of Contents to Part 3.

3.1.3.2 AD 1. Aerodromes – Introduction − Aerodrome Availability.

3.1.3.3 AD 2. Aerodromes − Listing of Aerodromes.

3.2 Regular Amendment Interval

Regular amendments to the AIP will be issued every 6 months on the dates listed in the following table:

TBL GEN 0.1−1

Publication Schedule		
New Edition or Amendment	**Cutoff Date for Submission**	**Effective Date of Publication**
Seventeenth Edition	8/8/02	2/20/03
Amendment 1	2/20/03	8/7/03
Amendment 2	8/7/03	2/19/04
Amendment 3	2/19/04	8/5/04

4. Service to Contact in Case of Detected AIP Errors or Omissions

4.1 In the compilation of the AIP, care has been taken to ensure that the information contained therein is accurate and complete. Any errors and omissions which may be detected, as well as any correspondence concerning the Aeronautical Information Publication, should be referred to:

Federal Aviation Administration
Air Traffic Publications, ATA−10
800 Independence Avenue, S.W.
Washington DC 20591
USA

5. Subscription Information

5.1 The AIP is offered for sale on a subscription basis from:

Superintendent of Documents
U.S. Government Printing Office
P.O. Box 371954
Pittsburgh, PA 15250−7954

Telephone (202) 512−1800

The AIP may be ordered via the internet at:
html://www.access.gpo.gov/su_docs/

GEN 0.2 Record of AIP Amendments

AIP Amendments			
Amendment Number	**Effective Date**	**Date Inserted**	**Inserted By**

GEN 0.3 Record of AIP Supplements - Not applicable

GEN 0.4 Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
PART 1 - GENERAL (GEN)	
GEN 0	
0.1-1	20 FEB 03
0.1-2	20 FEB 03
0.2-1	20 FEB 03
0.4-1	5 AUG 04
0.4-2	5 AUG 04
0.4-3	5 AUG 04
0.6-1	20 FEB 03
GEN 1	
1.1-1	20 FEB 03
1.1-2	20 FEB 03
1.1-3	20 FEB 03
1.1-4	20 FEB 03
1.2-1	20 FEB 03
1.2-2	20 FEB 03
1.2-3	20 FEB 03
1.2-4	20 FEB 03
1.2-5	20 FEB 03
1.2-6	20 FEB 03
1.2-7	20 FEB 03
1.2-8	20 FEB 03
1.2-9	20 FEB 03
1.3-1	20 FEB 03
1.3-2	20 FEB 03
1.3-3	20 FEB 03
1.4-1	20 FEB 03
1.4-2	20 FEB 03
1.4-3	20 FEB 03
1.4-4	20 FEB 03
1.5-1	20 FEB 03
1.6-1	20 FEB 03
1.6-2	20 FEB 03
1.7-1	20 FEB 03
1.7-2	20 FEB 03
1.7-3	20 FEB 03
1.7-4	20 FEB 03
1.7-5	20 FEB 03
1.7-6	20 FEB 03

PAGE	DATE
1.7-7	20 FEB 03
1.7-8	20 FEB 03
1.7-9	20 FEB 03
1.7-10	20 FEB 03
1.7-1 1	20 FEB 03
1.7-12	20 FEB 03
1.7-13	20 FEB 03
1.7-14	20 FEB 03
1.7-15	20 FEB 03
1.7-16	20 FEB 03
1.7-17	20 FEB 03
1.7-18	20 FEB 03
1.7-19	20 FEB 03
1.7-20	20 FEB 03
1.7-21	20 FEB 03
1.7-22	20 FEB 03
1.7-23	20 FEB 03
1.7-24	20 FEB 03
1.7-25	20 FEB 03
1.7-26	20 FEB 03
1.7-27	20 FEB 03
1.7-28	20 FEB 03
1.7-29	20 FEB 03
1.7-30	20 FEB 03
1.7-31	20 FEB 03
1.7-32	20 FEB 03
1.7-33	20 FEB 03
1.7-34	20 FEB 03
1.7-35	20 FEB 03
1.7-36	20 FEB 03
1.7-37	20 FEB 03
1.7-38	20 FEB 03
1.7-39	20 FEB 03
1.7-40	20 FEB 03
1.7-41	20 FEB 03
1.7-42	20 FEB 03
1.7-43	20 FEB 03
1.7-44	20 FEB 03
1.7-45	20 FEB 03

PAGE	DATE
1.7-46	20 FEB 03
1.7-47	20 FEB 03
1.7-48	20 FEB 03
1.7-49	20 FEB 03
1.7-50	20 FEB 03
1.7-51	20 FEB 03
1.7-52	20 FEB 03
1.7-53	20 FEB 03
1.7-54	20 FEB 03
1.7-55	20 FEB 03
1.7-56	20 FEB 03
1.7-57	20 FEB 03
1.7-58	20 FEB 03
1.7-59	20 FEB 03
1.7-60	20 FEB 03
1.7-61	20 FEB 03
1.7-62	20 FEB 03
1.7-63	20 FEB 03
1.7-64	20 FEB 03
1.7-65	5 AUG 04
1.7-66	5 AUG 04
1.7-67	20 FEB 03
GEN 2	
2.1-1	20 FEB 03
2.1-2	20 FEB 03
2.2-1	7 AUG 03
2.2-2	7 AUG 03
2.2-3	20 FEB 03
2.2-4	20 FEB 03
2.2-5	20 FEB 03
2.3-1	20 FEB 03
2.4-1	20 FEB 03
2.5-1	20 FEB 03
2.6-1	20 FEB 03
2.6-2	20 FEB 03
2.6-3	20 FEB 03
2.6-4	20 FEB 03
2.6-5	20 FEB 03
2.6-6	20 FEB 03

PAGE	DATE
3.6-1 1	20 FEB 03
3.6-12	20 FEB 03
3.6-13	20 FEB 03
3.6-14	20 FEB 03
3.6-15	20 FEB 03
3.6-16	20 FEB 03
3.6-17	20 FEB 03
3.6-18	20 FEB 03
3.6-19	20 FEB 03
3.6-20	20 FEB 03
3.7-1	20 FEB 03
3.7-2	20 FEB 03
GEN 4	
4.1-1	20 FEB 03
4.2-1	20 FEB 03

PAGE	DATE

PAGE	DATE

GEN 0.5 List of Hand Amendments to the AIP − Not applicable

GEN 0.6 Table of Contents to Part 1

GEN 1. NATIONAL REGULATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS

GEN 1.1 Designated Authorities

1. Introduction

1.1 The requirements for entry and departure of aircraft engaged in international flights and the standard procedure for clearance of these aircraft at all international airports are given for the information and guidance of operators conducting international flights. The information contained in this section does not replace, amend or change in any manner, the current regulations of the designated authorities, listed below, which are of concern to international air travel.

2. Designated Authorities

2.1 The postal, telex and telegraphic addresses of the designated authorities concerned with the entry, transit, and departures of international air travel are as follows:

Customs
Postal Address: Department of the Treasury U.S. Customs Service 1300 Pennsylvania Ave., NW Washington, DC 20229
Telephone: 202−927−6724
Commercial Telegraphic Address: None

Immigrations
Postal Address: Department of Justice Immigration and Naturalization Service 425 I Street, NW Washington, D.C. 20001
Telephone: 202−514−2000
Telex: None
Commercial Telegraphic Address: None

Health
Postal Address: Center for Disease Control Quarantine Division Atlanta, Georgia 30333
Telephone: 404−639−3311
Fax: 404−639−2599
Commercial Telegraphic Address: None

Agriculture Quarantine
Postal Address: Department of Agriculture Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service 4700 River Road, Unit 38 Riverdale, MD 20737
Telephone: 301−734−7799
Fax: 301−734−3222
Commercial Telegraphic Address: None

Regulations Governing Air Carriers
Postal Address: Department of Transportation Office of The Secretary Office of International Aviation 400 7th St. SW Washington, D.C. 20590
Telephone: 202−366−2423
Fax: 202−366−3694
Commercial Telegraphic Address: (MARAD WASH) Attention Office of International Aviation X−40

Regulations Governing Export of Aircraft and Commodities
Postal Address: Department of Commerce Bureau of Export Administration 14th and Constitution Ave., NW Washington, D.C. 20230
Telephone: 202−482−3881
Fax: 202−482−3322
Commercial Telegraphic Address: None

Regulations Governing Firearms (Import)
Postal Address: Department of the Treasury Internal Revenue Service Director of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms Division 650 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Washington, D.C. 20226
Telephone: 202−927−7777
Fax: 202−927−7862
Commercial Telegraphic Address: None

Regulations Governing Military Type Hardware (Export)
Postal Address: Department of State Defense Trade Center 1701 North Fort Myers Drive Rosslyn, Virginia 22209
Telephone: 703−875−6650
Fax: 703−875−5663
Commercial Telegraphic Address: None

3. Applicable ICAO Documents

3.1 National regulations and practices concerning facilitation of international air transport are being carried out at all international airports as far as possible in accordance with the provisions set forth in the Standards and Recommended Practices of Annex 9 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation. Differences from certain Annex 9 provisions exist only in those cases where it has not yet been possible to amend national legislation accordingly. Continuous efforts are being made to eliminate these differences.

4. Customs Offices Service/Area Port Directors

4.1 Address all correspondence to the Service/Area Port Director of Customs at the following locations:

Location	Address
Anchorage	605 W Fourth Avenue Anchorage, AK 99501
Atlanta	700 Doug Davis Drive Atlanta, GA 30354
Baltimore	40 S Gay Street Baltimore, MD 21202
Baton Rouge	5353 Essen Lane Baton Rouge, LA 70809
Blaine	9901 Pacific Highway Blaine, WA 98230
Boston	10 Causeway Street, Suite 603 Boston, MA 22220
Buffalo	111 W Huron Street Buffalo, NY 14202
Calais	1 Main Street Calais, ME 46190
Calexico	P.O. Box 632 Calexico, CA 92231
Champlain	198 W Service Road Champlain, NY 12919
Charleston	200 E Bay Street Charleston, SC 29401
Charlotte	1901 Cross Beam Drive Charlotte, NC 28217
Charlotte/ Amalie	Main Post Office Sugar Estate St. Thomas, USVI 00801
Chicago	610 S Canal Street Chicago, IL 60607
Christiansted	1B La Grande Princess, P.O. Box 249 Christiansted, St. Croix USVI 00820
Cleveland	6747 Engle Road Middleburg Heights, OH 44130
Dallas/Ft. Worth	P.O. Box 619050 DFW Airport, TX 75261
Denver	4735 Oakland Street Denver, CO 80239
Derby Line	Interstate 91 Derby Line, VT 58300
Detroit	477 Michigan Avenue, Suite 200 Detroit, MI 48226
Douglas	First Street & Pan American Avenue Douglas, AZ 85607
Duluth	515 W First Street Duluth, MN 55801
El Paso	797 S Saragosa Road El Paso, TX 79907
Grand Rapids	Kent County Airport Grand Rapids, MI 49512
Great Falls	300 Second Avenue South Great Falls, MT 59405
Greenville/ Spartansburg	150−A W Phillips Road Greer, SC 29650
Harrisburg	Harrisburg International Airport Building 135 Middletown, PA 17057
Hartford	135 High Street Hartford, CT 61030
Highgate Springs	RR 2 Box 170 Swanton, VT 54880
Honolulu	335 Merchant Street Honolulu, HI 96813
Houlton	RR 3 Box 5300 Houlton, ME 47300
Houston/ Galveston	2350 N Sam Houston Parkway East, Suite 1000 Houston, TX 77032
Jacksonville	2831 Talleyrand Avenue Jacksonville, FL 32206

Location	Address
Kansas City	2701 Rockcreek Parkway, Suite 202 N Kansas City, MO 64116
Laredo/ Colombia	P.O. Box 3130 Laredo, TX 78044
Los Angeles/ Airport Area	11099 S La Cienega Boulevard Los Angeles, CA 90045
Los Angeles/ Long Beach Seaport Area	300 S. Ferry Street Terminal Island, CA 90731
Louisville	601 W Broadway Louisville, KY 40202
Miami Airport	6601 W 25th Street Miami, FL 33102
Miami Seaport	1500 Port Boulevard Miami, FL 33132
Milwaukee	6269 Ace Industries Drive Cudahy, WI 53110
Minneapolis	330 Second Avenue South, Suite 560 Minneapolis, MN 55401
Mobile	150 N Royal Street, Room 3004 Mobile, AL 36602
Nashville	P.O. Box 270008 Nashville, TN 37227
New Orleans	423 Canal Street New Orleans, LA 70130
New York	6 World Trade Center New York, NY 10048
New York/JFK Area	Building 77 Jamaica, NY 11430
New York/ Newark Area	1210 Corbin Street Elizabeth, NJ 07201
Nogales	9 N Grand Avenue Nogales, AZ 85621
Norfolk	200 Granby Street, Suite 839 Norfolk, VA 23510
Ogdensburg	127 N Water Street Ogdensburg, NY 13669
Orlando	5390 Bear Road Orlando, FL 32827
Oroville	Rt 1 Box 130 Oroville, WA 98844
Otay Mesa	9777 Via De La Amistad San Diego, CA 92173
Pembina	122 W Stutsman Pembina, ND 58271

Location	Address
Philadelphia	Second and Chestnut Streets Philadelphia, PA 19106
Phoenix	1315 S 27th Street Phoenix, AZ 85034
Port Huron	526 Water Street Port Huron, MI 48060
Portland, ME	312 Fore Street Portland, ME 04101
Portland, OR	P.O. Box 55580 Portland, OR 97238−5580
Providence	49 Pavilion Avenue Providence, RI 02905
Raleigh/Durham	120 Southcenter Court, Suite 500 Morrisville, NC 27560
Richmond	4501 Williamsburg Road, Suite G Richmond, VA 23231
San Antonio	9800 Airport Boulevard, Suite 1103 San Antonio, TX 78216
San Francisco	555 Battery Street San Francisco, CA 94126
San Juan	#1 La Puntilla San Juan, PR 00901
San Luis	P.O. Box H San Luis, AZ 85349
San Ysidro	720 E San Ysidro Boulevard San Ysidro, CA 92173
Sault Ste Marie	International Bridge Plaza Sault Ste Marie, MI 49783
Savannah	One East Bay Street Savannah, GA 31401
Seattle	1000 Second Avenue, Suite 2100 Seattle, WA 98104
St. Albans	P.O. Box 1490 St. Albans, VT 05478
St. Louis	4477 Woodson Road St. Louis, MO 63134
Syracuse	4034 S Service Road N Syracuse, NY 13212
Tacoma	2202 Port of Tacoma Road Tacoma, WA 98421
Tampa	1624 E 7th Avenue, Suite 101 Tampa, FL 33605
Tucson	7150 S Tucson Boulevard Tucson, AZ 85706
Washington, DC	P.O. Box 17423 Washington, DC 20041
Wilmington, NC	One Virginia Avenue Wilmington, NC 28401

5. Customs Management Centers

5.1 Address all correspondence to the Customs Management Centers' Directors at the following locations:

Arizona	4740 North Oracle Road Suite 310 Tucson, AZ 85705
Caribbean Area	#1 La Puntilla Street Room 203 San Juan, PR 00901
East Great Lakes	4455 Genesee Street Buffalo, NY 14225
East Texas	2323 S Shepard Street Suite 1200 Houston, TX 77019
Gulf	423 Canal Street, Room 337 New Orleans, LA 70130
Mid America	610 S Canal Street, Suite 900 Chicago, IL 60607
Mid Atlantic	103 S Gay Street, Suite 208 Baltimore, MD 21202
Mid Pacific	33 New Montgomery Street Suite 1601 San Francisco, CA 94105
New York	6 World Trade Center Room 716 New York, NY 10048
North Atlantic	10 Causeway Street, Room 801 Boston, MA 02222
North Florida	1624 E Seventh Avenue Suite 301 Tampa, FL 33605
North Pacific	8337 NE Alderwood Road Room 200 Mailing Address: P.O. Box 55700 Portland, OR 97238−5700
Northwest Great Plains	1000 Second Avenue, Suite 2200 Seattle, WA 98104
South Atlantic	1691 Phoenix Boulevard Suite 270 College Park, GA 30349
South Florida	909 SE First Avenue, Suite 980 Miami, FL 33131
South Pacific	One World Trade Center P.O. Box 32639 Long Beach, CA 90815
South Texas	P.O. Box 3130, Building #2 Lincoln−Juarez Bridge Laredo, TX 78044
Southern California	610 W Ash Street, Suite 1200 San Diego, CA 92101
West Great Lakes	613 Abbott Street, 3rd Floor Detroit, MI 48226
West Texas/New Mexico	9400 Viscount Boulevard Suite 104 El Paso, TX 79925

6. Customs Headquarters

6.1 Address all correspondence to:

Commissioner of Customs
1300 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20229.

GEN 1.2 Entry, Transit, and Departure of Aircraft

1. General

1.1 All flights into or over the territories of the U.S. and landing in such territories shall be carried out in accordance with the regulations of the U.S. regarding civil aviation.

1.2 Aircraft landing in or departing from the territories of the U.S. must first land at, or finally depart from, an international airport (see AD 2) except as may be otherwise noted in this section.

1.3 All aircraft entering the U.S. must land at a designated international airport of entry unless prior approval to land at a landing rights or other airport has been obtained from U.S. Customs. The terms "international airport of entry" refers to any airport designated by the Secretary of the Treasury or the Commissioner of Customs as a port of entry for civil aircraft arriving in the U.S. from any place outside thereof and for cargo carried on such aircraft. (Note: Frequently the word "international" is included in the name of an airport for other than Customs purposes, in which case it has no special Customs meaning.) The term "landing rights airport" refers to an airport of entry at which permission to land must be granted by the appropriate Customs officer with acknowledgement of the Immigration and Naturalization Service, the Public Health Service, and the Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service of the Department of Agriculture. Such landing rights are required before an aircraft may land at an airport which has not been designated for Customs purposes as an international airport of entry. In the case of scheduled aircraft, such permission shall be obtained from the Service/Area Director of Customs of the Port (see GEN 1.1, paragraph 4) where the first landing will occur. In all other cases, including private aircraft, landing permission may be obtained from the Port Director of Customs (see GEN 1.1) or the Customs officer in charge of the port of entry or Customs station nearest the intended place of landing. All persons entering the U.S. must be inspected for U.S. Customs, Immigration, and Public Health purposes.

1.4 Subject to the observance of the applicable rules, conditions, and limitations of the Federal Aviation Regulations and the Department of Transportation (DOT)/Office of the Secretary of Transportation (OST), Office of International Aviation, as described below, foreign civil aircraft registered and manufactured in any foreign country which is a member of the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) may be navigated in the U.S. Foreign civil aircraft manufactured in a country which at the time of manufacture was not a member of ICAO may be navigated in the U.S. if the country has notified ICAO that the aircraft meets the standards described in the Chicago Convention or if a notice has been filed with the DOT/OST, Office of International Aviation, through diplomatic channels, that the aircraft meets the standards described in the Chicago Convention.

1.5 Aircraft registered under the laws of foreign countries, not members of the ICAO, may be navigated in U.S. territory only when authorized by the DOT/OST, Office of International Aviation.

1.6 All foreign civil aircraft operated to, from, or within the U.S. must carry on board effective certificates of registration and air worthiness issued by the country of registry. Also, each member of the flight crew must carry a valid airman certificate or license authorizing that member to perform their assigned functions in the aircraft.

1.7 Transportation of firearms by aircraft passengers. Regulations of the Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms Division of the Internal Revenue Service make it unlawful for any person knowingly to deliver or cause to be delivered to any common or contract carrier for transportation or shipment in interstate or foreign commerce, to persons other than licensed importers, licensed manufacturers, licensed dealers, or licensed collectors, any package or other container in which there is any firearm or ammunition without written notice to the carrier that such firearm or ammunition is being transported or shipped; except that any passenger who owns or legally possesses a firearm or ammunition being transported aboard any common or contract carrier for movement with the passenger in interstate or foreign commerce may deliver said firearm or ammunition into the custody of the pilot, captain, conductor or operator of such common or contract carrier for the duration of the trip.

1.8 Miscellaneous Information

1.8.1 Commercial air transport operators in the U.S. must adhere to Annex 6 − Operation of Aircraft with the proviso that aircraft which have no operators' local representative available to them will be required to carry a fixed fuel reserve of not less than 45 minutes at the approved fuel consumption rate plus a variable reserve equivalent to 15% of the fuel required from departure to destination and to an alternate if an alternate is required; or where the reserve calculated in accordance with the above exceeds two hours at the approved fuel consumption rate − two hours reserve fuel.

2. Scheduled Common Carriage Flights

2.1 General

2.1.1 Generally, when an operator of an aircraft advertises its transportation services to the general public or particular classes or segments of the public for compensation or hire, it is a common carrier. In turn, the transportation service the operator performs is considered to be in common carriage. The scheduled flights into, from and landing in the territory of the U.S. for purposes of loading or unloading passengers, cargo and mail (revenue flights), must first obtain from the U.S. DOT/OST, Office of International Aviation (X−40), a foreign air carrier permit. Applications for common carrier authority must be filed with X−40. If X−40, with the President's approval, determines that the carrier is fit, willing, and able to perform the service it proposes and that the service is in the public interest, X−40 shall issue the carrier a foreign air carrier permit, subject to the disapproval of the President of the U.S.

2.1.2 The scheduled flights in transit across the territory of the U.S. or landing for reasons other than for the purpose of loading and unloading of passengers, cargo or mail (nonrevenue flights), which are registered in a State which is a party to the International Air Services Transit Agreement, shall submit a notice of transit to X−40. The notice of transit must be submitted at least 15 days prior to the flight and must include:

2.1.2.1 Name, country of organization and nationality (including the nationality of all ownership interests) of the operator;

2.1.2.2 Name of the country in which the aircraft to be used in the service is registered;

2.1.2.3 A full description of the proposed operations including the type of operations (passenger, property, mail, or combination), date of commencement, duration and frequency of flights, and routing (including each terminal and intermediate point that will be served);

2.1.2.4 Copies of advertising of the flights, if advertised in the U.S.

2.1.3 If the notice is timely filed, the flights may be operated in the absence of a contrary notification from X−40.

2.1.4 Scheduled flights in transit across the territory of the U.S. or landing for reasons other than for the purpose of loading and unloading of passengers, cargo or mail (nonrevenue flights), which are registered in a State which is not a party to the International Air Services Transit Agreement, must obtain prior permission from X−40 at least 15 days prior to the flight. All permission requests must include the same information as requested in paragraph 2.1.2 (See also paragraph 1.5). The carrier may not transit U.S. territory unless and until it receives a foreign aircraft permit to do so from X−40.

2.1.5 The permission to transit U.S. territory as described above also includes the right to make stops in the U.S. for technical purposes (for example, refueling and servicing of the aircraft) as long as the stopover does not exceed 24 hours. Stopovers which do exceed 24 hours are permitted only in those cases where a transfer of passengers, property or mail to another aircraft is necessary for the safety of the aircraft, passengers, property, or crew. Stopovers for the pleasure or convenience of passengers are not included in the transit authority.

2.2 Documentary Requirements for Clearance of Aircraft

2.2.1 The undermentioned documents must be submitted to U.S. authorities for clearance on entry and departure of aircraft. All documents listed below must follow the ICAO standard format as set forth in the relevant appendixes to Annex 9, and are acceptable only when furnished in English.

2.2.2 Aircraft Documents Required (Arrival and Departure)

TBL GEN 1.2−1

Required by	General Declaration	*Passenger Manifest	Cargo Manifest
Customs Agriculture	1	0	1
Plant and Quarantine	1	0	1
Immigrations	1	0	1
Public Health	1	0	0
Total	4	0	3
*See paragraph 2.4 in GEN 1.3			

2.3 Public Health Measures Applied to Aircraft

2.3.1 At airports without Public Health Service Quarantine staff, the Customs, Immigration, or Agriculture Officer present will represent the Public Health Service.

2.3.2 No public health measures are required to be carried out with respect to aircraft entering U.S. territory except that disinfection of an aircraft may be required if it has left a foreign area that is infected with insect−borne communicable disease and the aircraft is suspected of harboring insects of public health importance. Disinfection is defined as: "The operation in which measures are taken to kill the insect vectors of human disease present in carriers and containers."

2.3.3 Disinfection shall be the responsibility of the air carrier and shall be subject to monitoring by the Director of the Public Health Service.

2.3.4 Disinfection of the aircraft shall be accomplished immediately after landing and blocking. The cargo compartment shall be disinfected before the mail, baggage, and other cargo are discharged and the rest of the aircraft shall be disinfected after passengers and crew deplane.

2.3.5 Disinfection shall be performed with an approved insecticide in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The current list of approved insecticides and sources may be obtained from the Division of Quarantine, Center for Prevention Services, Centers for Disease Control, Atlanta, GA 30333.

2.3.6 All food and potable water taken on board an aircraft at any airport and intended for human consumption thereon shall be obtained from sources approved in accordance with Title 21, Code of Federal Regulations, Parts 1240 and 1250.

2.3.7 Aircraft inbound or outbound on an international flight shall not discharge over the U.S. any excrement or waste water or other polluting materials. Arriving aircraft shall discharge such matter only at servicing areas approved under regulations cited in paragraph 2.3.6 above.

2.3.8 Aircraft on an international voyage, which are in traffic between U.S. airports, shall be subject to inspection when there occurs on board, among passengers or crew, any death, or any ill person, or when illness is suspected to be caused by insanitary conditions.

3. Nonscheduled, Noncommon Carriage Flights

3.1 General

3.1.1 Nonscheduled, noncommon carriage flights are transportation services for remuneration or hire that are not offered to the general public.

3.1.2 Nonscheduled flights in transit across the territory of the U.S. or landing for reasons other than the purposes of loading and unloading passengers, cargo or mail (nonrevenue flights) which are registered in a State which is a member of the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) may do so without the necessity of obtaining prior permission, provided passengers are not permitted to leave the airport during stopover or provided that each stopover does not exceed 24 hours. Stopovers which do exceed 24 hours are permitted only in those cases where a transfer of passengers, property or mail to another aircraft is necessary for the safety of the aircraft, passengers, property, or crew. Stopovers for the pleasure or convenience of passengers are not included in the transit authority.

3.1.3 Nonscheduled flights landing in the territory of the U.S. for reasons of loading or unloading passengers, cargo or mail (revenue flights), must obtain prior permission from the DOT/OST, Office of International Aviation (X−40), at least 15 days prior to the flight. All permission requests must include:

3.1.3.1 Name and address of applicant.

3.1.3.2 Aircraft make, model, and registration or identification marks.

3.1.3.3 Country in which the aircraft is registered.

3.1.3.4 Name and address of registered owner of aircraft.

3.1.3.5 Type of flight(s) (passenger, cargo, or agricultural or industrial operation).

3.1.3.6 Purpose of flight(s).

3.1.3.7 Date of the flight(s).

3.1.3.8 Routing of the flight(s).

3.1.3.9 Number of flights.

3.1.3.10 Name of charterer.

3.1.3.11 Charter price.

3.1.4 Applications should be made on DOT/OST, Office of International Aviation Form 4509; however, if time does not permit, applications by telegram will be accepted as long as they include the information described above. Telegraphic applications must include a prepaid voucher sufficient to allow a sixty word reply. The permit must be carried aboard the aircraft during flight over U.S. territory.

3.2 The following commercial air operations require preflight authorization from X−40:

3.2.1 Agricultural and industrial operations which include, but are not limited to, such services as crop dusting, pest control, pipeline patrols, mapping, surveying, banner towing, or skywriting.

3.2.2 Occasional and infrequent planeload charter flights carrying persons or property to and/or from the U.S. The number of these flights that may be performed is limited to six in any calendar year. Foreign civil aircraft are not permitted to transport persons or property or mail for compensation or hire between points wholly within the U.S.

3.2.3 Continuing cargo operations for one or more contractors. Applicants may be authorized to serve up to 10 different contractors in a 12−month period; however, authorization may be granted only if it is clear that the service is not in common carriage and the carrier and contractor enter into a contract which provides for (a) continuing cargo operations for a period of at least 6 months; (b) an absolute or minimum number of flights or volume of cargo to be transported; and (c) a guarantee by the contractor to the carrier to pay for the minimum number of flights to be performed or volume of cargo to be transported whether or not he/she uses the capacity. Continuing cargo operations wholly within the U.S. cannot be authorized.

3.2.4 Persons wishing to operate foreign civil aircraft from, to, or within the U.S. other than as described in this Section may request permission to perform those services by filing an application with X−40. The application should include the information described above in this section. Permission to perform these services may be granted if X−40 finds that the service is consistent with applicable law and is in the interest of the public of the U.S.

3.2.5 Nonscheduled flights in transit across the territory of the U.S. or landing with or without purposes of loading and unloading passengers, cargo or mail (revenue or nonrevenue flights) which are registered in a State which is not a member of the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) must obtain prior permission from X−40 at least 15 days prior to the flight. All permission requests must include the same information as requested in paragraph 3.1.3. (See also paragraph 1.5).

3.3 Documentary Requirements for Clearance of Aircraft

3.3.1 Same requirements as for scheduled flights; in addition, Customs Form 178 must be filled out for all private aircraft arrivals.

4. Private Flights

4.1 Procedures

4.1.1 If an operator intends to carry out a private flight in transit across the territory of the U.S. without landing, he/she may do so without the necessity of obtaining prior permission.

4.1.2 If an operator intends to carry out a private flight in transit across the territory of the U.S. with intermediate landing, the operator must provide advance notice of arrival to U.S. Customs officials at or nearest the first intended landing. Custom officials, upon notification, will notify the necessary Immigration, Public Health, and Agriculture officials. Advance notice must be received in sufficient time to enable the officials designated to inspect the aircraft to reach the place of landing before the arrival of the aircraft. At least one hour advance notice is required for this purpose during regular business hours. More advance notice may be required during other times (see Aerodrome Section).

4.1.3 Notification of arrival must include:

4.1.3.1 Type of aircraft and registration number.

4.1.3.2 Name of aircraft commander.

4.1.3.3 Number of alien passengers.

4.1.3.4 Number of U.S. citizen passengers.

4.1.3.5 Place of last foreign departure.

4.1.3.6 Estimated time and location of crossing U.S. border/coastline.

4.1.3.7 Name of intended U.S. airport of first landing (designated airport).

4.1.3.8 Estimated time of arrival.

4.1.4 Private aircraft arriving from Canada or Mexico may request that advance notice of arrival to Customs officers be included in the flight plan to be transmitted to a Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) facility which is filed in those countries if destined to an airport in the U.S. where flight notification advise Customs (ADCUS) Service is available. An ADCUS message in the remarks section of the plan consists of the word ADCUS followed by the pilots name and the number of persons on board (POB) with a notation of the number of non−U.S. citizens (i.e.; ADCUS John Doe 5 POB 2 NON). This notification may be provided through FAA; however, this entails the relaying of information and is not as timely or reliable as direct communication. It is recommended that if possible, pilots attempt to communicate directly with Customs by telephone or other means to insure that an officer will be available at the time requested. It is the ultimate responsibility of the pilot to insure Customs is properly notified, and the failure to do so may subject the pilot to penalty action. At those airports where ADCUS service is available, the FAA will forward the ADCUS information to the Customs official on duty. At a landing rights airport such notices will then be treated as an application for permission to land. A flight plan notice must be filed sufficiently before the estimated time of arrival of the flight to permit Customs to make a determination as to whether or not to grant the requested landing rights.

4.1.5 Aircraft may use the following method of notifying Customs when departing from a country or remote area where a pre−departure flight plan cannot be filed or an advise Customs (ADCUS) message cannot be included in a pre−departure flight plan: Call the nearest en route domestic or international FAA flight service station as soon as it is estimated that radio communications can be established and file a VFR or DVFR flight plan and include as the last item the ADCUS information. The station with which such a flight plan is filed will forward it to the appropriate FAA station who will notify the Customs office responsible for the destination airport.

4.1.6 If the pilot fails to include "advise Customs" in the radioed flight plan, it will be assumed that the pilot has made other arrangements, and FAA will not advise Customs.

4.1.7 FAA assumes no responsibility for any delays in advising Customs if the flight plan is given to FAA too late for delivery to Customs before arrival of the aircraft. *It is still the pilot's responsibility to give timely notice even though a flight plan is given to FAA.* FAA cannot relay an "advise Customs" flight plan if the pilot indicates a destination airport where flight service notice to Customs is NOT available. When dependable facilities for giving timely notice of arrival are not available, a landing shall be made at a place where the necessary facilities do exist before coming into any area from any place outside the U.S.

4.1.8 All private aircraft arriving in the U.S. via (a) the U.S./Mexican border or the Pacific Coast from a foreign place in the Western Hemisphere south of 33 degrees north latitude or (b) the Gulf of Mexico and Atlantic Coasts from a foreign place in the Western Hemisphere south of 30 degrees north latitude, from any place in Mexico, or from the U.S. Virgin Islands, shall furnish a notice of intended arrival to the Customs service at the *nearest* designated airport, listed in paragraph 6, to the point of first border or coastline crossing. They must land at this airport for inspection, unless they have an overflight exemption, see paragraph 4.5. Landing rights must be obtained from Customs to land at designated airports that are *not* also approved as international airports. The requirement to furnish an advance notice of intended arrival shall not apply to private aircraft departing from Puerto Rico and conducting their flights under instrument flight rules (IFR) until crossing the U.S. coastline or proceeding north of 30 degrees north latitude prior to crossing the coastline. The notice must be furnished at least one hour before crossing the U.S. coastline or border. The notice may be furnished directly to Customs by telephone, radio, or other means, or may be furnished by means of an ADCUS message in the flight plan through the FAA to Customs. The FAA will accept these notices up to 23 hours in advance.

4.1.9 A one−hour advance notice of coastline or border penetration (but not landing) is required of private aircraft arriving in the continental U.S. from Puerto Rico that are *not* conducting their flight on an IFR flight plan and those private aircraft that have flown beyond the inner boundary of the Air Defense Identification Zone (ADIZ) south of 30 degrees north latitude on the Atlantic Coast, beyond the inner boundary of the Gulf Coast ADIZ, south of the U.S./Mexican border, or beyond the inner boundary of the Pacific Coast ADIZ south of 33 degrees north latitude *which have not landed in a foreign place*. This notice requirement may be satisfied by either filing a flight plan with the FAA and placing ADCUS in the remarks section of the flight plan or by contacting Customs directly at least one hour prior to the inbound crossing of the U.S. border or coastline.

4.2 Notice to Customs

4.2.1 The notice to Customs required by paragraph 4.1.9 of this section shall include the following:

4.2.1.1 Aircraft registration number.

4.2.1.2 Name of aircraft commander.

4.2.1.3 Number of U.S. citizen passengers.

4.2.1.4 Number of alien passengers.

4.2.1.5 Place of last departure.

4.2.1.6 Estimated time and location of crossing U.S. border/coastline.

4.2.1.7 Name of U.S. airport of first landing (one of the designated airports listed in paragraph 6 of this section, unless an exemption has been granted in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of this section).

4.2.1.8 Estimated time of arrival.

4.3 Landing Requirement

4.3.1 Private aircraft that are coming from a foreign place are required to furnish a notice of intended arrival in compliance with paragraphs 4.1.9 and 4.2 of this section and must land for Customs processing at the nearest designated airport to the border or coastline crossing point as listed in paragraph 6 of this section, unless exempted from this requirement in accordance with paragraph 4.5 of this section. In addition to the requirements of this paragraph, private aircraft commanders must comply with all other landing and notice of arrival requirements. This landing requirement shall not apply to private aircraft that have not landed in a foreign place or are arriving directly from Puerto Rico.

4.4 Private Aircraft Defined

4.4.1 For the purpose of this section, "private aircraft" means any civil aircraft not being used to transport persons or property for compensation or hire. The term "person transported for compensation or hire" means a person who would not be transported unless there was some payment or other consideration, including monetary or services rendered, by or for the person and who is not connected with the operation of the aircraft or its navigation, ownership, or business. An aircraft will be presumed to not be carrying persons or merchandise for hire, and thus will be a private aircraft for Customs purposes, when the aircraft is transporting only the aircraft owner's employees, invited guests, or the aircraft owner's own property. This presumption may be overcome by evidence that the employees, "guests," or property are being transported for compensation or other consideration. If an aircraft is used by a group of individuals, one of whom is the pilot making the flight for his/her own convenience, and all persons aboard the aircraft including the pilot contribute equally toward payment of the expense of operating the aircraft owned or rented by them, the aircraft would be considered private.

4.5 Exemption from the Landing Requirement

4.5.1 The owner or aircraft commander of a private aircraft required to furnish a notice of intended arrival in compliance with paragraph 4.1.9 of this section may request an exemption from the landing requirement specified in paragraph 4.3 of this section. If approved, the applicant is bound to comply with all other requirements, including operating at or above 12,500 feet mean sea level, providing advance notice of penetration to U.S. Customs at least one hour in advance of crossing the border or coastline, furnishing advance notice of arrival at the first intended airport of landing, etc. The request should be addressed to the Port Director of U.S. Customs having jurisdiction over the airport to be utilized most frequently when arriving from points south of the U.S. Requests for exemptions can be for either a single specific flight or term (one year) approval. Applications for a single overflight exemption must be received at least 15 days in advance of the intended date of arrival; for term exemption, at least 30 days in advance.

4.5.2 Air charters or taxi service cannot be granted an unqualified term exemption since they cannot reasonably comply with the requirements of a term application, namely, comprehensive details of the passengers they will transport in the course of one year. By submitting all other details, air charters/taxis will accrue the benefit of "conditional" approval. This approval is called conditional because the operator must receive the concurrence of the Port Director prior to each trip. Concurrence will be based upon factors such as the foreign point of departure to the U.S. and the passengers being transported. The benefit realized by the charter/taxi operator is that the time constraints listed above for timely submission of single overflight exemptions can be drastically reduced. Local Customs Ports will establish minimum time frames in accordance with their own requirements.

4.5.3 Required elements of any overflight exemption include the following:

4.5.3.1 Aircraft registration number and serial number.

4.5.3.2 Identification information for the aircraft (make, model, color scheme, and type, such as turboprop, etc.).

4.5.3.3 A statement that the aircraft is equipped with a functioning mode C (altitude reporting) transponder which will be in use during the overflight.

4.5.3.4 A statement that the aircraft is capable of flying above 12,500 feet and that it will be operated at such an altitude when utilizing the overflight exemption unless ordered to fly at a lower altitude by FAA air traffic controllers.

4.5.3.5 Names, home addresses, social security numbers (optional), and dates of birth of owners of the aircraft. (If the aircraft is being operated under a lease, the name and address of the lessee, in addition to that of the owner.)

4.5.3.6 Names, home addresses, social security numbers (optional), dates of birth, and any FAA certificate numbers of all crew members that the applicant wishes to have approved. Individual applications from each crew member must also be attached and should take the form of a signed letter from the crew member in question. The applicant must verify the accuracy of the information provided by the crew member to the best of the applicants ability. The application must contain a statement to this effect.

4.5.3.7 Names, home addresses, social security numbers (optional), and dates of birth of usual and potential passengers to the greatest extent possible. An approved passenger must be on board to utilize the overflight exemption.

4.5.3.8 Description of usual or anticipated cargo or baggage.

4.5.3.9 Description of the company's usual business activity, if the aircraft is company owned.

4.5.3.10 Name of intended airport(s) of first landing in the U.S. (The overflight exemption will only be valid to fly to airports preapproved by Customs).

4.5.3.11 Foreign place(s) from which the flight(s) will originate.

4.5.3.12 Reason for the request of overflight exemption.

4.5.4 Information should be as complete and accurate as possible and should be specific rather than general. The following points will assist in preparing an acceptable application:

4.5.4.1 Include all potential crew members who might be present on the aircraft during the term of the desired exemption. In order for overflight exemptions to remain valid, all crew members on a flight must have been listed on your application.

4.5.4.2 Provide as many identifiers as possible for all crew and passengers. Social security numbers, passport numbers, aircraft pilot license numbers, etc., will contribute greatly to expediting background investigations.

4.5.4.3 Describe the type of business the corporation is engaged in. If the corporation that owns the aircraft is merely an air transportation service for the benefit of an affiliated company, please provide details.

4.5.4.4 List the foreign cities and countries the aircraft will visit. It is to your advantage to describe the nature of your business in each location, or to indicate that certain destinations are vacation/entertainment locations.

4.5.4.5 The reason for overflight exemption requests should be as tangible and concretely stated as possible. Estimate the costs incurred by making an extra landing at a "designated airport" (fuel, wear on aircraft components, landing fees, additional time/distance).

4.5.4.6 Provide an estimate of the number of nautical flying miles which will be saved on an annual basis if the exemption is granted.

4.5.4.7 Companies involved in air ambulance−type operations may be granted a single overflight exemption when emergency situations arise, as well as in the case of nonemergency transport for individuals seeking medical treatment. Both U.S. and foreign registered aircraft will be eligible for the special exemption. The applicant must provide all the necessary information normally required for an overflight exemption. Customs should be notified at least 24 hours prior to departure. If this cannot be accomplished, Customs will allow receipt of the overflight exemption application up to departure time, as well as in flight through a flight service station.

4.5.5 Applicants should be aware that the processing of term applications requires time for all background reports to be prepared for the deciding official. Incomplete applications will not be processed, and the applicant will be notified of the specific additional information that must be supplied. Should an application for overflight be denied at the district level, an appeal process is available. Letters of denial will include the name and address of the Service/Area Director of Customs responsible for the district office that denied your application. You may petition the Service/Area Director for reconsideration of your request.

5. Public Health Measures Applied to Aircraft

5.1 Same requirements as for scheduled flights.

6. Airports Designated as Entry Points

6.1 Airports Designated as Entry Points for Aircraft Arriving from Mexico and Other Foreign Countries in the Western Hemisphere South of 30 Degrees North Latitude.

TBL GEN 1.2−2

Location	Airport Name
ARIZONA	
Douglas	Bisbee−Douglas International
Douglas	Douglas Municipal
Nogales	Nogales International
Tucson	Tucson International
Yuma	Yuma International
CALIFORNIA	
Calexico	Calexico International
San Diego	Brown Field
FLORIDA	
Fort Lauderdale	Fort Lauderdale Executive
Fort Lauderdale	Fort Lauderdale−Hollywood International
Key West	Key West International
Miami	Miami International
Miami	Opa−Locka
Miami	Tamiami
West Palm Beach	Palm Beach International
Fort Pierce	St. Lucie County
Tampa	Tampa International
LOUISIANA	
New Orleans	New Orleans Lakefront
New Orleans	New Orleans International (Moissant Field)
NEW MEXICO	
Santa Teresa	Santa Teresa
NORTH CAROLINA	
Wilmington	New Hanover County
TEXAS	
Beaumont	Jefferson County
Brownsville	Brownsville International
Corpus Christi	Corpus Christi International
Del Rio	Del Rio International
Eagle Pass	Eagle Pass Municipal
El Paso	El Paso International
Houston	William P. Hobby
Laredo	Laredo International
McAllen	Miller International
Presidio	Presidio−Lely International

7. Entry and Clearance − Cuba

7.1 Aircraft arriving from or departing for Cuba must land at or depart from Miami International Airport. Upon arrival, the pilot will present a manifest of all passengers on board to an officer of the U.S. Immigration and Naturalization Service or to a Customs officer acting as an Immigration officer. No passenger arriving from Cuba by aircraft will be released by Customs, nor will the aircraft be cleared or permitted to depart before the passenger is released by an Immigration officer or a Customs officer acting on behalf of that agency.

7.2 Aircraft proceeding to Cuba are required to have a validated license issued by the Department of Commerce or a license issued by the Department of State.

7.3 These special requirements do not apply to aircraft arriving from or departing to the U.S. Naval Base at Guantanamo Bay. Aircraft from this base must meet the same requirements as aircraft arriving from other Caribbean nations.

GEN 1.3 Entry, Transit, and Departure of Passengers and Crew

1. Customs Requirements

1.1 Incoming passengers are required to complete a customs declaration. All baggage or articles belonging to the disembarking passengers are subject to customs inspection. Permission of the Customs officer is required prior to discharging any merchandise or baggage not previously cleared by Customs or prior to permitting passengers or persons employed on the aircraft not cleared by Customs to depart unless such removal or departure is necessary for the purpose of safety or the preservation of life or property. In case of an emergency or forced landing, Customs, Immigration, Public Health, and Agriculture officials must be notified immediately.

1.2 No departure formalities are required upon departure for embarking passengers.

1.3 Any aircraft departing from the U.S. on a business or pleasure flight to unauthorized destinations (see GEN 1.4 paragraphs 3.3 and 3.4) or aircraft carrying passengers or merchandise for hire, or which will take on board or discharge passengers anywhere outside the U.S., is required to obtain clearance at the customs port of entry at or nearest the last place of take−off from the U.S.

1.4 A private aircraft departing from the U.S. on a business or pleasure flight to an authorized destination, is not required to present a departure manifest or have a U.S. Customs clearance of any type, although modified, military−type, privately owned aircraft are subject to certain restrictions (see GEN 1.4 paragraph 5.8) under the regulations of the Office of Munitions Control of the Department of State.

2. Immigration Requirements

2.1 Aircraft operators are required to present all persons for U.S. immigration inspection. Aliens must comply with all provisions of current immigration laws and regulations. Aliens who are lawfully domiciled residents of the U.S., must, with certain exceptions not generally applicable here, present their valid alien registration cards (Form I−151) issued by the Immigration Office. U.S. citizens must be able to satisfy inspectors of their citizenship and should, therefore, carry with them sufficient identification.

2.2 Valid passports and visas are required for all alien passengers arriving and departing on the same or through flights or transferring to another flight at the same or a nearby airport. The visa requirement may be exempted for passengers in direct transit with a layover period of up to eight hours who are passengers on scheduled air carriers which are signatory to a previously approved transit agreement with the Immigration and Naturalization Service.

2.3 An alien passenger entering the U.S. for the purpose of immigration must hold a valid passport and an immigration visa, the latter being issued at U.S. Consulates abroad. Temporary visitors must be in possession of a valid passport and visa.

2.4 Flight crew members must be in possession of a valid passport and visa regardless of length of stay unless the crew members are exempted through previous agreement. (See paragraph 2.2).

2.5 Arrival and Departure Manifests

2.5.1 Neither arrival nor departure manifests containing information on all passengers are required in the U.S. However, the U.S. Immigration and Naturalization Service does require the completion and submission to immigration officials, of an arrival/departure card for each nonresident alien entering the U.S., regardless of length of stay.

2.6 Arriving Flights

2.6.1 The captain or agent of every aircraft (other than private) arriving in the U.S. from a foreign place or from an outlying possession of the U.S. is responsible for and must ensure that an arrival/departure card (Form I−94) is prepared by each nonresident alien passenger and is presented to the immigration officer at the port of arrival. The I−94 card, however, is not required for the citizens of Canada and the French islands of St. Piere and Migueion, near Newfoundland. In addition, an arrival/departure card is not required for an arriving, direct transit passenger at a U.S. port from which the passenger will depart directly to a foreign place or an outlying possession of the U.S. on the same flight, provided that a listing which includes the number of such direct transit passengers is provided or that the number of such passengers are noted on the U.S. Customs Service Form 7507 or on the International Civil Aviation Organization's General Declaration and such passengers remain, during ground time, in a separate area under the direction and control of the Customs Service.

2.6.2 Captains of private aircraft not engaged in the carriage of persons or cargo for hire (nonrevenue flights) are not required to present arrival−departure cards (Form I−94). This, however, does not relieve a nonresident alien passenger from the responsibility of completing and submitting a Form I−94 to immigration officials when required. Most alien passengers must execute and present Form I−94 (revised March 1, 1986). Prior editions may not be used. Form I−94 must be completed by all persons except U.S. citizens, returning resident aliens, aliens with immigrant visas, and Canadians visiting or in transit. Mexican nationals in possession of Immigration Form I−86 or Form I−586 are exempt from Form I−94 reporting requirements when their itinerary is limited to California, Arizona, New Mexico, or Texas and will not exceed 72 hours in duration. This exemption does not apply when travel will exceed 25 miles from the international border between Mexico and the U.S. Travel to Nevada by Mexican nationals is exempted for periods of less than 30 days. Mexican nationals proceeding to destinations more than 25 miles from the border in these states will have to obtain a visitor's permit I−444 when arriving in the U.S. Mexican nationals presenting official or diplomatic passports and destined to the U.S. for purposes other than permanent assignment are exempted from Form I−94 reporting requirements.

2.6.3 Completion of the arrival−departure cards (Form I−94) must be as follows:

2.6.3.1 Alien passengers on temporary visit in the U.S. must complete all items of Form I−94 in duplicate, one copy of which is attached to the passport for surrender to immigration officials upon departure.

2.6.3.2 Alien passengers in direct transit, when required to complete Form I−94, are to insert the symbol TRWOV on the line headed "Passenger Boarded At" and need not complete items 3, 8, and 9. Form I−94 is to be completed in single copy only.

2.6.3.3 When the Form I−94 is required by individuals entering the U.S. by private aircraft it should indicate PRIVATE in block #7−Airline and Flight Number. They do not need to complete block #9−City Where You Boarded. All other items on the form are self−explanatory and should be completed prior to actual arrival in the U.S.

2.6.4 When inspection of an arriving passenger is deferred at the request of the air carrier to another port of debarkation, the required forms relating to any such passenger shall be returned, together with a Form I−92, when the Form I−94 procedure is used, for presentation by the captain, master, or agent at the port where inspection is to be conducted.

2.7 Departing Flights

2.7.1 The captain or agent of every aircraft (other than private) departing from the U.S. for a foreign place or an outlying possession of the U.S. is responsible for and must ensure that all alien passengers on board (except for citizens of Canada and the French islands of St. Piere and Migueion, near Newfoundland), surrender to the immigration officer at the port of departure, prior to departure, the passport copy of the arrival/departure card (Form I−94) which was completed upon arrival in the U.S. Aircraft departing on regularly scheduled flights from the U.S., however, may collect the cards and defer their presentation, along with either the Bureau of Customs Form 7507 or the ICAO General Declaration, containing the listing of alien direct transit passengers for whom the arrival/departure card was not prepared upon arrival.

2.7.2 Private aircraft owners are responsible for the proper completion and submission of Form I−94 for all crew and passengers affected by the reporting requirement. Departure documents should be annotated on the reverse of the document to indicate Port of Departure and Date of Departure. Following Carrier, print the word PRIVATE. In the space provided for Flight Number/Ship Name, print the aircraft's tail number. Departure documents should be submitted to a U.S. Immigration or U.S. Customs inspector at the time of departure from the U.S. or mailed to the Appalachian Computer Service address in London, KY. Aircraft owners are responsible for the submission of all I−94 Departure Records upon departure to a foreign destination.

2.7.3 Resident aliens of the U.S. who will be traveling abroad under a foreign passport must ensure that their Alien Registration Card, Form 151, is available for presentation to gain re−entry into the U.S. upon completion of trip.

2.8 Currency Reporting Requirements

2.8.1 There is no limitation in terms of the total amount of monetary instruments which may be brought into or taken out of the U.S., nor is it illegal to do so. However, if you transport or cause to be transported (including by mail or other means), more than $10,000 in monetary instruments on any occasion into or out of the U.S., or if you receive more than that amount, you must file a report (Customs Form 4790) with U.S. Customs (Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act, 31 U.S.C. 1101, et seq.). Monetary instruments include U.S. or foreign coin in current circulation, currency, traveler's checks, money orders, and negotiable instruments or investment securities in bearer form. Failure to comply can result in civil and criminal penalties.

3. Public Health Requirements

3.1 Disembarking passengers are not required to present a vaccination certificate except when coming directly from an area infected with cholera, yellow fever, or smallpox. Smallpox vaccination is necessary only if, within the 14 days before arrival, the traveler has been in a country reporting smallpox.

3.2 The pilot in command of an aircraft destined for a U.S. airport must report immediately to the Quarantine Station at or nearest the airport at which the aircraft will arrive, the occurrence, on board, of any death or any ill person among passengers or crew. Ill person is defined as:

3.2.1 Temperature of 100 degrees Fahrenheit (38 degrees Celsius) or greater accompanied by rash, glandular swelling, or jaundice, or which has persisted for more than 48 hours; or

3.2.2 Diarrhea, defined as the occurrence in a 24−hour period of three or more loose stools or of a greater than normal (for the person) amount of loose stools.

3.3 The pilot in command is responsible for detaining the aircraft and persons and things arriving thereon and keeping them free from unauthorized contact pending release when required by Sections 71.31, 71.46, 71.62, 71.63, and 71.102 of the Foreign Quarantine Regulations of the Public Health Service (Part 71, Title 42, Code of Federal Regulations).

GEN 1.4 Entry, Transit, and Departure of Cargo

1. Requirements Concerning Cargo and Other Articles

1.1 Customs entry and clearance of cargo and unaccompanied baggage destined for points within U.S. territory must be completed at the first international airport of entry.

1.2 Transshipment of cargo and other articles must be dealt with at the first international airport of entry according to related regulations. All aircraft entering the U.S. or arriving any place in the U.S. from any other place in the U.S. carrying residue foreign cargo shall not depart from the place of landing without receiving permission from the Customs officer.

2. Agricultural Quarantine Requirements

2.1 The U.S. Department of Agriculture, Plant Protection and Quarantine Division (PPQ), has strict requirements regarding the entry, handling and disposition of garbage and galley refuse on all flights arriving from any foreign country, except Canada (7 CFR Parts 94 and 330). A list of sanitary international airports approved by PPQ can be secured from any PPQ office at major airports (see Aerodrome Section).

2.2 Meat, meat products, milk, live birds, poultry, or other domestic farm animals can only enter the U.S. under certain conditions from certain countries under the regulations of the PPQ.

2.3 No insects or other plant pests shall knowingly be transported into the U.S. If the pilot of any aircraft has reason to believe any flying or crawling insects are aboard his/her aircraft, such information should be relayed to the nearest PPQ office or inspector when landing.

2.4 Permits are required to bring most fruits, vegetables, plants, seeds, etc., into the U.S. from foreign countries. A guide to restricted or prohibited products can be secured from any PPQ office.

2.5 Dogs, cats, monkeys, psittacine birds (parrot family), turtles, shipments of disease organisms and vectors, and dead bodies are subject to entry restrictions prescribed in the Foreign Quarantine Regulations of the Public Health Service (42 CFR Part 71, Subject J).

3. Exportation of Aircraft, Cargo, and Other Articles

3.1 All U.S. and foreign registered aircraft departing the U.S. for a foreign destination on a temporary sojourn must have export authorization. The two types of export authorization are a license exception (AVS) and a license. Detailed information on both the license exception and the license can be obtained from:

The U. S. Department of Commerce
Bureau of Export Administration
Exporter Counseling Division
Washington, DC 20230
Telephone: (202) 482−4811
Facsimile: (202) 482−3617

3.2 A license exception (AVS) is an authorization to export the aircraft if certain criteria are satisfied. This exception does not require an application nor will there be an issuance of a license document prior to the flight.

REFERENCE−
15 CFR Section 740.15

3.3 License exception AVS authorizes an operating civil aircraft of foreign registry that has been in the U.S. on a temporary sojourn to depart from the U.S. under its own power for any destination, provided that:

3.3.1 No sale or transfer of operational control of the aircraft to nationals of Cuba, Iran, Iraq, Libya, North Korea, Sudan, or Syria has occurred while in the U.S.

3.3.2 The aircraft is not departing for the purpose of sale or transfer of operational control to nationals of Cuba, Iran, Iraq, Libya, North Korea, Sudan, or Syria; and

3.3.3 It does not carry from the U.S. any item for which an export license is required and has not been granted by the U.S. Government.

3.4 License exception AVS authorizes a civil aircraft of U.S. registry operating under an Air Carrier Operating Certificate, Commercial Operating Certificate, or Air Taxi Operating Certificate issued by the Federal Aviation Administration or conducting flights under operating specifications approved by the Federal Aviation Administration pursuant to 14 CFR Part 129 of the regulations of the Federal Aviation Administration, may depart from the U.S. under its own power for any destination provided that:

3.4.1 The aircraft does not depart for the purpose of sale, lease or other disposition of operational control of the aircraft or its equipment, parts, accessories, or components to a foreign country or any national thereof.

3.4.2 The aircraft's U.S. registration will not be changed while abroad.

3.4.3 The aircraft is not to be used in any foreign military activity while abroad; and

3.4.4 The aircraft does not carry from the U.S. any item for which a license is required and has not been granted by the U.S. Government.

3.5 License exception AVS authorizes any other operating civil aircraft of U.S. registry to depart from the U.S. under its own power for any destination, except to Cuba, Iran, Iraq, Sudan, Syria, Libya, and North Korea (flights to these destinations require a license), provided that:

3.5.1 The aircraft does not depart for the purpose of sale, lease or other disposition of operational control of the aircraft, or its equipment, parts, accessories, or components to a foreign country or national thereof.

3.5.2 The aircraft's U.S. registration will not be changed while abroad.

3.5.3 The aircraft is not to be used in any foreign military activity while abroad.

3.5.4 The aircraft does not carry from the U.S. any item for which an export license is required and has not been granted by the U.S. Government; and

3.5.5 The aircraft will be operated while abroad by a U.S. licensed pilot, except that during domestic flights within a foreign country, the aircraft may be operated by a pilot currently licensed by that foreign country.

3.6 A license authorizes the departure of the aircraft within the special limitations set forth in the license document. It is issued only on the basis of a formal application requesting the issuance of a license prior to the flight.

3.7 Once it has been determined that an export license is required, an application for the license should be submitted to the Bureau of Export Administration, U.S. Department of Commerce. An application consists of Form BXA−748P (multipurpose application). This form and information on the application process can be obtained free of charge from either the U.S. Department of Commerce in Washington or any of its District Offices. (See paragraph 4.)

3.8 Applications for validated licenses by non−U.S. citizens require that the applicant appoint an agent subject to U.S. jurisdiction to act in his/her behalf. If an emergency situation necessitates the expedition of the application process, contact the Counseling Division Staff of the Bureau of Export Administration (telephone 202−482−4811) or any Department of Commerce District Office for assistance.

4. Department of Commerce District Office Locations

TBL GEN 1.4−1

State	City
Alabama	Birmingham
Alaska	Anchorage
Arizona	Phoenix
California	Los Angeles
California	San Francisco
Colorado	Denver
Connecticut	Hartford
Florida	Miami
Georgia	Atlanta
Georgia	Savannah
Hawaii	Honolulu
Illinois	Chicago
Indiana	Indianapolis
Iowa	Des Moines
Louisiana	New Orleans
Maryland	Baltimore
Massachusetts	Boston
Michigan	Detroit
Minnesota	Minneapolis
Missouri	St. Louis
Nebraska	Omaha
Nevada	Reno
New Jersey	Newark
New Mexico	Albuquerque
New York	Buffalo
New York	New York
North Carolina	Greensboro
Ohio	Cincinnati
Ohio	Cleveland
Oregon	Portland
Pennsylvania	Philadelphia
Pennsylvania	Pittsburgh
Puerto Rico	San Juan
South Carolina	Columbia
Tennessee	Memphis
Texas	Dallas
Texas	Houston
Utah	Salt Lake City
Washington	Seattle
West Virginia	Charleston
Wisconsin	Milwaukee
Wyoming	Cheyenne

5. Regulations Concerning Civil Movement of Arms, Ammunition, and Military Type Aircraft

5.1 Importation of military type aircraft and the carriage or importation of firearms or ammunition are regulated by the U.S. Department of the Treasury, Division of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms.

5.2 A permit must be obtained from the Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms Division for the importation of certain military type aircraft regardless of demilitarization. Aircraft that are exempt from permits are specifically listed in the regulations on Importation of Arms, Ammunition and Implements of War (26 CFR Part 180).

5.3 A permit must be obtained from the Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms Division for the importation of firearms and ammunition for commercial transactions.

5.4 Transportation or shipment of firearms or ammunition in interstate or foreign commerce to persons other than licensed importers, licensed manufacturers, licensed dealers or licensed collectors, without written notice to the carrier that such firearms or ammunition is being transported or shipped is unlawful.

5.5 Any passenger who owns or legally possesses a firearm or ammunition being transported aboard any common or contract carrier for movement with the passenger must deliver said firearm or ammunition into the custody of the pilot, captain, conductor, or operator of such common or contract carrier for the duration of the trip.

5.6 Applications for permits should be made on Form 6 (Firearms), preferably 30 days in advance of importation. Form IRS−4522, International Import Certificate, may also be required by the exporting country and should accompany applications on Form 6 (Firearms) when necessary.

5.7 Exportation of military type aircraft are regulated by the U.S. Department of State, Office of Munitions Control.

5.8 A license must be obtained from the Office of Munitions Control, Department of State, for the exportation from the U. S. of certain military type aircraft regardless of demilitarization. Aircraft that are exempt from licenses are specifically listed in the regulations on International Traffic in Arms (22 CFR

Part 121). Applications for licenses are made as follows:

5.8.1 For permanent export, on Form DSP−5. Apply at least 30, preferable 60, days in advance. A Form DSP−63a may also be required from the importing country.

5.8.2 For temporary export, on Form DSP−73. Apply at least 10 days in advance.

GEN 1.5 Aircraft Instruments, Equipment, and Flight Documents

1. General

1.1 Commercial air transport aircraft operating in the U.S. airspace must adhere to the provisions of Annex 6, Operation of Aircraft, Part One, Chapter Six (Airplane Instruments, Equipment and Flight Documents) and Chapter Seven (Airplane Communications and Navigation Equipment).

GEN 1.6 Summary of National Regulations and International Agreements/Conventions

1. Summary of National Regulations

1.1 Air regulations for the U.S. and areas under its jurisdiction are published in Title 14 of the U.S. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Parts 1−199, entitled the Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation. It is essential that persons engaged in air operations in the U.S. airspace be acquainted with the relevant regulations. Copies of the 14 CFR parts may be purchased from the:

Superintendent of Documents
Attn: New Orders
P.O. Box 371954
Pittsburgh, PA 15250−7954
Telephone: 202−512−1800

The Code of Federal Regulations is available electronically at www.access.gpo.gov/nara/index.html.

1.2 The following is a partial list of Federal Aviation Regulations and their respective subject matter:

TBL GEN 1.6−1

14 CFR Part No.	Title
1	Definitions and abbreviations
11	General rulemaking procedures
13	Investigative and enforcement procedures
21	Certification procedures for products and parts
23	Airworthiness standards: normal, utility, acrobatic, and commuter category airplanes
25	Airworthiness standards: transport category airplanes
27	Airworthiness standards: normal category rotorcraft
29	Airworthiness Standards: transport category rotorcraft
31	Airworthiness standards: manned free balloons
33	Airworthiness standards: aircraft engines
35	Airworthiness standards: propellers
36	Noise standards: aircraft type and airworthiness certification
39	Airworthiness directives
43	Maintenance, preventive maintenance, rebuilding, and alteration
45	Identification and registration marking
47	Aircraft registration
49	Recording of aircraft titles and security documents
61	Certification: Pilots, flight instructors, and ground instructors
63	Certification: Flight crewmembers other than pilots
65	Certification: Airmen other than flight crewmembers
67	Medical standards and certification
71	Designation of Class A, B, C, D, and E airspace areas; airways; routes; and reporting points
73	Special use airspace
77	Objects affecting navigable airspace
91	General operating and flight rules
93	Special air traffic rules and airport traffic patterns
95	IFR altitudes
97	Standard instrument approach procedures
99	Security control of air traffic
101	Moored balloons, kites, unmanned rockets, and unmanned free balloons
103	Ultralight vehicles
105	Parachute jumping
107	Airport security
108	Airplane operator security
109	Indirect air carrier security
119	Certification: Air carriers and commercial operators
121	Operating requirements: Domestic, flag, and supplemental operations

14 CFR Part No.	Title
125	Certification and operations: Airplanes having a seating capacity of 20 or more passengers or a maximum payload capacity of 6,000 pounds or more
129	Operations: Foreign air carriers and foreign operations of U.S. registered aircraft engaged in common carriage
133	Rotorcraft external load operations
135	Operating requirements: Commuter and on−demand operations
137	Agricultural aircraft operations
139	Certification and operations: Land airports serving certain air carriers
141	Pilot schools
142	Training centers
145	Repair stations
147	Aviation maintenance technician schools
150	Airport noise compatibility planning
151	Federal aid to airports
152	Airport aid program
155	Release of airport property from surplus property disposal restrictions

14 CFR Part No.	Title
156	State block grant pilot program
157	Notice of construction, alteration, activation, and deactivation of airports
158	Passenger facility charges (PFCs)
161	Notice and approval of airport noise and access restrictions
169	Expenditure of Federal funds for nonmilitary airports or air navigation facilities thereon
170	Establishment and discontinuance criteria for air traffic control services and navigational facilities
171	Non−Federal navigation facilities
183	Representatives of the Administrator
185	Testimony by employees and production of records in legal proceedings, and service of legal process and pleadings
187	Fees
189	Use of Federal Aviation Administration communications system
191	Protection of sensitive security information
198	Aviation insurance

GEN 1.7 Differences From ICAO Standards, Recommended Practices and Procedures

NOTE − See GEN 1.6 for the availability of Title 14 of the U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Parts 1−199.

ANNEX 1 − PERSONNEL LICENSING	
Chapter 1	**Definitions and General Rules Concerning Licences**
1.2.5.2, 1.2.5.2.1	Persons performing airline transport pilot duties must be medically examined at 6−month intervals, regardless of age or type of aircraft.
1.2.5.2, 1.2.5.2.2	Persons performing air traffic control tower duties must be medically examined at 12−month intervals, regardless of age.
Chapter 2	**Licences and Ratings for Pilots**
2.1.3.2 b)	Class ratings are required for all grades of certificates.
2.1.4.1, 2.1.4.1.1	Not applied to copilots.
2.1.5.2 b)	Not applied to copilots.
2.1.9	An applicant for an airline transport pilot certificate with an airplane rating may credit toward the total flight time requirement all flight time served as copilot in airplanes required to have more than one pilot by their approved aircraft flight manual or airworthiness certificate. Flight time served as copilot of an airplane performing the duties and functions of a pilot−in−command under the supervision of a pilot−in−command may be credited towards the 250 hours of pilot−in−command flight time required for an airline transport pilot certificate with an airplane rating (if the aircraft or the operating rule requires a copilot).
2.3.1.3.1	If the applicant has satisfactorily completed an approved training course, 35 hours of flight time are required.
2.5.1.5.1	There is no requirement for an applicant to demonstrate skills in a multi−engine airplane required to be operated with a copilot. Skill demonstration may be performed in a single−engine aircraft or in a small multi−engine aircraft requiring only one pilot. A certificate may be issued with single−engine land or sea class rating, as appropriate.
2.9.1.3.1.1	Two−hundred hours in helicopters, of which 75 hours must be as pilot−in−command.
2.12.1.5	Glider pilots are not required to hold medical certificates. However a person shall not act as pilot in command, or in any other capacity as a required flight crewmember, while that person knows or has reason to know of any medical condition that would make the person unable to operate the aircraft in a safe manner.
2.13.1.3.1	Ten hours of flight training in balloons that includes at least 6 training flights.
2.13.1.3.3	There is no night requirement.
2.13.1.5	Free balloon pilots are not required to hold medical certificates. However a person shall not act as pilot in command, or in any other capacity as a required flight crewmember, while that person knows or has reason to know of any medical condition that would make the person unable to operate the aircraft in a save manner.
Chapter 3	**Licences for Flight Crew Members Other Than Licences for Pilots**
3.3.1.1	Flight engineers must be at least 21 years of age.
Chapter 4	**Licences and Ratings for Personnel Other Than Flight Crew Members**
4.2.1.3 a)	U.S. regulations only require 30 months of the appropriate prior experience, not 48 months.
4.4.1.1	To be eligible for an air traffic control tower operator certificate, a person must be at least 18 years of age.

4.4.1.3	Each applicant for a facility rating at any air traffic control tower must have satisfactorily served as an air traffic control tower operator at that control tower without a facility rating for at least 6 months, or as an air traffic control tower operator with a facility rating at a different control tower for at least 6 months before the date he/she applies for the rating. However, an applicant who is a member of an Armed Force of the U.S. meets these requirements if he/she has satisfactorily served as an air traffic control tower operator for at least 6 months.
4.4.1.4	No person may act as an air traffic control tower operator in connection with civil aircraft unless he/she holds at least a second class medical certificate. Exception to this is an individual employed by the Federal Aviation Administration or on active duty with the Department of the Air Force, Army, Navy, or Coast Guard.
4.5.2.2.1 b) 1)	Six months.
4.5.2.2.1 b) 2)	Six months.
4.5.2.2.1 b) 3)	The U.S. does not specify a minimum number of precision approaches to be completed prior to receiving a rating.
4.5.2.2.1 c)	The U.S. does not specify a minimum number of precision approaches to be completed prior to receiving a rating.
4.6.1.1	The applicant must be at least 23 years of age.
4.6.1.2	The U.S. requires applicants to pass a written test.
Chapter 6	**Medical Provisions for Licencing**
6.3.2.5.1	Except for duties requiring an airline transport pilot certificate, electrocardiography is not required. For duties requiring an airline transport pilot certificate, an applicant who has passed his/her 35th birthday, but not the 40th birthday, must submit an electrocardiogram on the first examination after the 35th birthday and annually after the 40th birthday.
6.3.2.8.1	No radiography required.
6.3.2.23	Pregnancy does not prohibit the issue of a medical certificate.
6.3.3.3	Applicants who must wear correcting lenses will not require testing for refractive error. A flight crew member is not required to have a spare set of suitable correcting lenses available.
6.4.2.5.1	No electrocardiography required.
6.4.2.8.1	No radiography required.
6.4.2.22	Pregnancy does not prohibit the issue of a medical certificate.

ANNEX 2 − RULES OF THE AIR	
Chapter 1	**Definitions**
Aerodrome control tower	In the U.S., an "aerodrome control facility" is referred to as a "tower" or "airport traffic control tower"; "aerodrome control" is referred to as "airport traffic control service."
Airborne collision avoidance	The U.S. uses "traffic alert collision avoidance system (TCAS)." TCAS is an airborne collision avoidance system based on radar beacon signals and operates independent of ground−based equipment. TCAS−I generates traffic advisories only. TCAS−II generates traffic advisories and resolution (collision avoidance) advisories in the vertical plane.
Air−taxiing	The U.S. uses "hover taxi" for this maneuver above 100 feet above ground level (AGL) and "air taxi" below 100 feet AGL.
Area control service	The U.S. does not use the term "area control service" to indicate controlled flight in controlled areas.
Area control centre	The U.S. equivalent facility for an Area Control Centre (ACC) is an Air Route Traffic Control Center (ARTCC).
ATS route	In U.S. domestic airspace, the term "ATS route" is not used. Routes in the U.S. include VOR airways, jet routes, substitute routes, and off−airway routes. The U.S. also uses instrument departure procedures (DPs) and standard terminal arrivals (STARs).
Controlled airspace	The U.S. terms for controlled airspace have different parameters than for ICAO.
Danger area	The term "danger area" is not used within the U.S. or any of its possessions or territories.
Estimated off−block time	The U.S. uses the term "estimated departure time" for domestic operations.
Flight information centre	The U.S. does not operate flight information centers (FICs). In the U.S., the services provided by FICs are performed by air traffic control (ATC) facilities, automated flight service stations (AFSSs), and rescue coordination centers (RCCs).
Instrument meteorological conditions	The U.S. air traffic service units use the phrase "IFR conditions."
Level	The U.S. uses "altitude" or "flight level" rather than "level" and "cruising altitude" rather than "cruising level.'' The term "level" is not used to mean "height," "altitude," or "flight level."
Movement area	In the U.S., the term "movement area" means "the runways, taxiways, and other areas of an airport/heliport which are utilized for taxiing, hover taxiing, air−taxiing, take−off and landing of aircraft, exclusive of loading ramps and parking areas. At those airport/heliports with a tower, specific approval for entry onto the movement area must be obtained from ATC." The U.S. does not use an all−inclusive term to denote the movement area plus loading ramps and parking areas of an airport, nor does the U.S. use the term "maneuvering area'' in any related context.
Repetitive flight plan (RPL)	The U.S. uses the term "stored flight plan" for domestic operations.
Terminal control area	In the U.S., "terminal control area" has been replaced by "Class B airspace/area." Standard IFR services are provided to IFR aircraft operating in Class B airspace.
Total estimated elapsed time	The U.S. uses "estimated time en route" for domestic operations.
Transition altitude	In U.S. domestic airspace, "transition altitude," "layer" and "level" are not used; however, in the U.S., flight levels begin at FL 180 where the reference datum of 29.92 inches of mercury is used as the constant atmospheric pressure. Below FL 180, altitudes are based on barometric pressure readings. QNH and QFE altimeter settings are not provided in domestic U.S. airspace.
Visual meteorological conditions	The U.S. air traffic service units use the phrase "VFR conditions."

Chapter 2	Applicability of the Rules of the Air
2.2	See difference under "Movement area."
2.5	Except in an emergency, no pilot of a civil aircraft may allow a person who appears to be intoxicated or who demonstrates by manner or physical indications that the individual is under the influence of drugs (except a medical patient under proper care) to be carried in that aircraft.
Chapter 3	**General Rules**
3.1.8	In addition, aircraft shall not be flown in formation flight when passengers are carried for hire.
3.2 Note	See difference under "Movement area."
3.2.2.6.1	See difference under "Movement area."
3.2.3.2 d)	The U.S. national regulations do not require aircraft on the movement area of an airport, whose engines are running, to display lights which indicate that fact from sunset to sunrise.
3.2.5	Unless otherwise authorized or required by ATC, no person may operate an aircraft within a Class B, C, or D surface area except for the purpose of landing at, or taking off from, an airport within that area. In addition, in the case of a helicopter approaching to land, avoid the flow of fixed−wing aircraft. In addition, no person may, within a Class B, C, or D surface area operate an aircraft to, from, or on an airport having a control tower operated by the U.S. unless two−way radio communications are maintained between that aircraft and the control tower.
3.3.1.2	In the U.S., ATC flight plans are not required for VFR flight in Class C, D, or E airspace.
3.3.1.2.1 d)	Requirements pertaining to filing flight plans for flights operating across U.S. borders and for identification purposes are described in 14 CFR Part 9l (Section 91.84) and Part 99.
3.3.1.2.2	The U.S. requires that domestic flight plans be submitted at least 30 minutes before departure. For international flights, the U.S. recommends that they be transmitted so that they are received by ATC authorities in each Flight Information Region (FIR) to be entered, at least 2 hours prior to entry, unless otherwise provided in that State's requirements.
3.6.1	Air traffic control clearances are not needed for VFR flight in U.S. Class C, D, or E airspace.
3.6.2.4	When meteorological conditions fall below the minimum specified for en route VFR flights, the pilot of the aircraft shall not continue his/her flight in such conditions, except in emergency, beyond the extent necessary to return to his/her departure point or to the nearest suitable landing point.
3.6.5.2.2	In the event of two−way communications failure in the U.S., ATC service is predicated on pilot compliance with the provisions of 14 CFR Part 91 (Section 91.185). If the failure occurs in IMC, or if VFR cannot be complied with, each pilot is to continue the flight according to the following: Route a) By the route assigned in the last ATC clearance received; b) If being radar vectored, by the direct route from the point of failure to the fix, route, or airway specified in the vector clearance; c) In the absence of an assigned route, by the route that ATC has advised may be expected in a further clearance; or d) In the absence of an assigned route or a route that ATC has advised may be expected in a further clearance, by the route filed in the flight plan. Altitude − At the **HIGHEST** of the following altitudes or flight levels **FOR THE ROUTE SEGMENT BEING FLOWN:** a) The altitude or flight level assigned in the last ATC clearance received; b) The minimum altitude/flight level as prescribed for IFR operations; or c) The altitude or flight level ATC has advised may be expected in a further clearance.

Basic VFR Weather Minimums

Airspace	Flight Visibility	Distance from Clouds
Class A	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
Class B	3 statute miles	Clear of Clouds
Class C	3 statute miles	500 feet below 1,000 feet above 2,000 feet horizontal
Class D	3 statute miles	500 feet below 1,000 feet above 2,000 feet horizontal
Class E Less than 10,000 feet MSL	3 statute miles	500 feet below 1,000 feet above 2,000 feet horizontal
At or above 10,000 feet MSL	5 statute miles	1,000 feet below 1,000 feet above 1 statute mile horizontal
Class G 1,200 feet or less above the surface (regardless of MSL altitude).		
Day, except as provided in Section 91.155(b)	1 statute mile	Clear of clouds
Night, except as provided in Section 91.155(b)	3 statute miles	500 feet below 1,000 feet above 2,000 feet horizontal
More than 1,200 feet above the surface but less than 10,000 feet MSL.		
Day	1 statute mile	500 feet below 1,000 feet above 2,000 feet horizontal
Night	3 statute miles	500 feet below 1,000 feet above 2,000 feet horizontal
More than 1,200 feet above the surface and at or above 10,000 feet MSL.	5 statute miles	1,000 feet below 1,000 feet above 1 statute mile horizontal

Chapter 4	**Visual Flight Rules**
4.1 and Table 4−1	There is no Class F airspace in the U.S. Basic VFR weather minimums are listed in the table above.
4.1 a)	Except as otherwise authorized by the appropriate air traffic control unit for special VFR flights within Class B, C, D, or E surface areas, no person may operate an aircraft under VFR when the flight visibility is less, or at a distance from clouds that is less than that prescribed for the corresponding altitude and class of airspace in the table above.
4.1 b)	**Class G Airspace**: Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph a) of this section, the following operations may be conducted in Class G airspace below 1,200 feet above the surface: 1) **Helicopter**. A helicopter may be operated clear of clouds if operated at a speed that allows the pilot adequate opportunity to see any air traffic or obstruction in time to avoid collision. 2) **Airplane**. When the visibility is less than 3 statute miles but not less than 1 statute mile during night hours, an airplane may be operated clear of clouds if operated in an airport traffic pattern within one−half mile of the runway.
4.1 c)	Except as provided in 4.2, no person may operate an aircraft under VFR within the lateral boundaries of the surface areas of Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E airspace designated for an airport when the ceiling is less than 1,000 feet.

4.1 d)	Except as provided in 4.2, no person may take−off or land an aircraft, or enter the traffic pattern area of an airport under VFR, within the lateral boundaries of the surface area of Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E airspace designed for an airport: 1) unless ground visibility at that airport is at least 3 statute miles; or 2) if ground visibility is not reported at that airport, unless flight visibility during landing or takeoff, or while operating in the traffic pattern is at least 3 statute miles.
4.2	In the U.S., no person may operate an aircraft beneath the ceiling under VFR within the lateral boundaries of controlled airspace designated to the surface for an airport when the ceiling is less than 1,000 feet. No person may take−off or land an aircraft (other than a helicopter) under special VFR (SVFR) unless ground visibility is at least 1 statute mile or if ground visibility is not reported, unless flight visibility is at least 1 statute mile.
4.2 a)	When an appropriate ATC clearance has been received, the special weather minimums in this section apply to the operation of an aircraft in a Class B, C, D, or E surface area under VFR. 1) No person may operate an aircraft in a Class B, C, D, or E surface area under VFR except clear of clouds; 2) No person may operate an aircraft (other than a helicopter) in a Class B, C, D or E surface area under VFR unless flight visibility is at least 1 statute mile; 3) No person may take−off or land an aircraft (other than a helicopter) at any airport in a Class B, C, D or E surface area under VFR: a) unless ground visibility at that airport is at least 1 statute mile; or b) if ground visibility is not reported at that airport, unless flight visibility during landing or take−off is at least 1 statute mile.
4.3	The U.S. does not prohibit VFR flight between sunset and sunrise.
4.4	In the U.S., VFR flight is not permitted within Class A airspace designated in 14 CFR Part 71 unless otherwise authorized by ATC. In the U.S., an ATC clearance is needed for VFR flight only in Class B airspace area.
4.6	In addition, anywhere, an altitude allowing, if a power unit fails, an emergency landing without due hazard to persons or property on the surface.
4.7	In addition, grid tracks are not used to determine cruising altitudes in polar areas. True tracks are used to determine cruising levels above FL 230 in the area north of Alaska bounded by the true North Pole to 72°00′00″N, 141°00′00″W; to 72°00′00″N, 158°00′00″W; to 68°00′00″N, 168°58′23″W; to point of beginning. The U.S. has named this area the Anchorage Arctic CTA/FIR for national reference purposes.
4.8	In U.S. Class C and D airspace/areas, an ATC clearance is not required for VFR flights.
Chapter 5	**Instrument Flight Rules**
5.1.2	In the U.S., minimum altitudes for IFR flights are 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a horizontal distance of 4 nautical miles from the course to be flown in mountainous terrain and 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a horizontal distance of 4 nautical miles from the course to be flown in non−mountainous terrain.
5.2.2	See difference under paragraph 4.7.
5.3.1	See difference under paragraph 4.7.

Further differences which exist by virtue of the fact that the Annex contains no comparable standards for the U.S. national regulations.	1) The regulations covering the selection and use of alternate airports in respect to ceiling and visibility minima, require that: Unless otherwise authorized by the FAA Administrator, no person may include an alternate airport in an IFR flight plan unless current weather forecasts indicate that, at the estimated time of arrival at the alternate airport, the ceiling and visibility at that airport will be at or above the alternate airport weather minima.
	2) Operation under IFR in Class A, B, C, D, or E airspace malfunction reports: a) The pilot−in−command of each aircraft operated in Class A, B, C, D or E airspace under IFR shall report as soon as practical to ATC any malfunctions of navigational, approach, or communication equipment occurring in flight. b) In each report the pilot−in−command shall include: 1) aircraft identification. 2) equipment affected. 3) degree to which the capability of the pilot to operate under IFR in the ATC system is impaired; and 4) nature and extent of assistance desired from ATC.
	3) When an aircraft has been cleared to maintain "VFR conditions on top," the pilot is responsible to fly at an appropriate VFR altitude, comply with VFR visibility and distance from cloud criteria, and to be vigilant so as to see and avoid other aircraft.
	4) Aircraft speed: a) Unless otherwise authorized by the FAA Administrator, no person may operate an aircraft below 10,000 feet MSL at an indicated airspeed of more than 250 kt (288 m.p.h.). b) Unless otherwise authorized or required by ATC, no person may operate an aircraft within Class B, C, or D surface area at an indicated airspeed of more than 200 kt (230 m.p.h.). This paragraph 4b) does not apply to operations within Class B airspace. Such operations shall comply with paragraph 4a) of this section. c) No person may operate an aircraft in the airspace underlying Class B airspace, or in a VFR corridor designated through Class B airspace, at an indicated airspeed of more than 200 kt (230 m.p.h.). d) If the minimum safe airspeed for any operation is greater than the maximum speed prescribed in this section, the aircraft may be operated at that minimum speed.

	5) Operating rules and pilot and equipment requirements for flight in Class B airspace. a) Operating rules. No person may operate an aircraft within Class B airspace except in compliance with the following rules: 1) No person may operate an aircraft within Class B airspace unless that person has received an appropriate authorization from ATC prior to operation of that aircraft in that area. 2) Unless otherwise authorized by ATC, each person operating a large turbine engine−powered airplane to or from a primary airport shall operate at or above the designated floors while within the lateral limits of the Class B airspace. 3) Any person conducting pilot training operations at an airport within Class B airspace shall comply with any procedures established by ATC for such operations in Class B airspace. b) Pilot requirements. No person may take off or land a civil aircraft at an airport within Class B airspace or operate a civil aircraft within Class B airspace unless: 1) The pilot−in−command holds at least a private pilot certificate; or 2) The aircraft is operated by a student pilot who has met the requirements (14 CFR Part 61 (Section 61.95)). c) Communications and navigation requirements. Unless otherwise authorized by ATC, no person may operate an aircraft within Class B airspace unless that aircraft is equipped with: 1) For **IFR** operations, an operable VOR or TACAN receiver, and 2) For **all** operations, an operable two−way radio capable of communications with ATC on appropriate frequencies for that Class B airspace. d) Transponder requirements. No person may operate an aircraft in Class B airspace unless the aircraft is equipped with the applicable operating transponder and automatic altitude reporting equipment.

	6) Operating rules and pilot and equipment requirements for operating in Class C airspace. a) General. For the purpose of this section, the primary airport is the airport designated in 14 CFR Part 71, for which the Class C airspace is designated. A satellite airport is any other airport within the Class C airspace. b) Deviations. An operator may deviate from any provisions of this section under the provisions of an ATC authorization issued by the ATC facility giving jurisdiction of the Class C airspace. ATC may authorize a deviation on a continuing basis or for an individual flight, as appropriate. c) Arrivals and overflights. No person may operate an aircraft in Class C airspace unless two−way radio communication is established with the ATC facility having jurisdiction over the Class C airspace prior to entering that area and is thereafter maintained with the ATC facility having jurisdiction over the Class C airspace while within that area. d) Departures. No person may operate an aircraft within Class C airspace except as follows: 1) From the primary airport or satellite airport with an operating control tower, unless two−way radio communication is established and maintained with the control tower, and thereafter as instructed by ATC while operating in the Class C airspace. 2) From a satellite airport without an operating control tower, unless two−way radio communication is established as soon as practical after departing and thereafter maintained with the ATC facility having jurisdiction over the Class C airspace. e) Traffic patterns. No person may take off or land an aircraft at a satellite airport within Class C airspace except in compliance with FAA arrival and departure traffic patterns. f) Equipment requirements. Unless otherwise authorized by the ATC facility having jurisdiction over the Class C airspace, no person may operate an aircraft within Class C airspace unless that aircraft is equipped with the applicable equipment specified in 14 CFR Part 91 (Section 91.215).
	7) Except for persons operating gliders below the floor of Class A airspace, no person may operate an aircraft in Class B, C, D, or E airspace of the 48 contiguous States and the District of Columbia above 10,000 feet MSL, excluding that airspace at and below 2,500 feet AGL, unless that aircraft is equipped with an operable radar beacon transponder having at least a Mode 3/A 4096−code capability, replying to Mode 3/A interrogation with the code specified by ATC, and automatic altitude reporting equipment having a Mode C capability that automatically replies to Mode C interrogations by transmitting pressure altitude information in 100−foot increments.
	8) Compliance with ATC clearances and instructions: a) When an ATC clearance has been obtained, no pilot−in−command may deviate from that clearance, except in an emergency, unless an amended clearance is obtained. A pilot−in−command may cancel an IFR flight plan if that pilot is operating in VFR weather conditions outside of Class A airspace. If a pilot is uncertain of the meaning of an ATC clearance, the pilot shall immediately request clarification from ATC. b) Except in an emergency, no person may operate an aircraft contrary to an ATC instruction in an area in which ATC is exercised. c) Each pilot−in−command who, in an emergency, deviates from an ATC clearance or instruction shall notify ATC of that deviation as soon as possible. d) Each pilot−in−command who is given priority by ATC in an emergency shall submit a detailed report of that emergency within 48 hours to the manager of that ATC facility, if requested by ATC. e) Unless otherwise authorized by ATC, no person operating an aircraft may operate that aircraft according to any clearance or instruction that has been issued to the pilot of another aircraft for radar ATC purposes.
Appendix 1	**Signals**
4.1.1	The flashing white signal to aircraft in flight, meaning ‘‘land at this aerodrome and proceed to apron’’ is not used in the United States. In addition, the alternating red and green signal to aircraft on the ground or in flight means exercise extreme caution.

PANS − RAC − DOC 4444	
There are several substantive differences between the U.S. procedures and those of ICAO, in addition to some minor variations in detail which are not considered significant. These differences are the result of initiatives and/or refinements which the U.S. has effected in the interest of improving the safety and efficiency of air traffic services.	
Part I	**Definitions**
Airborne collision avoidance system	The U.S. uses traffic alert and collision avoidance system (TCAS).
AIRMET information	In the U.S., AIRMET stands for Airman's Meteorological Information which is in−flight weather advisories issued only to amend the area forecast concerning weather phenomena which are of operational interest to all aircraft and potentially hazardous to aircraft having limited capability because of lack of equipment, instrumentation, or pilot qualifications. AIRMETs concern weather of less severity than that covered by SIGMETs or convective SIGMETs. AIRMETs cover moderate icing, moderate turbulence, sustained winds of 30 kt or more at the surface, widespread areas of ceilings less than 1,000 feet and/or visibility less than 3 miles, and extensive mountain obscurement.
Air−report	The U.S. does not normally use the term "air−report.'' Pilot weather reports (PIREPs), position, and operational reports are used. PIREPs include reports of strong frontal activity, squall lines, thunderstorms, light to severe icing, wind shear and turbulence (including clear air turbulence) of moderate or greater intensity, volcanic eruptions and volcanic ash clouds, and other conditions pertinent to flight safety. They may include information on ceilings, visibility, thunderstorms, icing of light degree or greater, wind shear and its effect on airspeed, or volcanic ash clouds, but do not usually include air temperature.
Air−taxiing	In the U.S., the term "hover taxi" is sometimes used to indicate the ICAO term "air−taxiing." Additionally, in the U.S., air taxi is used to indicate certain commercial aircraft operations. For those operations, usually a special call sign is used, or the prefix "Tango" is added to the aircraft call sign.
ALERFA	The U.S. does not use the code words ALERFA, DETRESFA, and INCERFA to designate an alert phase, a distress phase, or an uncertainty phase in domestic airspace. The U.S. uses information request (INREQ) and alert notice (ALNOT) in domestic airspace.
Area control service	The U.S. does not use the term "area control service" to indicate controlled flight in controlled areas.
ATS route	In U.S. domestic airspace, the term "ATS route" is not used. Routes in the U.S. include VOR airways, jet routes, substitute routes, off−airway routes, RNAV routes and colored airways. The U.S. also uses instrument departure procedures (DPs), and standard terminal arrivals (STARs).
Automatic dependent surveillance (ADS)	The U.S. has not yet published ATS procedures for the use of Automatic Dependent Surveillance (ADS).
Control zone	The U.S. uses "surface area" in place of the ICAO term "control zone." Surface area is defined as the airspace contained by the lateral boundary of the Class B, C, D or E airspace designated for an airport that begins at the surface and extends upward.
Controlled airspace	The U.S. uses the following definition of controlled airspace found in 14 CFR Section 1.1: "Controlled airspace means an airspace of defined dimensions within which air traffic control service is provided to IFR flights and to VFR flights in accordance with the airspace classification."
Cruising level	The U.S. uses the term "cruising altitude."
Decision altitude	Approach with vertical guidance (VNAV).
DETRESFA	See ALERFA.
Flight information centre	In the U.S., the services provided by flight information centers (FICs) are conducted by air traffic control (ATC) facilities, automated flight service stations (AFSSs), and rescue coordination centers (RCCs).

Glide path	The U.S. uses "glideslope" rather than "glide path" although the terms are sometimes interchangeable. For the U.S., a glideslope provides vertical guidance for aircraft during approach and landing.
Holding point	The U.S. uses "holding fix" rather than "holding point."
Holding procedure	In the U.S., a hold procedure is also used during ground operations to keep aircraft within a specified area or at a specified point while awaiting further clearance from air traffic control.
INCERFA	See ALERFA.
Level	The U.S. uses "altitude" or "flight level" rather than "level."
Movement area	In the U.S., the "movement area" is equivalent to the ICAO "maneuvering area" which does not include parking areas.
Pilot−in−Command	Designated by operator, or in the case of general aviation, the owner, as being in command and charged with the safe conduct of a flight.
Slush	In the U.S., "slush" is not used as a weather phenomena.
Standard instrument arrival (STAR)	The U.S. uses the acronym STAR to define a standard terminal arrival.
Standard instrument departure (SID)	The U.S. uses the term departure procedure (DP) in lieu of SID.
Stopway	The U.S. does not define a stopway as a rectangular area.
Taxi−holding position	In the U.S., "taxi into position and hold" means taxi onto the departure runway in take−off position and hold while the ICAO "taxi−holding position" or "taxi−holding point" is a designated position that provides adequate clearance from a runway.
Terminal control area	In the U.S., the term "terminal control area" has been replaced by "Class B airspace." Standard IFR services should be provided to IFR aircraft operating in Class B airspace.
Track	The U.S. uses the term "course" instead of "track."
Transition altitude, transition layer, and transition level	In U.S. domestic airspace, transition altitude, layer, and level are not used. U.S. flight levels begin at FL 180 where a barometric altimeter setting of 29.92 inches of mercury is used as the constant atmospheric pressure. Below FL 180, altitudes are based on barometric pressure readings.
Visibility	Definitions are different.
Visual approach	In the U.S., aircrews may execute visual approaches when the pilot has either the airport or the preceding aircraft in sight and is instructed to follow it.
Part IV	**General Provisions**
3.2.1.1	Transfer of control points vary depending on numerous factors.
3.2.1.3	Transfer of control varies.
3.3.1a	The U.S. does not "release" aircraft. Handoff is used.
4.1	In the U.S., flight information and alerting services are provided by ATC facilities, AFSSs, and RCCs.
5.7.5.1	The flight crew shall read back to the air traffic controller safety−related parts of ATC clearances.
6.1.5	Mach speeds at or above 7,600 Meters (FL 250).
6.3.6	Only minor speed reductions of 20 knots should be used on intermediate or final approach.
6.3.7	Speed control after 7KM (4NM) should not be applied.
8, 8.4	The U.S. uses a flight plan format different from the ICAO model discussed in Appendix 2. The U.S. ATS facilities will transmit ICAO repetitive flight plans (RPLs) even though a different format is used for stored flight plans.

9.3	ATS units are not required to advise a pilot who has canceled an IFR flight plan that IMC conditions are likely to be encountered along the route of flight; however, if a pilot informs a controller of a desire to change from IFR to VFR, the controller will request that the pilot contact the appropriate AFSS.
10.2.2	Standard IFR services should be provided to IFR aircraft operating in Class B airspace. U.S. Class B airspace includes a speed restriction of 250 kt indicated airspeed or less.
10.2.3	U.S. ATS controllers do not normally include clearance for transonic acceleration in their ATC clearances.
12.1.1, 12.1.1.1, 12.2	In U.S. domestic airspace, transition altitude, layer, and level are not used. U.S. flight levels begin at FL 180 where a barometric altimeter setting of 29.92 inches of mercury is used as the constant atmospheric pressure. Below FL 180, altitudes are based on barometric pressure readings. QNH and QFE altimeter settings are not provided in domestic U.S. airspace.
13.1	In the U.S., the word "heavy" is used in all communications with or about heavy jet aircraft in the terminal environment. In the en route environment, "heavy" is used in all communications with or about heavy jet aircraft with a terminal facility, when the en route center is providing approach control service, when the separation from a following aircraft may become less than five miles by approved procedure, and when issuing traffic advisories.
13.4.1	Flight Progress Strips shall be retained for at least 30 days.
14.3, 14.4	The U.S. has not yet published ATS procedures for the use of Automatic Dependent Surveillance (ADS).
15.1, 15.2, 15.3, 15.4, 15.5, 15.6, 16	The U.S. does not normally use the term "air−report." Pilot weather reports (PIREPs), position, and operational reports are used. PIREPs include reports of strong frontal activity, squall lines, thunderstorms, light to severe icing, wind shear and turbulence (including clear air turbulence) of moderate or greater intensity, volcanic eruptions and volcanic ash clouds, and other conditions pertinent to flight safety. They may include information on ceilings, visibility, thunderstorms, icing of light degree or greater, wind shear and its effect on airspeed, or volcanic ash clouds, but do not usually include air temperature.
18	The U.S. has procedures for a duplicate aircraft identification watch and notification to airline operators but does not publish national procedures for on−the−spot temporary changes to aircraft call signs in accordance with ICAO guidelines.
19	The U.S. uses traffic alert and collision avoidance system (TCAS). U.S. controllers are not to issue control instructions that are contrary to the TCAS resolution advisory (RA) procedure that a crew member advises is being executed.
Part V	**Separation Methods and Minima**
	Remark: The U.S. does not use the term "area control service" to indicate controlled flight in controlled areas.
1.1	In U.S. airspace, only conflict resolution (not separation) is provided between IFR and VFR operations. Separation is provided between IFR and Special VFR (SVFR) aircraft only within the lateral boundaries of Class B, C, D, or E control zones (the U.S. term is surface areas) below 10,000 feet MSL.
3.4.1	U.S. rules allow assignment of altitude to second aircraft after first aircraft has been issued climb/descent and is observed or reports leaving that altitude.
5.2	Whenever the other aircraft concerned are within 5 minutes flying time of the holding area.
8	The U.S. uses the term "course" instead of "track." "Reciprocal" courses are sometimes referred to as "opposite" courses. The wording of the definitions for U.S. *same*, *crossing*, or *opposite/reciprocal* courses differs from the ICAO worded definitions, but the intent appears to be the same.
8.2.1.1, 8.3.1.1.1	The U.S. uses 22 kt instead of 20 kt and 44 kt instead of 40 kt.
8.4.1	The U.S. does not conduct direct pilot−controller high frequency (HF) communications. The U.S. is establishing direct pilot−controller data link communications where HF is currently being used.
14.1	In U.S. Class A and B airspace, separation is provided for all aircraft. In U.S. Class C airspace, separation is provided between IFR and SVFR aircraft; conflict resolution is provided between IFR and VFR operations.

17.3	In the U.S., if the communications failure occurs in IFR conditions, or if VFR cannot be complied with, each pilot shall continue the flight according to the following requirements: <u>Route</u> a) By the route assigned in the last ATC clearance received; b) If being radar vectored, by the direct route from the point of failure to the fix, route, or airway specified in the vector clearance; c) In the absence of an assigned route, by the route that ATC has advised may be expected in a further clearance; or d) In the absence of an assigned route or a route that ATC has advised may be expected in a further clearance, by the route filed in the flight plan. <u>Altitude</u> − At the highest of the following altitudes or flight levels for the route segment being flown: a) The altitude or flight level assigned in the last ATC clearance received; b) The minimum altitude as prescribed in 14 CFR Part 91 (Section 91.121(c)) for IFR operations; or c) The altitude or flight level ATC has advised may be expected in a further clearance.
Part VI	**Separation in the Vicinity of Aerodromes**
5.7.1	Arriving aircraft − delay of 10 minutes or more.
5.8.1	Onward clearance time.
7.3.1.2	Parallel approaches, separate radar controllers
7.3.2.9	PAOAS Criteria.
7.3.2.9	45 degree track.
7.3.2.10	Both controllers are advised when visual separation is applied.
7.3.5.3	SRA
9	In the U.S., aircrews may execute visual approaches when the pilot has either the airport or the preceding aircraft in sight and is instructed to follow it. A contact approach is one wherein an aircraft on an IFR flight plan, having an air traffic control authorization, operating clear of clouds with at least 1 mile flight visibility and a reasonable expectation of continuing to the destination airport by visual reference in those conditions, may deviate from the instrument approach procedure and proceed to the destination airport by visual reference to the surface. This approach will only be authorized when requested by the pilot and the reported ground visibility at the destination airport is at least 1 statute mile.
15	Except where a "runway use" program is in effect, in the U.S. the runway used will be the one most nearly aligned with the wind when 5 kt or more, or the "calm wind" runway when less than 5 kt unless use of another runway will be operationally advantageous or is requested by a pilot.
Part VII	**Aerodrome Control Service**
2.2	When neither communications nor radar contact can be established for 30 minutes (or prior, if appropriate), U.S. controllers will consider an aircraft overdue and will initiate overdue aircraft procedures including reporting to the ARTCC or AFSS.
5.3.1.1.2	Taxi clearance.
6.1.2	In the U.S., airport lighting is not used for en route navigation.
8.4.3	Takeoff clearance shall include the designator of the runway.
9.3.1	Landing clearance shall include the designator of the runway.
10.3	In the U.S., "taxi into position and hold" means taxi onto the departure runway in takeoff position and hold while the ICAO "taxi−holding position" or "taxi−holding point" is a designated position that provides adequate clearance from a runway.
10.5, 10.5.1	In the U.S., the term "hover taxi" is sometimes used to indicate the ICAO term "air−taxiing." In the U.S., air−taxiing is the preferred method for helicopter movements on airports provided ground operations/conditions permit.

11.2.1	In the U.S., for movements of other than aircraft traffic (i.e., vehicles, equipment, and personnel), steady green means cleared to cross, proceed, go; flashing green is not applicable; flashing white means return to starting point on airport; and alternating red and green means a general warning signal to exercise extreme caution.
11.2.2	U.S. controllers do not normally flash runway or taxiway lights.
15.1, 15.2	In the U.S., landing clearance to a succeeding aircraft in a landing sequence need not be withheld if the controller observes the positions of the aircraft and determines that prescribed runway separation will exist when the aircraft crosses the landing threshold. Controllers issue traffic information to the succeeding aircraft if it has not previously been reported.
16	ICAO aircraft wake turbulence categories (heavy, medium, light) and FAA weight classes (heavy, large, small) differ. Also, for landing aircraft, wake turbulence separation is defined differently. The U.S. makes special provisions for any aircraft landing behind a B−757 (4 miles for a large aircraft behind or 5 miles for a small aircraft behind).
17	Special VFR operations may be conducted in the U.S. under the following weather minimums and requirements below 10,000 feet MSL within the airspace contained by the upward extension of the lateral boundaries of the controlled airspace designated to the surface for an airport. These minimums and requirements are found in 14 CFR Section 91.157. Special VFR operations may only be conducted: (1) With an ATC clearance; (2) Clear of clouds; (3) Except for helicopters, when flight visibility is at least 1 statute mile; and (4) Except for helicopters, between sunrise and sunset (or in Alaska, when the sun is 6 degrees or more below the horizon) unless: (i) The person being granted the ATC clearance meets the applicable requirements for instrument flight; and (ii) The aircraft is equipped as required in 14 CFR Sec. 91.205(d). No person may take off or land an aircraft (other than a helicopter) under special VFR: (1) Unless ground visibility is at least 1 statute mile; or (2) If ground visibility is not reported, unless flight visibility is at least 1 statute mile.
Part VIII	**Radar Services**
6.5.2	The U.S. has not implemented cold temperature corrections to the radar minimum vectoring altitude chart.
7.4.4.1	See Part VII, Aerodrome Control Service, 16.
7.6	U.S. ATS units do not accept aircraft speeds in metric terms nor do they use the term “minimum clean speed.” The U.S. does use phrases such as “maintain maximum forward speed” or “maintain slowest practical speed.”
9.3.5, 9.3.6	The U.S. normally uses “glideslope” rather than “glide path” although they are sometimes interchangeable. For the U.S., a glideslope provides vertical guidance for aircraft during approach and landing.
Part IX	**Flight Information and Alerting Service**
1.3.2	See Part IV, General Provision, 15.1.
1.3.7	The U.S. does not have special procedures for the transmission of information to supersonic aircraft.
1.4.1, 1.4.2, 1.4.3	Class F airspace is not used in the U.S. Traffic advisories are provided in Class C airspace and, workload permitting, in Class D, Class E, and Class G airspace.
2.1.2, 2.1.3, 2.2.1	The U.S. does not use “operations normal” or “QRU” messages. U.S. controllers are not normally familiar with the term “uncertainty phase.”
Part X	**Co−ordination**
3.2.10	See Part IV, General Provision, 14.3.

3.3.1.1, 3.3.2.1	Except for a VFR aircraft practicing an instrument approach, an IFR approach clearance in the U.S. automatically authorizes the aircraft to execute the missed approach procedure depicted for the instrument approach being flown. No additional coordination is normally needed between the approach and en route controllers. Once an aircraft commences a missed approach, it may be radar vectored.
Part XI	**Air Traffic Services Messages**
1.3	The existing U.S. ATS automation system does not process logical acknowledgment messages (LAMs).
4.2.2.2.1	See Part IV, General Provision, 8.
4.2.3.1, 4.2.3.6, 4.2.4, 4.2.5.1, 4.2.5.4	See 1.3, above.
4.2.5.5	See Part IV, General Provision, 15.1.
4.3.1.2.1	In the U.S., traffic information messages include the position of the traffic (aircraft concerned).
4.3.2.2.1, 4.3.2.3.5	U.S. controllers do not use the term "CAVOK." However, the ceiling/sky condition, visibility, and obstructions to vision may be omitted if the ceiling is above 5,000 feet and the visibility is more than 5 miles.
4.3.2.2.1, 4.3.2.3.2, 4.3.2.3.3	U.S. controllers do not give wind speed, visibility, or RVR/RVV values in metric terms. RVR values are given in 100− or 200−foot increments while RVV values are given in $^{1}/_{4}$−mile increments.
4.3.2.3.1	In the U.S., the criteria for a variable wind is wind speed greater than 6 kt and direction varies by 60 degrees or more. If the wind is □ 1 kt but □6 kt, the wind direction may be replaced by "VRB" followed by the speed or reported as observed. "VRB" would be spoken as "wind variable at <speed>."
4.3.2.3.3.1	RVR values between 400m and 800m in increments of 50m.
4.3.2.3.4.1	For weather phenomena, the U.S. uses "ice crystals" instead of "diamond dust" and does not use the term "dust devils."
4.3.2.3.4.2	Additionally, the U.S. uses "supercooled" (or freezing) and "partial" as descriptors for weather phenomena.
4.3.2.3.5	In the U.S., CLR is used at automated stations for SKC when no clouds below 12,000 feet are reported. SCT indicates cloud coverage between 3−4 oktas; FEW indicates cloud coverage >0 but □2 oktas.
4.3.2.3.5.1	Abbreviation NSC.
4.3.2.3.6	In the U.S., since the Celsius scale is not as finely graduated as the Fahrenheit scale, the hourly temperature and dew point to the nearest tenth of a degree will be encoded in the additive data section of METAR remarks.
4.3.2.3.7	In the U.S., an "A" precedes the altimeter which is given in inches of mercury.
Part XII	**Phraseologies**
2.3	In the U.S., "proceed" or "hold" may be used for aircraft or equipment/vehicle/personnel operations, while "taxi" and "cleared" should only be used as appropriate for aircraft instructions.
2.4 2.7	In the U.S., conditional clearances are not usually issued. However, traffic that may affect the clearance is usually issued to the aircraft with the clearance. Restricted clearances may also be issued.
2.5, 2.6, 2.7, 2.8	In the U.S., pilots may acknowledge some clearances, instructions, or other information by using "wilco," "roger," "affirmative," or other words or remarks. If the pilot reads back information, the controller should ensure the readback is correct or make corrections as appropriate.
2.8, 3.1.1 3.1.2	The U.S. uses "altitude" or "flight level" rather than "level"; and "cruising altitude" rather than "cruising level." The term "level" is not used to mean "height," "altitude," or "flight level" in the U.S. The U.S. sometimes uses "altitude" to mean "altitude" or "flight level."

3.1.1, 3.1.2	U.S. ATS units do not normally accept aircraft speeds or altitudes in metric terms nor do they use the term "minimum clean speed." The U.S. does not use the term "level" in lieu of "flight level" or "altitude." The U.S. also uses the phrases "maintain the highest/lowest practical speed" and "increase or reduce to a specified speed or by a specified number of knots."
3.1.2	See Part IX, Flight Information and Alerting Service, 1.3.7. Also, the term "step climb" is not used in the U.S. The word "immediately" is used only when expeditious compliance is required to avoid an imminent situation. Instead of "maintain own separation and VMC 'from,' 'above,' or 'below' . . . ," U.S. controllers say "maintain visual separation 'from' that traffic." For TCAS resolution advisories in the U.S., pilots would advise "clear of conflict, returning to . . . ."
3.1.2a,ii	To and maintain block (level) to (level).
3.1.4	See Part IV, General Provision, 18.
3.1.6	See Part XI, ATS Messages, 4.3.2.2.1.
3.1.6	See Part IV, General Provision, 12.1.
3.1.6 Note 2	"Midpoint" and "rollout" may be omitted.
3.1.9i	Temperature issued with Braking Action.
3.2.1	The U.S. uses the phraseology "rest of route remains unchanged."
3.3.1	Instead of "track," U.S. controllers would advise pilots to "fly a (degree) bearing/azimuth from/to (fix) until (time)" or "until reaching (fix or altitude)," and if required, "before proceeding on course."
3.4.7	See Part IV, General Provision, 12.1.
3.4.8	See Part VII, Aerodrome Control Service, 10.3. Also, U.S. controllers do not use the term "backtrack."
3.4.11	U.S. controllers do not say "line up" or "wait." Clearance to enter runway and await take−off clearance is stated "taxi into position and hold."
3.4.11	The U.S. does not have additional phraseology to stop a take−off after an aircraft has commenced take−off roll.
3.4.13	See 3.3.1, above.
3.4.14	See Part IV, General Provision, 12.1.
3.4.16	The U.S. does not use the term "low pass" for a clearance.
4.1.1	U.S. controllers do not use the phrases "identified" or "not identified [position]" to replace "radar contact [position]."
4.1.3	U.S. controllers do not say "closing [slowly (or quickly)] [from the left (or from the right)]" nor "heading is good" nor "rate of descent is good" nor do they give "(number) meters left (or right) of course or too high or too low." In case of elevation failure, U.S. controllers advise "no glidepath information available . . . ." instead of "elevation element unserviceable . . . ."
4.1.5	The U.S. does not use the phraseology "Start and stop all turns on the command 'now'."
4.1.5c	Start and stop all turns on the command "NOW."
4.1.6	See 3.1.1, above.
4.1.10	U.S. controllers say "radar service terminated" not "radar control terminated." U.S. controllers do not say "will shortly lose identification" or "identification lost."
4.1.11	The U.S. does not use the same phraseology for secondary radar failures. The U.S. does use (name of facility) beacon interrogator inoperative/malfunctioning. Primary radar failure is covered where secondary radar service is still available with the note that traffic advisories available on radar transponder aircraft only.
4.2.1	U.S. controllers would use "airport" rather than "field."
4.2.2	In the U.S., pilots are not told "you will intercept (radio aid or track) (distance) from (significant point or touchdown)." Neither are pilots informed "closing from left (or right) [report established]" nor "this turn will take you through (aid) [reason]" nor "taking you through (aid) [reason]." Also, see 3.1.1, above.

4.2.3	U.S. ATS units use "course" rather than "track."
4.2.3	The U.S. uses the phraseology for a traffic alert in lieu of the phrase "to avoid traffic"; however, the sense of urgency is the same as the word "immediately" is used by both PANS ATM and FAA.
4.2.4.1	U.S. controllers say "this will be a P−A−R/surveillance approach to runway (number) or airport/runway (number) or airport/heliport." U.S. controllers do not say "approach completed . . . ." U.S. controllers say "your missed approach procedure is (missed approach procedure)" and, if needed, "execute missed approach."
4.2.4.2	For PAR approaches, U.S. controllers say "begin descent" and for surveillance approaches, U.S. controllers say "descend to your minimum descent altitude."
4.2.4.4	The wheels down check is only done by U.S. military ATS units; the phraseology is "check wheels down" for military tower controllers and "wheels should be down" for military ATS radar units.
4.2.4.5	Although U.S. controllers say "go around," they do not say "continue visually or go around." In that case, they would say "if runway, approach/runway lights, not in sight, execute missed approach" or "if not visual, (advise you) execute missed approach." Also, see 4.2.4.1, above.
4.2.5.1	See 4.2.4.1, above.
4.2.5.3	See Part VIII, Radar Services, 9.3.5 and 4.1.3, above.
4.2.5.4	See 4.1.3 and 4.2.4.2, above.
4.2.5.7	See 4.2.4.1, above.
4.2.5.8	See 4.2.4.5, above.
4.3.3	When a transponder appears inoperative or malfunctioning, U.S. controllers would instruct " . . . reset transponder, squawk" or " . . . your transponder appears inoperative/malfunctioning, reset, squawk . . . ."
4.3.6, 4.3.8	U.S. controllers do not say "squawk Charlie." U.S. controllers may ask a pilot to "ident" or "squawk standby" or "squawk low/normal" or "squawk MAYDAY on 7700" or "squawk altitude."
4.3.9	For aircraft above FL 180, U.S. controllers would say, "confirm using two niner niner two as your altimeter setting, verify altitude" or "stop altitude squawk" "stop altitude squawk; altitude differs by (number) feet." U.S. controllers would not say "stop squawk Charlie."
4.3.10	See 4.3.6, above.
4.3.11, 4.3.12	See 4.3.9, above.
4.3.13	U.S. controllers would say "verify at (altitude)" and/or "verify assigned altitude."
6.1.1	U.S. controllers would issue MEA/MVA/MOCA/MIA instead of QNH.
Part XIV	**Procedures Related to Emergenices, Communication Failure and Contingencies**
3	The U.S. has organized this material from the perspective of the controller. ICAO has outlined information the pilot can expect to provide.
4.3	The U.S. uses 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle and for separation from other aircraft, 1,000 feet above or 2,000 feet below and 5 miles. This includes VFR aircraft.
6.1	The U.S. does not have a section pertaining to emergency separation.
6.3	As previously covered in past differences, the U.S. uses TCAS. U.S. orders speak to controller actions when advised of an aircraft responding to a resolution alert (RA).
Appendix 1	**Instructions for Air−reporting by Voice Communications**
AIREP Form of Air−report	See Part IV, General Provision, 15.1.

Appendix 2	**Flight Plan**
	See Part IV, General Provision, 8.
2.2 (Item 15)	U.S. ATS units do not accept cruising speeds nor filed altitudes/flight levels in metric terms. The U.S. accepts filed Mach Number expressed as M followed by 3 figures.
2.2 (Item 18)	The U.S. requires filed FIR boundary designators and accumulated estimated elapsed times to such points or FIR boundaries in the sequence and form as prescribed in 2.2, Item 18 of Doc 4444, Appendix 2.
Appendix 3	**ATS Messages**
1.1.1	See Part XI, ATS Messages, 1.3.
1.6.2	See Part XII, Phraseologies, 2.8.
1.8.1 (Field Type 3), (Field Type 15), and (Field Type 18).	See Part XI, ATS Messages. 1.3. See Appendix 2, Flight Plan, 2.2 (Item 15) and 2.2 (Item 18).
2.1, 2.4.5, 2.5	See Part XI, ATS Messages 1.3.
Attachment B	**This section now appears in the Air Traffic Services Planning Manual (Doc 9426).**
3.2 (Item 15)	See Appendix 2, Flight Plan, 2.2 (Item 15).
3.2 (Item 18)	See Appendix 2, Flight Plan, 2.2 (Item 18).

ANNEX 3 − METEOROLOGICAL SERVICE FOR INTERNATIONAL AIR NAVIGATION	
Chapter 3	**World Area Forecast System and Meteorological Offices**
3.2.1 b), c)	The capability to comply continues to be developed.
Chapter 4	**Meteorological Observations and Reports**
4.3.1 c)*	The U.S. does not prepare SPECI for changes in air temperature.
4.3.3 a)*	Practices require SPECI for wind shift when wind direction changes by 45 degrees or more in less than 15 minutes and the wind speed is 10 knots or more throughout the wind shift.
4.3.3 b)*	Practices do not require SPECI for increases of mean surface wind speed.
4.3.3 c)*	Practices require SPECI for squall, where squall is defined as a strong wind characterized by a sudden onset in which the wind speed increases at least 16 knots and is sustained at least 22 knots or more for at least 1 minute.
4.3.3 d)*	Practices do not require SPECI for wind direction changes based on local criteria.
4.3.3 f)*	SPECI are not prepared for the equivalents in feet of 150, 350, or 600 meters. U.S. military stations may not report a SPECI based on RVR.
4.3.3 g)*	Practices do not require SPECI for the onset, cessation, or change in intensity of: – freezing fog. – moderate or heavy precipitation (including showers thereof). – low drifting dust, sand or snow. – blowing dust, sand or snow (including snowstorm). – duststorm. – sandstorm.
4.3.3 h)*, j)*	Practices do not require SPECI when the height of the lowest BKN or OVC cloud layer or vertical visibility changes to or passes 100 feet (30 meters) unless an approach minimum exists.
4.5.6*, 4.5.9 a)*	Practices use 6−knot criterion for average wind speed to report variable wind direction in METAR and SPECI.
4.5.9 b)*	Practices define wind gust as rapid fluctuations in wind speed with a variation of 10 knots or more between peaks and lulls. Wind speed data for the most recent 10 minutes is examined and a gust, the maximum instantaneous wind speed during that 10−minute period, is reported if the definition above is met during that period.
4.6.5*	Practice is to report prevailing visibility. Prevailing visibility is defined as the visibility that is considered representative of visibility conditions at the station (automated observation), or the greatest distance seen throughout at least half the horizon circle, not necessarily continuous (manual observation).
4.7.14*	RVR values, reported in feet (FT), are based on light setting 5 (highest available) for the designated instrument runway. RVR tendency is not reported.
4.8.2*	The following weather elements are augmented manually at designated automated stations observation sites: FC, TS, GR, GS, and VA. At selected airports, additional present weather elements may be provided. With the exception of volcanic ash, present weather is reported when prevailing visibility is less than 7 statute miles or considered operationally significant. Volcanic ash is always reported when observed.
4.8.4*	The practice is to not report the following weather phenomena at unstaffed stations in METAR or SPECI: DZ, PL, IC, SG, GR, GS, SA, DU, FU, VA, PY, PO, SQ, FC, DS, and SS.
4.8.5*	The practice is to not report the following characteristics of present weather phenomena in METAR or SPECI: SH, DR, MI, BC, and PR at unstaffed stations.
4.8.6*	The practice with respect to the proximity indicator VC is between 5 to 10 statute miles from the point of observation with the exception of precipitation for which the VC indicates >0 to 10 statute miles from the point of observation.

4.9.5*	The U.S. reports only up to 3 layers at automated sites and up to 6 layers at manual sites. Cloud layer amounts are a summation of layers at or below a given level, utilizing cumulative cloud amount. In addition, at automated sites which are unstaffed, cloud layers about 12,000 feet are not reported. At staffed automated sites, clouds above 12,000 feet may be augmented.
4.13.1*	Practices require the inclusion of a modifier field to designate AUTO for totally ‘‘automated’’ observations (no human augmentation) or COR for corrected observations between the date and time of the report and the surface wind direction and speed.
4.13.2	The U.S. does not use the term CAVOK in meteorological reports.
Chapter 6	**Forecasts**
6.2.5 b)*	Change groups and amendment criteria below 1/2 statute mile (800 meters) are not used.
6.2.5 d)*	The 100 foot (30 meter) change group and amendment criterion is not used.
6.2.17*	Forecast visibility increments used consist of 1/4 mile from 0 (zero) to 1 mile; 1/2 mile from 1 to 2 miles; and 1 mile above 2 miles.
6.2.18*	Practices require the forecast of non−convective low−level wind shear within 2,000 feet of the ground in the Optional Group.
6.2.19*	The U.S. does not use CAVOK and NSC in meteorological forecasts.
6.3*, 6.4*	Landing and takeoff forecasts are provided by the TAF.
6.5*	Upper winds and upper−air temperatures are not included in area forecasts.
6.6.2, 6.6.3	Area forecasts are issued three times a day in the U.S., with the exception of Alaska and Hawaii where they are issued four times a day. They are valid for a 12−hour period beginning 1 hour after issuance and have an 18−hour outlook.
Chapter 7	**SIGMET and AIRMET Information, Aerodrome Warnings and Wind Shear Warnings**
7.3.1	The U.S. does not include cloud amount or type in AIRMET.
9.6.1, 9.6.3	The U.S. does not report ISOL, OCNL, or FREQ in accordance with the guidance on the use of the terms given in Attachment F.
*Indicates ICAO Recommended Practice	

ANNEX 4 − AERONAUTICAL CHARTS	
Chapter 1	**Definitions**
Air taxiway	The U.S. does not depict defined surfaces for air−taxiing of helicopters.
Danger area	The term “danger area” will not be used in reference to areas within the U.S. or in any of its possessions or territories.
Final approach and take−off area (FATO)	The U.S. does not depict final approach and take−off areas (FATOs).
Helicopter stand	The U.S. does not use this term.
Prohibited area Restricted area	The U.S. will employ the terms “prohibited area” and “restricted area” substantially in accordance with the definitions established and, additionally, will use the following terms: “Alert area.” Airspace which may contain a high volume of pilot training activities or an unusual type of aerial activity, neither of which is hazardous to aircraft. “Controlled firing area.” Airspace wherein activities are conducted under conditions so controlled as to eliminate the hazards to nonparticipating aircraft and to ensure the safety of persons and property on the ground. “Warning area.” Airspace which may contain hazards to nonparticipating aircraft in international airspace. “Maneuvering area.” This term is not used by the U.S. “Military operations area (MOA).” An MOA is an airspace assignment of defined vertical and lateral dimensions established outside Class A airspace to separate/segregate certain military activities from IFR traffic and to identify for VFR traffic where these activities are conducted. “Movement area.” Movement area is defined by the U.S. as the runways, taxiways, and other areas of an airport which are utilized for taxiing, take−off, and landing of aircraft, exclusive of loading ramp and parking areas.
Touchdown and lift−off area (TLOF)	The U.S. does not use this term.
Chapter 2	**General Specifications**
2.1	The titles of charts produced by the U.S. are not those provided for in Annex 4.
2.2.1	The marginal note layouts, in some cases, differ from those set forth in Appendices 1, 5, and 6.
2.4.1	Visibility distances are expressed in statute miles and fractions thereof.
2.4.4	Conversion scale (meters/feet) is not shown on Radio Navigation Charts.
Chapter 3	**Aerodrome Obstacle Chart − ICAO Type A (Operating Limitations)**
3.1	The U.S. produces an Airport Obstruction Chart which covers the basic requirements called for by Aerodrome Obstruction Chart − ICAO Type A.
Chapter 4	**Aerodrome Obstacle Chart − ICAO Type B**
4.1	The U.S. produces an Airport Obstruction Chart which covers the basic requirements called for by Aerodrome Obstruction Chart − ICAO Type B.
Chapter 5	**Aerodrome Obstacle Chart − ICAO Type C**
5.8.1	The navigation grid on U.S. Aircraft Position Chart 3097 comprises lines parallel to 54● West Meridian and the navigation grid on U.S. Aircraft Position Chart 3096 comprises lines parallel to 92● West Meridian. These changes to the ICAO Standard were made to provide navigation grid lines vertical to a great circle projection base.
Chapter 6	**Precision Approach Terrain Chart − ICAO**
6.9.1.1	Only outbound magnetic bearings from VOR facilities and inbound magnetic bearings to low/medium frequency radio navigation facilities are shown.

Chapter 7	**En Route Chart − ICAO**
7.9.3.1.1 1) and 5)	The U.S. depicts geographic positions in degrees and minutes to the hundredth of a degree.
Chapter 8	**Area Chart − ICAO**
8.9.3.1.1 1) and 6)	The U.S. depicts geographic positions in degrees and minutes to the hundredth of a degree.
Chapter 9	**Standard Departure Chart − Instrument (SID) − ICAO**
9.3.1	Charts covering continental U.S. between latitudes 24● and 52● North are based on standard parallels at 33● and 45● and between latitudes 52● and 72● North on standard parallels at 55● and 65●.
9.4.1	The U.S. uses a sheet numbering system which differs from the index in Appendix 7.
9.8.3.2*	The elevation of the highest point on any sheet is not always cleared of hypsometric tinting.
9.9.3.1.1 2d) and 3)	The U.S. depicts geographic positions in degrees and minutes to the hundredth of a degree.
9.10.1	Heliports are not shown.
Chapter 10	**Standard Arrival Chart − Instrument (STAR) − ICAO**
10.8.3.2*	The elevation of the highest point on any sheet is not always cleared of hypsometric tinting.
10.9.3.1.1 2d) and 3)	The U.S. depicts geographic positions in degrees and minutes to the hundredth of a degree.
Chapter 11	**Instrument Approach Chart − ICAO**
11.10.4.3	The U.S. does not depict geographic position of the final approach fix.
Chapter 12	**Visual Approach Chart − ICAO**
12.2.1	Stopways are not indicated.
12.5.5.2.1	The datum (MSL) is stated in the Instrument Approach Chart legend, not on the chart.
12.6.2	Runway threshold elevations are not shown.
Chapter 13	**Aerodrome/Heliport Chart − ICAO**
13.6.1.d Surface type for heliports.	The U.S. does not show “type of surface for heliports.”
13.6.2 Elevated helidecks, etc.	The U.S. does not show “surface level, elevated, or helidecks.”
Chapter 14	**Aerodrome Ground Movement Chart − ICAO**
14.6.1 c)	The U.S. does not depict geographic positions of aircraft stands.
14.6.1 f)	The U.S. does not depict taxiway centerline points.
Appendix 2	**ICAO Chart Symbols**
No. 21	Tidal flats are shown in brown stipple over the blue open water tint.
No. 45	Rocks awash are shown by a six−armed symbol as adopted by the International Hydrographic Bureau.
No. 54, 61	Spaces between sides of bridge and road or railroad symbols are filled solid.
No. 70	Oil or gas fields are shown with an oil well derrick symbol.
No. 77	Ruins are shown by a solid square, properly annotated.

No. 94	The runway surface indicator (letter H) and the lighting indicator (letter L) are not normally used on high altitude Radio Navigation Charts. Only those airports with a minimum of 5,000 feet hard−surfaced runways are shown. The letter H is not used on low altitude Radio Navigation Charts. All airports depicted have hard−surfaced runways, excepting that where the letter "S" follows the runway length, the runway surface is soft. On Visual Navigation Charts of the 1:500 000 scale, a miniature runway layout depiction indicates airports with hard−surfaced runways at least 1,500 feet long.
No. 110	Aerodrome traffic zones are termed "SURFACE AREAS" in U.S. usage. These are all of standard dimensions. Limits are not shown, but airports at which SURFACE AREAS have been established are indicated by a color−coded airport symbol.
No. 113	Limits of advisory areas are shown on Radio Navigation Charts with a crenellated line. This depiction is indicated in the legend as the border of an Air Route Traffic Control Center (ARTCC).
No. 116	The nomenclature "non−compulsory" is used instead of "on request" for appropriate position reporting points.
No. 127	Isogonic lines are shown on Radio Navigation Charts only as short sections of continuous lines extending inward from the neat lines.
*Indicates ICAO Recommended Practice.	

ANNEX 5 − UNITS OF MEASUREMENT TO BE USED IN AIR−GROUND COMMUNICATIONS
General Statement: Most of the individual SI quantities and measurement units listed in the Annex are not commonly used in routine international air operations. Although most U.S. national standards and practices do not specifically utilize the SI units, the SI units of measurement are acceptable and not prohibited from use by U.S. regulations. Under the present operational practices, these differences are not significant and are identified in U.S. Aeronautical Information and Technical Publications. In accordance with Article 38 of the Convention, the U.S. wishes to file the enclosed Notice of Differences to Annex 5, Fourth Edition, as amended by Amendment 13. Only those differences recognized as necessary for the safety or regularity of international air navigation and required for day−to−day operations in U.S. airspace are listed separately in this notification. In addition, we do not support the establishment of dates for planning purpose for termination of the use of bar, knot, nautical mile, and foot. (Chapter 4, Table 4−1) Until sufficient operational analysis identifies and resolves the safety issues, the establishment of termination dates for use of the bar, knot, nautical mile, and foot is unacceptable.
Reference: Table 3−4, Chapter 3, Annex 5, Fourth Edition, as Amended by Amendment 13.

Chapter 3.3 (Table 3−4)			
Ref. No.	**Quantity**	**Unit (SI)**	**Differences as of 5 January 1988**
1.4	distance (short)	meter	foot
1.12	runway length	meter	foot
1.13	runway visual range	meter	foot
1.15	time	hour and minute, the day of 24 hours beginning at midnight UTC	Time may be given in local time
1.16	visibility	kilometer	statute mile and fraction
2.12	mass (weight)	kilogram	pound (lb)
3.2	altimeter setting	hectopascal	inches of mercury
6.7	temperature	°C	C° except Fahrenheit used for surface air and dew point temperature
10.1	absorbed dose	Gy	rd
10.2	absorbed dose rate	Gy/s	rd/s
10.4	dose equivalent	Sv	rem
10.5	radiation exposure	C/kg	R
10.6	exposure rate	C/kg s	R/s
All non−SI alternative units listed in this table will continue to be utilized where permitted. (1.1, 1.3, 1.5, 1.7, 4.1, 4.7, 4.15, 4.16)			

ANNEX 6 − OPERATION OF AIRCRAFT	
PART I	
Chapter 1	**Definitions**
Aerodrome operating minima	This term is not used in the U.S.
Category I (Cat I) operation	For a Category I operation, the U.S. requires a decision height (DH) of not less than 200 feet and either visibility of not less than 1/2 mile or a runway visual range of 2,400 feet (RVR 1,800 feet with operative touchdown zone and runway centerline lights).
Category II (Cat II) operation	The U.S. requires that Category II provide approaches to minima of less than 200 feet decision height/2,400 runway visual range to as low as 100 feet decision height/1,200 feet runway visual range.
Category IIIA (Cat IIIA) operation	U.S. criteria are the same as those adopted in Part 1 of Annex 6. However, the runway visual range is expressed as not less than 700 feet (200 meters).
Category IIIB (Cat IIIB) operation	U.S. criteria are the same as those adopted in Part 1 of Annex 6. However, the runway visual range is expressed as less than 700 feet (200 meters) but not less than 150 feet (50 meters).
Cruising level	The term “cruising altitude” is used in lieu of “cruising level” in U.S. ATC phraseology.
Decision height	Although not identical, the U.S. definition of decision height is not substantially different.
General aviation operation	General aviation is defined as all civil aviation operations other than scheduled air transportation and nonscheduled air transport operations for remuneration or hire. The classification of general aviation flying by powered aircraft is, as follows: Instructional flying. Use of an aircraft for purposes of flight instruction with an instructor. The flights may be performed by aero−clubs, flying schools, fixed−base operators, or commercial operators. Business flying. Use of an aircraft to carry personnel and/or property to meet the transport needs of officials of a business, firm, company, or corporation. These flights may be performed by a commercial pilot or by a private pilot. Pleasure flying. Use of an aircraft for personal or recreational purpose not associated with a business or profession. Aerial work. Use of an aircraft for activities such as: (1) crop dusting, chemical or fertilizer spraying, seed dissemination, prevention of frost formation, insect fighting, animal herding, or (2) aerial photography, patrol and surveillance, prospecting, construction, advertising, medical relief, and rescue work. Other flying. All flights by pilots for maintaining their flight proficiency should also be included under this heading as well as all general aviation flights that cannot be included in the above four categories.

Instrument meteorological conditions (IMC) Visual meteorological conditions (VMC)	The U.S. difference, as stated in the Supplement to Annex 2, 5th Edition, dated February 1967 as amended by Amendment 1 is as follows: It will be impracticable to implement the terms "instrument meteorological conditions" and "visual meteorological conditions," abbreviated as "IMC" and "VMC" as they appear in Chapter 1, Definitions, and within the other paragraphs of the Annex where they appear. Use of the terms "IFR conditions" and "VFR conditions" rather than "instrument meteorological conditions" and "visual meteorological conditions" will have no effect with respect to the safety of air navigation. The terms "IFR conditions" and "VFR conditions" have been in effect in the U.S. for many years and are well known to all pilots and providers of the various aeronautical services. Therefore, a change from the present phraseology to the new phraseology would, in so far as the U.S. is concerned, impose a change which is not justified from the standpoint of improvement of the overall aviation procedures and practices. U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations specify the use of the phrases "IFR conditions" and "VFR conditions."
Maximum mass	The U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations state "weight" rather than "mass."
Obstacle clearance limit (OCL)	This term is not used in the U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations.
Pressure altitude	Although not identical, the U.S. definition of pressure altitude is not substantially different.
Synthetic flight trainer: flight simulator, flight procedures trainer, basic instrument flight trainer	The U.S. does not have a regulatory definition of these terms; however, the terms are in common usage in the U.S. and have a meaning that is similar to the ICAO definition.
Chapter 4	**Flight Operations**
4.3.1 d)	The U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations state "weight" rather than "mass."
4.3.7.2	When refueling with passengers embarking, on board, or disembarking an airplane, two−way communication is not required between the ground crew supervising the refueling and the qualified personnel on board the airplane. The U.S. refueling safety procedures which meet the intent of this Standard are contained in each operator's approved operating manual.
4.3.8.2	U.S. regulations require descent within 4 minutes to 14,000 feet rather than 13,000 feet (620 hPa).
4.4.4.4	U.S. regulations require all occupants of seats equipped with combined safety belts and shoulder harnesses to be properly secured during take−offs and landings and still be able to properly perform their assigned duties.
4.4.9.2	The U.S. Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) develops standard flight operational noise abatement procedures for each airplane type. Alternative flight operational noise procedures are also developed by the FAA for certain airports that have unique noise situations.
Chapter 5	**Aeroplane Performance Operating Limitations**
5.2.6, 5.2.7 a), b), c), d)	The U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations state "weight" rather than "mass."
5.2.8.1	U.S. regulations do not require that account be taken of the loss, if any, of runway length due to alignment of the airplane prior to take−off in determining the length of the runway available.
Chapter 6	**Aeroplane Instruments, Equipment and Flight Documents**
6.2.4.2	The U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations express lengths in feet and inches.

6.3	a) Large airplanes that have a U.S. original type certificate issued on or before 30 September 1969, which are certificated for operations above 25,000 feet altitude or are turbine−engine powered must have one or more flight data recorders that record data from which time, altitude, airspeed, vertical acceleration, heading and the time of each radio transmission either to or from air traffic control (ATC) can be determined. b) Large airplanes that have a U.S. original type certificate issued after 30 September 1969, which are certificated for operations above 25,000 feet altitude or are turbine−engined powered must have one or more flight data recorders that record data from which the following information may be determined: time, altitude, airspeed, vertical acceleration, heading, time of each radio transmission either to or from ATC, pitch attitude, roll attitude, sideslip angle or lateral acceleration, pitch trim position, control column or pitch control surface position, control wheel or lateral control surface position, rudder pedal or yaw control surface position, thrust of each engine, position of each thrust reverser, trailing edge flap or cockpit flap control position, and leading edge flap or cockpit flap control position.
6.3.1.1	Pursuant with above paragraph a), recorders do not record engine power, configuration, or operation. Pursuant with paragraph b), recorders do not record operation.
6.3.1.2	Pursuant with above paragraph a), recorders do not record engine power or configuration of lift and drag devices.
6.3.5.1	The U.S. does not require such equipage for all aircraft which meet this weight criterion. U.S. regulations (14 CFR 135.152) only require that multi−engine, turbine−powered airplanes or rotorcraft with 10−19 seats that are brought onto the U.S. register after 11 October 1991, be equipped with the flight data recorder specified in this standard.
6.4	Although the U.S. does provide air traffic control services to aircraft operating under VFR, it does not specifically provide for en route "controlled VFR flights" in the ICAO context. The U.S. does not, therefore, have specific requirements or regulations regarding airman certification or aircraft minimum equipment for "controlled VFR flights."
6.5.1 a), c)	The U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations do not require all seaplanes for all flights to be equipped with: a) equipment for making the sound signals prescribed in the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea; or b) one sea anchor (drogue).
6.5.3.1	The U.S. defines extended over water operations for aircraft other than helicopters as an operation over water at a horizontal distance of more than 50 nautical miles from the nearest shoreline.
6.7.5	U.S. regulations require that oxygen dispensing units capable of being automatically presented to the passengers and cabin attendants (before the cabin pressure altitude exceeds 15,000 feet) be installed, in all transport category aircraft approved to operate <u>above 30,000 feet</u>, type certificated on or after 1 September 1977.
6.9.2	The U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations state "weight" and express weight in pounds.
6.12	The U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations do not require airplanes operated above 15,000 meters (49,000 feet) to carry equipment to measure and indicate continuously the dose rate of total cosmic radiation being received and the cumulative dose on each flight.
6.15.1, 6.15.2	The U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations state "weight" and express weight in pounds.
6.17.1	The U.S. only requires one automatic−type, emergency locator transmitter in operable condition that meets the requirement of TSO−C91. However, installations of emergency locator transmitters which occur after 21 June 1995 must meet the requirements of TSO−C91A.
6.17.2	Emergency locator transmitters are not required for: turbojet−powered aircraft, aircraft while engaged in scheduled flights by scheduled air carriers, or aircraft while used to show compliance with regulators or crew training.
6.18.1	U.S. regulations do not require such airplanes to be equipped with an airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS II). U.S. regulations only require equipage with TCAS II which is not equivalent to ACAS II.
6.18.2	U.S. regulations do not require such airplanes to be equipped with an airborne collision avoidance system (ACAS II). U.S. regulations only require equipage with TCAS I.

6.19	U.S. regulations do not require that all airplanes be equipped with pressure−altitude reporting transponders. The U.S. requirement for pressure altitude reporting transponders depends on the specific airspace in which airplanes fly.
Chapter 8	**Aeroplane Maintenance**
8.1.3	U.S. regulations do not require persons who sign maintenance releases to be licensed strictly in accordance with the provisions of Annex 1. U.S. requirements do not include knowledge of human performance/limitations or entries on the license such as specific aircraft model and avionic systems or components (or under broad categories).
8.7.5.4	There is no comparable requirement in U.S. regulations for training in knowledge and skills related to human performance.
8.7.6.2	U.S. regulations require that records of work shall be retained until the work is repeated, superseded by other work or for one year after the work is performed.
8.8.2	The U.S. does not require records to be maintained after the end of the operating life of the unit.
Chapter 9	**Aeroplane Flight Crew**
9.5	The U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations do not require a flight crew member to have a spare set of suitable lenses readily available when exercising the privileges of a license for which he/she was assessed as fit subject to suitable correcting lenses being worn. However, the U.S. practice is to require extra correcting lenses when a flight crew member's defective visual acuity necessitates a limitation; i.e., worse than 20/100 uncorrected distance visual acuity.
Chapter 11	**Manuals, Logs and Records**
11.1.11	a) Operators may conduct operations without an approved minimum equipment (MEL) list provided all instruments and equipment are fully operable. b) The U.S. prohibits operations to be conducted solely under the provisions of a master minimum equipment list (MMEL). Each operator must develop its own MEL, based on the MMEL, which includes operational procedures. When approved, the MEL may be used only by the individual operator.
PART II	
General	The U.S. does not accept any provision of Annexes 2, 6, 10, or 11 or any other Annex as a Standard or Recommended Practice as applicable to State aircraft. In accordance with Article 3(a) of the Convention of International Civil Aviation, the Convention and its Annexes are not applicable to State aircraft. In so far as any provisions of Annexes 2, 6, 10 or 11 address the operation or control of State aircraft, the U.S. considers such provisions to be in the nature of a special recommendation of the Council, advisory only, and not requiring the filing of differences under Article 38 of the Convention.
Chapter 1	**Definitions**
Category I (Cat I) operation	For a Category I operation, the U.S. requires a decision height (DH) of not less than 200 feet and either visibility of not less than 1/2 mile or a runway visual range of 2,400 feet (RVR 1,800 feet with operative touchdown zone and runway centerline lights).
Category II (Cat II) operation	The U.S. requires that Category II provide approaches to minima of less than 200 feet DH/2,400 runway visual range to as low as 100 feet DH/1,200 runway visual range.
Category IIIA (Cat IIIA) operation	U.S. criteria are the same as those adopted in Part 1 of Annex 6. However, the runway visual range is expressed as not less than 700 feet (200 meters).
Category IIIB (Cat IIIB) operation	U.S. criteria are the same as those adopted in Part 1 of Annex 6. However, the runway visual range is expressed as less than 700 feet (200 meters), but not less than 150 feet (50 meters).

Minimum descent altitude (MDA) or minimum descent height (MDH)	The U.S. does not use MDH (or height above airport) as an altitude or height in a nonprecision approach or circling approach below which descent must not be made without the required visual reference.
Chapter 3	**General**
3.5	The pilot−in−command is not required to have available on board the airplane essential information concerning search and rescue services.
Chapter 4	**Flight Preparation and In−Flight Procedures**
4.3	Except as provided for in 14 CFR 91.519 for large and turbine−powered, multi−engine airplanes, the pilot−in−command is not required to ensure that crew members and passengers are familiar with the location and use of emergency exits, life jackets, oxygen dispensing equipment, or other emergency equipment provided for individual use.
4.6.2.1	A destination alternate airport is not required when the weather at the airport of intended landing is forecast to have a ceiling of at least 2,000 feet and a visibility of at least 3 miles. In addition, standard alternate airport minima are prescribed as follows: 600−foot ceiling and 2 miles visibility are prescribed for precision approaches, and 800−foot ceiling and 2 miles visibility for nonprecision approaches.
4.6.2.2 b)	The forecast period for the destination alternate airport is from 1 hour before to 1 hour after the estimated time of arrival. In addition, the minima for ceiling/visibility at the airport of intended landings are 2,000 feet and 3 miles; that is, when at least such minima exist, no alternate airport is required.
4.6.3	A flight is permitted to continue towards the airport of intended landing when the latest available meteorological information indicates that conditions at that airport will, at the expected time of arrival, be at or below the specified airport meteorological minima.
4.9	The pilot−in−command is not required to ensure that all persons on board the aircraft during an emergency are instructed in emergency procedures.
4.14 b)	The pilot−in−command is not required to discontinue a flight at the nearest suitable airport when flight crew members' capacity to perform functions is significantly reduced by impairment of faculties from causes such as fatigue, sickness or lack of oxygen.
4.18.1, 4.18.2	The recommendation concerning aircraft refueling with passengers on board is not addressed in U.S. regulations. U.S. experience has not demonstrated a need for such regulation.
Chapter 6	**Aeroplane Instruments and Equipment**
6.1.3.1.1	All airplanes on all flights are not required to be equipped with an accessible first aid kit, portable fire extinguishers, seat or berth for each person, current and suitable air navigation charts, or spare electrical fuses. However, spare fuses are required on all airplanes operated at night or under instrument flight rules. In addition, general aviation aircraft presently are not required to carry on board either procedures, as prescribed in Annex 2, for pilots−in−command of intercepted aircraft or visual signals for use by intercepting and intercepted aircraft. (See ENR 1.12, Interception of Civil Aircraft National Security and Interception Procedures.)
6.1.3.1.2	All airplanes on all flights are not required to be equipped with ground/air signal codes for search and rescue purposes.
6.2.1 b), c)	An accurate time piece and a sensitive pressure altimeter are not required for VFR flight.
6.3.1 a), b), c), and d)	The U.S. does not require all seaplanes on all flights to be equipped with the items listed in subparagraphs a), b), c), and d).
6.3.2	Single−engine airplanes flying over water are not required to be equipped with life jackets or equivalent individual flotation devices when the airplane is operated more than 50 nautical miles from land suitable for an emergency landing.

6.3.3 a)	Only large and turbine−powered, multi−engine airplanes are required to carry life preservers or an approved flotation means for each occupant of an airplane on a flight over water more than 50 nautical miles from the nearest shore.
6.3.3 b)	Only large and turbine−powered, multi−engine airplanes on flights over water for more than 30 minutes flying time or 100 nautical miles from the nearest shore are required to have life rafts and pyrotechnic signaling devices.
6.4	Not all airplanes on flights over land areas designated as areas in which search and rescue would be especially difficult are specifically required to be equipped with signaling devices or life−saving equipment.
6.5	All airplanes on high altitude flights, both pressurized and unpressurized, are required to carry oxygen for the crew and passengers.
6.6 f), h), and i)	All airplanes when operated in accordance with the instrument flight rules or when the airplane cannot be maintained in a desired altitude without reference to one or more flight instruments are not required to be equipped with: −− an outside air temperature indicator. −− an airspeed indicating system with a means of preventing malfunctioning due to condensation or icing; or −− a rate of climb and descent indicator.
6.7 a), c), d), e) and f)	All airplanes operated at night are not required to be equipped with: −− A turn and bank indicator. −− An attitude indicator (artificial horizon). −− A heading indicator (directional gyroscope). −− A means of indicating whether the supply of power to the gyroscope instruments is adequate. −− A sensitive pressure altimeter. −− A means of indicating the outside air temperature. −− A timepiece with a sweep second hand. −− An airspeed indicating system with a means of preventing malfunctioning due to either condensation or icing. −− A rate−of−climb and descent indicator. −− A landing light. −− Illumination for flight instruments and equipment. −− Lights in passenger compartments; or −− An electric torch for each crewmember station.
6.9	The U.S. does not require general aviation aircraft to be equipped with ground proximity warning systems.
6.10.3.1 and Recommenda-tion 6.10.3.2	The requirement for U.S. general aviation airplanes to be equipped with flight data recorders (FDRs) is based on passenger and engine configurations. Specifically, FDRs are required for U.S. civil registered multiengine, turbine−powered airplanes having a passenger seating configuration of 10 passengers or more, excluding any pilot seats.
6.10.4.1 and Recommenda-tion 6.10.4.2	The requirement for U.S. general aviation airplanes to be equipped with cockpit voice recorders (CVRs) is based on passenger, crew, and engine configurations. Specifically, CVRs are required for U.S. civil registered multiengine, turbine−powered airplanes having a passenger seating configuration of six passengers or more, and for which two pilots are required by type certification.
6.10.7.2	U.S. regulations do not require that flight recorders be deactivated upon completion of flight time following an accident or incident, or prohibit their reactivation before their disposition is determined. U.S. regulations require that such recorders be operated continuously from the use of checklist before the flight to completion of the final checklist at the end of the flight (14 CFR Section 91.609(d) and (g)).
6.12.1	Emergency locator transmitters are not required for: turbojet−powered aircraft while operated in scheduled flights by scheduled air carriers; training operations within a 50−nautical mile radius of the airport from which the flight began; flight operations incident to design and testing; flight operations of new aircraft incident to manufacture, preparation, and delivery; agricultural aircraft operations; aircraft certificated for research and development purposes; operations showing compliance with regulations, crew training, exhibition, air racing, or market surveys; or aircraft equipped to carry not more than one person.

Recommendation 6.14	U.S. regulations do not require that flight crew members communicate through boom or throat microphones below the transition level/altitude.
Chapter 7	**Aeroplane Communication and Navigation Equipment**
7.1.1	All airplanes operated at night are not required to have radio communications equipment capable of conducting two−way communications with aeronautical stations.
7.1.2	When more than one radio communications equipment unit is required, it is not required that each unit be independent of the other or others.
7.1.4	Except when operating under instrument flight rules, airplanes operated on extended flights over water or on flights over underdeveloped land are not required to have radio communications equipment capable of conducting two−way communications at any time during flight with aeronautical stations.
7.1.5	The U.S. does not base its requirement for radio communications equipment in general aviation aircraft on the criteria included in ICAO Annex 6, Part II (Chapters 6 and 7); for example, all night operations, operations over land areas in which search and rescue would be especially difficult, etc. Instead, U.S. requirements for such equipment is based upon the type of airspace with which the aircraft is to be involved; that is, use of controlled airspace such as terminal control areas (Class B Airspace), airport radar service areas, and positive control areas (Class A Airspace). Thus, U.S. requirements do not depend on such ICAO factors as time of day of the operation or the nature of the land over which the operation is to be conducted. Where such equipment is required by U.S. regulations, the aeronautical emergency frequency of 121.5 MHz is automatically available to all such radio−equipped aircraft since the VHF communications frequency range encompasses the emergency frequency of 121.5 MHz.
7.2.4	An airplane is not required to be provided with navigation equipment to ensure that, in the event of the failure of one item of equipment at any stage of the flight, the remaining equipment will enable the airplane to proceed in accordance with 7.2.1.
Chapter 8	**Aeroplane Maintenance**
8.3.2	The U.S. does not require records to be maintained after the end of the operating life of the unit.
PART III	
SECTION I	
General	The U.S. does not accept any provision of Annexes 2, 6, 10, or 11 or any other Annex as a Standard or Recommended Practice as applicable to State aircraft. In accordance with Article 3(a) of the Convention of International Civil Aviation, the Convention and its Annexes are not applicable to State aircraft. In so far as any provisions of Annexes 2, 6, 10, or 11 address the operation or control of State aircraft, the U.S. considers such provisions to be in the nature of a special recommendation of the Council, advisory only, and not requiring the filing of differences under Article 38 of the Convention.
Chapter 1	**Definitions**
Minimum descent altitude (MDA) or minimum descent height (MDH)	The U.S. does not use MDH (or height above airport) as an altitude or height in a non−precision approach or circling approach below which descent must not be made without the required visual reference.
Performance Class 1 helicopter	The U.S. does not have performance class designations for helicopters.
Performance Class 2 helicopter	The U.S. does not have performance class designations for helicopters.
Performance Class 3 helicopter	The U.S. does not have performance class designations for helicopters.

SECTION II − International Commercial Air Transport	
2.2.11	The U.S. regulations require that helicopters flown over water in passenger−carrying operations must simply be equipped with flotation devices.
2.3.4.1 b)	The U.S. has no requirement that a point of no return (PNR) be determined.
2.3.4.3	The U.S. has no related requirement for the use of on−shore versus off−shore alternate heliports.
2.3.6.2 b)	The requirement for fuel reserves for VFR operations is 20 minutes at normal cruise speed.
2.3.6.3.1	There is no U.S. requirement for maintenance of a specific altitude above a destination. In addition, the U.S. requirement is based on normal cruise speed, not holding speed, and provides for a single, 30−minute reserve.
2.3.6.3.2	There is no requirement for maintenance of a specific altitude above an alternate. In addition, the requirement is based on normal cruise speed, no holding speed, and provides for a single, 30−minute reserve.
2.3.6.3.3	The U.S. has no related requirement. If the destination weather so requires, an alternate must be specified and a 30−minute fuel reserve carried.
Chapter 3	**Helicopter Performance Operating Limitations**
3.1.1	The U.S. has no related performance class requirements.
Chapter 4	**Helicopter Instruments, Equipment and Flight Documents**
4.3.3.1 and Recommendation 4.3.3.2	The U.S. requires that multi−engine, turbine−powered rotorcraft having a passenger seating configuration of 20 or more seats be equipped with one or more flight recorders. In addition, multi−engine, turbine−powered rotorcraft, brought onto the U.S. register after 1 October 1991 having a passenger seating configuration of 10 to 19 seats must have one or more flight recorders.
4.3.5	The U.S. requires cockpit voice recorders in all multi−engine, turbine−powered rotorcraft having a passenger seating configuration of 20 or more seats and in all multi−engine, turbine−powered rotorcraft having a passenger seating configuration of six or more and for which two pilots are required by certification or operating rules.
4.5.1	U.S. regulations require that helicopters flown over water in passenger−carrying operations must simply be equipped with flotation devices.
4.5.2.1	Life rafts and pyrotechnic signaling devices are only required for extended over−water operations; that is, with respect to helicopters, an operation over water at a horizontal distance of more than 50 nautical miles from the nearest shoreline and more than 50 nautical miles from an off−shore heliport structure.
4.7 (all)	The U.S. does not require rotorcraft to carry emergency locator transmitters.
4.11.1 c)	The U.S. requires only one landing light for operations conducted at night for hire.
4.15	U.S. regulations do not require that all helicopters be equipped with pressure−altitude reporting transponders. The U.S. requirement for pressure−altitude reporting transponders depends on the specific airspace in which helicopters fly.
Chapter 6	**Helicopter Maintenance**
6.3	There is no comparable requirement in U.S. regulations for training in knowledge and skills related to human performance.
Chapter 7	**Helicopter Flight Crew**
7.4.1	Recency of experience need not be in the same type of helicopter.
7.4.2	Recency of experience need not be in the same type of helicopter.
7.4.3.3	There is no U.S. equivalent for nonscheduled, commercial helicopter operations.
7.5	The U.S. has no related requirement.
Chapter 11	**Security**
11.1	The U.S. has no related requirement.

SECTION III − International General Aviation	
Chapter 2	**Flight Operations**
2.3.1 b), c), d), and e	The U.S. has no related requirement.
2.3.2	The U.S. has no related requirement.
2.6.2.1	A destination alternate heliport is not required when the weather at the heliport of intended landing is forecast to have a ceiling of at least 2,000 feet and a visibility of at least 3 miles. In addition, standard alternate heliport minima are prescribed as follows: 600−foot ceiling and 2 miles visibility are prescribed for precision approaches, and 800−foot ceiling and 2 miles visibility for non−precision approaches.
2.6.2.2	The forecast period for the destination heliport is from 1 hour before to 1 hour after the estimated time of arrival. In addition, the minima for ceiling/visibility at the heliport of intended landing are 2,000 feet and 3 miles; that is, when at least such minima exist, no alternate heliport is required.
2.7.1 b)	The U.S. has no related requirement.
2.7.2	The U.S. has no requirement for one engine inoperative performance capability.
2.8.2b)	The U.S. requirement for fuel reserves for VFR operations is 20 minutes at normal cruise speed.
2.8.3.1	There is no U.S. requirement for maintenance of a specific altitude above the destination. In addition, the requirement is based on normal cruise speed, not holding speed, and provides for a single 30−minute reserve.
2.8.3.2	There is no U.S. requirement for maintenance of a specific altitude above the alternate. In addition, the requirement is based on normal cruise speed, not holding speed, and provides for a single 30−minute reserve.
2.8.3.3	The U.S. has no related requirement. If the destination weather so requires, an alternate must be specified and a 30−minute fuel reserve carried.
2.8.4 d)	The U.S. has no related requirement.
2.9.1	The U.S. oxygen supply requirement applies to crew members at altitudes between 12,500 and 14,000 feet. For passengers, the requirement applies above 15,000 feet.
2.10	The U.S. requirement for flight crew members applies at altitudes above 14,000 feet.
2.11	The pilot−in−command is not required to ensure that all persons on board the aircraft during an emergency are instructed in emergency procedures.
2.14 b)	The U.S. has no related requirement.
2.17	The U.S. has no related requirement.
2.18	The recommendations concerning aircraft refueling with passengers on board are not addressed in U.S. regulations. U.S. experience has not demonstrated a need for such regulation.
2.19	The U.S. has no related requirement.
Chapter 3	**Helicopter Performance Operating Limitations**
3.3	The U.S. does not have performance class designations for helicopters.
3.4	The U.S. does not have performance class designations for helicopters.
Chapter 4	**Helicopter Instruments, Equipment and Flight Documents**
4.1.3.1	The U.S. does not require general aviation helicopters to be equipped with a first aid kit or portable fire extinguishers, or to have procedures for pilots−in−command of intercepted aircraft or a list of visual signals for use by intercepting and intercepted aircraft. Spare fuses are not required for day VFR operations.
4.1.3.2	The U.S. has no related requirement.
4.1.3.3	The U.S. requires rotorcraft manufactured after 16 September 1992 to be equipped with a safety belt and shoulder harness for each occupant's seat.
4.1.4.1	The U.S. has no related requirement.
4.1.4.2	The U.S. has no related requirement.

4.2.1	An accurate time piece is not required for VFR flight. In addition, a non−sensitive pressure altimeter is required.
4.3.1	The U.S. has no related requirement.
4.3.2.1	Approved flotation gear and at least one pyrotechnic signaling device are required for aircraft operating for hire over water and beyond a power−off gliding distance from shore.
4.3.2.3	The U.S. has no related requirement.
4.3.2.6	The U.S. has no related requirement.
4.4	The U.S. has no related requirement.
4.6 f)	Only one attitude indicator (artificial horizon) is required.
4.7.1	Landing lights and electric torches are not required for all night operations.
4.9.3.1 and Recommendation 4.9.3.2	The requirement for U.S. general aviation helicopters to be equipped with flight data recorders (FDRs) is based on passenger and engine configurations. Specifically, FDRs are required for U.S. civil registered multiengine, turbine−powered rotorcraft having a passenger seating configuration of 10 passengers or more, excluding any pilot seats.
4.9.4.1 and Recommendation 4.9.4.2	The requirement for U.S. general aviation helicopters to be equipped with cockpit voice recorders (CVRs) is based on passenger, crew, and engine configurations. Specifically, CVRs are required for U.S. civil registered multiengine, turbine−powered rotorcraft having a passenger seating configuration of six passengers or more, and for which two pilots are required by type certification.
4.9.7.2	U.S. regulations do not require that flight recorders be deactivated upon completion of flight time following an accident or incident, or prohibit their reactivation before their disposition is determined. U.S. regulations require that such recorders be operated continuously from the use of checklist before the flight to completion of the final checklist at the end of the flight (14 CFR 91.609 (d) and (g)).
4.10	Emergency locator transmitters are not required for rotorcraft.
4.12	U.S. regulations do not require that flight crew members communicate through boom or throat microphones below the transition level/altitude.
Chapter 5	**Helicopter Communication and Navigation Equipment**
5.2.2	The U.S. has no minimum navigation equipment requirement for VFR flights.

ANNEX 7 − AIRCRAFT NATIONALITY AND REGISTRATION MARKS	
3.3.1 and 4.2.1	The marks on wing surfaces are not required.
3.2.5 and Section 8	Identification plates are not required on unmanned, free balloons.
4.2.2	The minimum height of marks on small (12,500 lb or less), fixed−wing aircraft is 3 inches when none of the following exceeds 180 knots true airspeed: (1) design cruising speed; (2) maximum operating limit speed; (3) maximum structural cruising speed; and (4) if none of the foregoing speeds have been determined for the aircraft, the speed shown to be the maximum cruising speed of the aircraft.
Section 6	A centralized registry of unmanned free balloons is not maintained. Operators are required to furnish the nearest ATC facility with a prelaunch notice containing information on the date, time, and location of release, and the type of balloon. This information is not maintained for any specified period of time.

ANNEX 8 − AIRWORTHINESS OF AIRCRAFT	
PART I Definitions	
Performance Class 1, 2 and 3 helicopters.	Large helicopters (heavier than 6,000 lb) are classified as either Category A or B on the basis of weight, passenger−carrying capacity, and auxiliary systems as well as performance capabilities. There is no classification scheme for all other helicopters (6,000 lb or less).
Standard atmosphere	The U.S. uses the U.S. Standard Atmosphere, 1962. This standard contains a sea−level molecular weight (M') of 28.9644 kg (kg−mol)$^{-1}$.
PART II Administration	
4.2.3	The U.S. does not generally issue Airworthiness Directives for non−type certificated aircraft. This includes foreign aircraft that are U.S.−registered, but operate under experimental, rather than standard airworthiness certificates.
4.2.7	At this time, the U.S. does not require that the continuing structural integrity program contain specific information concerning corrosion prevention and control.
PART III Aeroplanes	
Chapter 1	**General**
1.1.3	The U.S. certificates certain airplanes at weights in excess of 5,700 kg (12,566 lb) that will not fully meet the ICAO Airworthiness Standards of Part III. The Airworthiness Certificate of airplanes that do not meet ICAO Standards will be endorsed as follows: "This airplane at weights in excess of 5,700 kg does not meet the airworthiness requirements of ICAO, as prescribed by Annex 8 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation."
1.5.1	The U.S. also uses service experience and equivalent safety findings as a basis for finding compliance with the appropriate airworthiness requirements.
2.2.3	This ICAO provision requires performance data to be scheduled for ranges of gradient of the landing surface for landplanes and ranges of water surface conditions, water density, and current strength for seaplanes. For landplanes, the U.S. requires the landing distance to be determined only on a level runway. For seaplanes, the U.S. requires the landing distance on water to be determined only on smooth water. Operational take−off and landing distance margins are applied where appropriate by U.S. operational regulations and guidance.
PART IV Helicopters	
Chapter 1	**General**
1.2.2 Note 1	The U.S. does not allow the weight and center of gravity limitations to vary as a function of altitude or phase of flight (take−off, cruise, landing, etc.).
Chapter 2	**Flight**
2.2.1 and 2.2.2	As stated in the difference with respect to the definitions of classes of helicopters in Part I, U.S. classifications are based on other factors as well as performance.
2.2.3.1 through 2.2.3.1.4	For Category B helicopters, only take−off distance is required to be included in the performance data while take−off distance, path, and rejected take−off distance information is required for Category A helicopters. There are no comparable requirements for helicopters weighing less than 6,000 lb.
2.2.3.2	En route performance is based solely on climb performance for both engines operating and one engine inoperative situations (Categories A and B). There is no comparable requirement for helicopters weighing less than 6,000 lb.
2.2.3.3.1	The landing decision point (LDP) is required for Category A helicopters only.
Chapter 4	**Design and Construction**
4.1.6 e)	The U.S. does not provide criteria relative to fire protection/prevention for interior furnishing materials replaced during major refurbishment. The fire protection levied is dependent on the original certification basis.
Chapter 7	**Instruments and Equipment**
7.4.2	Minimum acceptable intensities are prescribed for navigation lights and anti−collision lights; i.e., no reduction below these levels is possible.

ANNEX 9 − FACILITATION	
*The list of differences include Guam, Puerto Rico, and the U.S. Virgin Islands. The status of implementation of Annex 9 in Guam with respect to public health quarantine is not covered in the list of differences.	
Chapter 2	**Entry and Departure of Aircraft**
2.3	Written crew baggage declaration is required in certain circumstances, and a special Embarkation/Disembarkation Card is required for most alien crew members.
2.4	A General Declaration for all inbound and for outbound flights with commercial cargo are required. However, the General Declaration outbound flights with commercial cargo shall not be required if the declaratory statement is made on the air cargo manifest. No declaration is required for outbound flights without commercial cargo if Customs clearance is obtained by telephone.
Remarks	19 CFR 122
2.4.1	Each crew member must be listed showing surname, given name, and middle initial.
2.4.4	The signing or stamping of the General Declaration protects the carrier by serving as proof of clearance.
2.5	The crew list is required by statute.
2.7	There is a statutory requirement for the Cargo Manifest.
2.8	In order to combat illicit drug smuggling, the U.S. requires the additional following information: the shipper's and the consignee's name and address, the type of air waybills, weight, and number of house air waybills. The manifest submitted in electronic form may become legally acceptable in the future. However, until the compliance rate for the automated manifest is acceptable, the U.S. must be able to require the written form of the manifest.
Remarks	19 CFR 122.48
2.9	Nature of goods information is required.
2.10	Stores list required in all cases but may be recorded on General Declaration in lieu of a separate list.
2.17	A cargo manifest is required except for merchandise, baggage and stores arriving from and departing for a foreign country on the same through flight. "All articles on board which must be licensed by the Secretary of State shall be listed on the cargo manifest." "Company mail shall be listed on the cargo manifest."
2.18	Traveling general declaration and manifest, crew purchases and stores list as well as a permit to proceed are required under various conditions when aircraft arrive in the U.S. from a foreign area with cargo shown on the manifest to be traveling to other airports in the U.S. or to foreign areas.
2.21	There is a statutory requirement that such changes can only be made prior to or at the time of formal entry of the aircraft.
2.25	The U.S. does not support the use of insecticides in aircraft with passengers present. Pesticides registered for such use should not be inhaled. In effect, the passenger safety issue has precluded the use of such insecticides in the presence of passengers since 1979.
2.35	Advance notice is required of the number of citizens and aliens on board (non−scheduled flights only).
2.40	A copy of the contract for remuneration or hire is required to be a part of the application in the case of non−common carrier operations.
2.41	Single inspection is accorded certain aircraft not by size of aircraft but rather by type of operation. Loads (cargo) of an agricultural nature require inspection by a plant or animal quarantine inspector.
2.41c	Fees are charged for services provided in connection with the arrival of private aircraft (nonscheduled aircraft).
Chapter 3	**Entry and Departure of Persons and Their Baggage**
3.3	Medical reports are required in some cases.
Remarks	8 CFR 212.7 and INA 234
3.4	Documents such as visas with certain security devices serve as identity documents.
3.4.1	The U.S. has not standardized the personal identification data included in all national passports to conform with the recommendation in Doc 9303.

3.5.6	U.S. passport fees exceed the cost of the operation.
3.5.7	U.S. allows separate passports for minor dependents under the age of 16 entering the U.S. with a parent or legal guardian.
3.7	The U.S. has a pilot program that allows nationals of certain countries which meet certain criteria to seek admission to the U.S. without a visa for up to 90 days as a visitor for pleasure or business.
Remarks	22 CFR 41.112(d) INA 212(d)(4), INA 238, 8 CFR 214.2(c) INA 217
	The law permits visa waivers for aliens from contiguous countries and adjacent islands or in emergency cases. Visas are also waived for admissible aliens arriving on a carrier which is signatory to an agreement assuring immediate transit of its passengers provided they have a travel document or documents establishing identity, nationality, and ability to enter some country other than the U.S.
3.8	The U.S. charges a fee for visas.
3.8.3	Duration of stay is determined at port of entry.
Remarks	INA 217
3.8.4	A visitor to the U.S. cannot enter without documentation.
Remarks	INA 212(a) (26)
3.8.5	Under U.S. law, the duration of stay is determined by the Immigration Authorities at the port of entry and thus cannot be shown on the visa at the time of issuance.
3.10	Embarkation/Disembarkation Card does not conform to Appendix 4 in some particulars.
3.10.1	The operator is responsible for passengers' presentation of completed embarkation/disembarkation cards.
Remarks	8 CFR 299.3
3.10.2	Embarkation/Disembarkation cards may be purchased from the U.S. Government, Superintendent of Documents.
Remarks	8 CFR 299.3
3.14.2	The U.S. fully supports the electronic Advance Passenger Information (API) systems. However, the WCO/IATA Guideline is too restrictive and does not conform to the advancements in the PAXLIST EDIFACT international standard.
3.15	U.S. Federal Inspection Services' officials see individuals more than once.
3.16	Written baggage declarations by crew members are required in some instances.
3.17.1	The U.S. uses a multiple channel system rather than the dual channel clearance system.
3.23, 3.23.1	Statute requires a valid visa and passport of all foreign crew members.
3.24, 3.24.1, 3.25, 3.25.1, 3.25.2, 3.25.3	Crew members, except those eligible under Visa Waiver Pilot Program guidelines, are required to have valid passports and valid visas to enter the U.S.
Remarks	INA 212(a) (26), INA 252 and 253, 8 CFR 214.1(a), 8 CFR 252.1(c)
3.26, 3.27, 3.28, 3.29	Passports and visas are required for crew and non−U.S. nationals to enter the U.S.
3.33	Does not apply to landing card.
3.35	Law requires that the alien shall be returned to the place whence he/she came. Interpretation of this provision requires that he/she be returned to the place where he/she began his/her journey and not only to the point where he/she boarded the last−used carrier.
3.35.1	Law requires that certain aliens be deported from the U.S. at the expense of the transportation line which brought them to the U.S.
3.36	Statute provides for a fine if a passenger is not in possession of proper documents.
3.39.3	NOTE: The U.S. considers security for individuals in airline custody to be the carrier's responsibility.
3.40.2	Annex 9 recommends that fines and penalties be mitigated if an alien with a document deficiency is eventually admitted to the country of destination.
3.43	Operator can be held responsible for some detention costs.

Chapter 4	Entry and Departure of Cargo and Other Articles
4.20	The Goods Declaration as defined by the Kyoto Convention serves as the fundamental Customs document rather than the commercial invoice.
4.40	Aircraft equipment and parts, certified for use in civil aircraft, may be entered duty−free by any nation entitled to most−favored nation tariff treatment. Security equipment and parts, unless certified for use in the aircraft, are not included.
4.41	Customs currently penalizes the exporting carrier for late filing of Shipper's Export Declarations (SEDs) and inaccuracies on bills of lading with respect to the SEDs.
4.42	Regulations require entry of such items, most of which are dutiable by law.
4.44	Certain items in this category are dutiable by law.
4.48	Carriers are required to submit new documentation to explain the circumstances under which cargo manifest is not unladen. No penalty is imposed if the carrier properly reports this condition.
4.50	The procedures for adding, deleting, or correcting manifest items require filing a separate document.
4.55	The U.S. requires a transportation in−bond entry or a special manifest bonded movement for this type of movement.
Chapter 5	**Traffic Passing Through the Territory of a Contracting State**
5.1	Such traffic must be inspected at airports where passengers are required to disembark from the aircraft and no suitable sterile area is available.
5.2	Passports and visas are waived for admissible aliens arriving on a carrier which is signatory to an agreement assuring immediate transit of its passengers provided they have a travel document or documents establishing identity, nationality, and ability to enter some country other than the U.S.
5.3	Such traffic must be inspected at airports where no suitable sterile area is available.
5.4	Passports and visas are waived for admissible aliens arriving on a carrier which is signatory to an agreement assuring immediate transit of its passengers provided they have a travel document or documents establishing identity, nationality, and ability to enter some country other than the U.S.
5.4.1	Passengers will not be required to obtain and present visas if they will be departing from the U.S. within 8 hours of arrival or on the first flight thereafter departing for their destination.
5.8	Examination of transit traffic is required by law. Transit passengers without visas are allowed one stopover between the port of arrival and their foreign destination.
5.9	Passports and visas are required generally for transit passengers who are remaining in the U.S. beyond 8 hours or beyond the first available flight to their foreign destinations.
Chapter 6	**International Airports − Facilities and Services for Traffic**
6.3.1	Procedures involving scheduling committees raise a number of anti−trust problems under U.S. law.
6.33	Sterile physical facilities shall be provided, and in−transit passengers within those areas shall be subject to immigration inspection at any time.
Remarks	OI 214.2(c)
6.34	The U.S. inspects crew and passengers in transit.
6.36	The U.S. inspects crew and passengers in transit.
6.56	Operators of aircraft are statutorily required to pay overtime charges for federal inspections conducted outside normal scheduled hours of operation. This requirement places aircraft operators in a less favorable position than operators of highway vehicles and ferries who are statutorily exempt from such charges.
Chapter 8	**Other Facilitation Provisions**
8.1	Separate bonds are required.
8.3.2	Visas are issued by the Department of State and are not issued at ports of entry.

ANNEX 10 − VOLUME I − AERONAUTICAL TELECOMMUNICATIONS	
PART I	
Chapter 3	
3.1.4.1 3.1.4.2 3.1.4.3	The U.S. does not require such equipage for aircraft.
3.1.7.3.1 c)	When necessary to achieve coverage to the edges of the localizer course, the U.S. authorizes coverage over a greater distance than that specified in 3.1.7.3.1 c); i.e., up to 1,200 meters (4,000 feet) along the localizer course centerline.
3.3.8.1 3.3.8.2 3.3.8.3	The U.S. does not require such equipage for aircraft.
PART II	
Chapter 4	
4.1.5.2	In the U.S., the shortage of communications channels, compared with the total operational requirement, has resulted in the geographical separation between facilities working on the same frequency being considerably less (up to 50 percent reduction) than the Standard defined for such separation.
ANNEX 10 − VOLUME II − AERONAUTICAL TELECOMMUNICATIONS	
Chapter 3	
3.3.2	Class B traffic, including reservation messages pertaining to flights scheduled to depart within 72 hours, shall not be acceptable for transmission over U.S. Government operated AFTN circuits, except in those cases where it has been determined by the U.S. that adequate non−government facilities are not available.
Chapter 4	
4.4.2	In the Caribbean Region, U.S. industry−operated AFTN terminals will continue to accept messages in both ICAO and non−ICAO formats. The U.S. now accepts only messages in ICAO format from other states, including the Caribbean Region.
Chapter 5	
5.2.1.3.1.1	The U.S. will use the term ‘‘hundred’’ in stating altitude numbers by radiotelephone. Whole hundreds will be spoken as follows: 400 – “Four hundred” 4,500 – “Four thousand five hundred”
5.2.1.3.1.2	The U.S. will use the term “point” in lieu of “decimal” in stating frequencies: 126.55 MHz – “One two six point five five” 8,828.5 MHz – “Eight eight two eight point five”
5.2.1.6.1	Air route traffic control centers will use “center” rather than “control” in their radiotelephone identification. Example: “Washington Center.” Approach control service units will use “approach control” or “departure control” rather than “approach” in their radiotelephone identification. Example: “Washington Approach Control” or “Washington Departure Control.” Aerodrome control towers will use “ground control” or “clearance delivery” rather than “tower” in their radiotelephone identification, where appropriate, to identify ground control services. Example: “Washington Ground Control” or “Washington Clearance Delivery.”
5.2.1.6 5.2.1.6.2.1.1 5.2.1.6.2.2.1	U.S. procedures allow abbreviation of only Type a) call signs and limit abbreviation to not less than **three** characters following the first character of the registration marking or the manufacturer of the aircraft. Also, the U.S. does not use call signs comprised of aircraft operating agency telephony designators in combination with aircraft registration markings (Type b).
Remarks	To facilitate understanding, examples (5.2.1.6) should follow rather than precede corresponding provisions which govern them (5.2.1.6.2.1.1 and 5.2.1.6.2.2.1).
5.2.2.1.1.1 5.2.2.1.1.2	The U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations do not require that a continuous airborne guard on VHF121.5 MHz be maintained.

ANNEX 10 − VOLUME III − AERONAUTICAL TELECOMMUNICATIONS	
PART I	
4.2.1.2 4.2.1.3	In the U.S., AMSS terminals shall have the capability of operating in the frequency bands 1544−1559 MHz and 1645.5−1660.5 MHz bands. (NOTE: Use of the band 1544−1545/1645.5−1646.5 MHz by the mobile satellite service is limited to distress and safety.)
PART II	
2.3.3.1 2.3.3.2 2.3.3.3	The U.S. does not require such equipage for aircraft.
ANNEX 10 − VOLUME IV − AERONAUTICAL TELECOMMUNICATIONS	
4.3.2.2.2 4.3.2.2.2.2 4.3.2.2.2.2.2 4.3.2.2.2.2.3	TCAS II Version 6.04A Enhanced Interference Limiting Algorithms won't comply with these sections of the standards and recommended practices (SARPs). See remark below.
4.3.5.1	TCAS II Version 6.04A Enhanced won't comply because it has a 3−second coordination delay. See remark below.
4.3.5.3	TCAS II Version 6.04A Enhanced does not comply since the section implies a requirement for reversals in some instances in encounters between two TCAS II−equipped aircraft. See remark below.
4.3.5.4	TCAS II Version 6.04A Enhanced does not comply since the section explicitly requires reversal of coordinated resolution advisories (RAs) under some circumstances. See remark below.
4.3.5.5	TCAS II Version 6.04A Enhanced does not comply since it contains a dormancy requirement, does not have 5−second targets, and only has surveillance of < 3,000 feet in altitude. See remark below.
4.3.8.4.2.2.1 4.3.8.4.2.2.1.1 4.3.8.4.2.2.1.3 4.3.8.4.2.2.1.4 4.3.8.4.2.2.1.5 4.3.8.4.2.2.1.6 4.3.8.4.2.2.16.1 4.3.8.4.2.2.1.6.2 4.3.8.4.2.2.1.6.3	TCAS II Version 6.04A Enhanced has different RA Report formats in DF > 20, 21 replies. See remark below.
4.3.8.4.2.2.2 4.3.8.4.2.2.3	TCAS Version 6.04 Enhanced has different Data Link Capability format in DF > 20, 21 replies. See remark below.
4.3.8.4.2.3.4 4.3.8.4.2.3.4.1 4.3.8.4.2.3.4.2 4.3.8.4.2.3.4.3 4.3.8.4.2.3.4.4 4.3.8.4.2.3.4.5 4.3.8.4.2.3.4.6	TCAS II Version 6.04A Enhanced RA does not meet the Broadcast format specified in these sections. See remark below.
4.3.8.4.2.4.2.1 4.3.8.4.2.4.2.3 4.3.8.4.2.4.2.4	TCAS II Version 6.04A Enhanced has a different Coordination Reply format in DF > 16 replies. See remark below.
Remark	The U.S. does not require TCAS II Version 7 (ACAS II) equipage in its National Airspace System.

ANNEX 11 − AIR TRAFFIC SERVICES	
Chapter 1	**Definitions**
Air−taxiing	U.S. uses ‘‘hover taxi’’ for this maneuver above 100 feet above ground level (AGL) and ‘‘air taxi’’ below 100 feet AGL.
Airborne collision avoidance	The U.S. uses “traffic alert collision avoidance system (TCAS).” TCAS is an airborne collision avoidance system based on radar beacon signals and operates independent of ground−based equipment. TCAS−1 generates traffic advisories only. TCAS−II generates traffic advisories and resolution (collision avoidance) advisories in the vertical plane.
Chapter 2	**General**
2.6	The Class F airspace is not used in the designation of U.S. airspace.
2.9 2.11 Appendix 1 Appendix 2	Converting the present U.S. system for identifying ATS routes and significant points to conform to the provisions of amended paragraphs 2.9 – 2.9.2, 2.11 – 2.11.3, Appendix 1 and Appendix 2 is an effort of considerable magnitude and complexity. The U.S. has an ongoing program to accomplish the conversion, but it is estimated that a period of 2 to 5 years will be required for full compliance.
Chapter 3	**Air Traffic Control Service**
3.3.3 Exception Clause	Clearances may be issued to conduct flight in VFR conditions without a pilot request if the clearance would result in noise abatement benefits or when a pilot conducts a practice instrument approach.
Chapter 4	**Flight Information Service**
4.2.2 b)	No provision is made for the issuance of collision hazard information to flights operating in Class G airspace.
4.3.4.4 h) 4.3.4.8	The U.S. requires that the current altimeter setting be included in the ATIS broadcast. Information contained in a current ATIS broadcast, the receipt of which has been acknowledged by an aircraft, is not included in a directed transmission to the aircraft unless requested by the pilot.
4.3.5 4.3.6 4.3.7	The order in which information is listed in ATIS broadcast messages is not mandated and certain elements are regarded as optional.
Appendix 1	**Principles Governing the Identification of RNP Types and the Identification of ATS Routes Other Than Standard Departure and Arrival Routes**
	See 2.9, above.
2.2.1	Routes designated to serve aircraft operating from 18,000 MSL up to and including FL 450 are referred to as ‘‘jet routes’’ and are designated with the letter ‘‘J’’ followed by a number of up to three digits.
Appendix 2	**Principles Governing the Establishment and Identification of Significant Points**
	See 2.9, above.
2.1	The U.S. will not comply with this guidance in naming the Missed Approach Point (MAP) located at the landing threshold.
Appendix 4	**ATS Airspace Classifications**
	It should be noted that the term ‘‘Class B airspace’’ as used in the U.S. is more restrictive than that specified by ICAO. Flights within Class B Airspace in the U.S. must be operated in accord with the provisions of 14 CFR Part 91 (Section 91.90).
	Speed restrictions do not necessarily apply to aircraft operating beyond 12 NM from the coast line within the U.S. Flight Information Region, in offshore Class E airspace below 10,000 feet MSL. However, in airspace underlying a Class B airspace area designated for an airport, or in a VFR corridor designated through such a Class B airspace area, pilots are expected to comply with the 200 knot speed limit specified in 14 CFR Part 91 (Sections 91.117(c) and 91.703). This difference will allow airspeed adjustments exceeding 250 knots, thereby improving air traffic services, enhancing safety and expediting air traffic movement.

ANNEX 12 − SEARCH AND RESCUE
There are no reportable differences between U.S. regulations and the Standards and Recommended Practices contained in this Annex.

ANNEX 13 − AIRCRAFT ACCIDENT INVESTIGATION	
Chapter 5	**Investigation**
5.12	The full exchange of information is vital to effective accident investigation and prevention. The U.S. supports, in principle, measures that are intended to facilitate the development and sharing of information. The laws of the U.S. require the determination and public reporting of the facts, circumstances, and probable cause of every civil aviation accident. This requirement does not confine the public disclosure of such information to an accident investigation. However, the laws of the U.S. do provide some protection against public dissemination of certain information of a medical or private nature. Also, U.S. law prohibits the disclosure of cockpit voice recordings to the public and limits the disclosure of cockpit voice recording transcript to that specific information which is deemed pertinent and relevant by the investigative authority. However, U.S. Courts can order the disclosure of the foregoing information for other than accident investigation purposes. The standard for determining access to this information does not consider the adverse domestic or international effects on investigations that might result from such access.
5.25 h)	Investigative procedures observed by the U.S. allow full participation in all progress and investigation planning meetings; however, deliberations related to analysis, findings, probable causes, and safety recommendations are restricted to the investigative authority and its staff. However, participation in these areas is extended through timely written submissions, as specified in paragraph 5.25 i).
5.26 b)	The U.S. supports, in principle, the privacy of the State conducting the investigation regarding the progress and the findings of that investigation. However, the laws of the U.S. facilitate the public disclosure of information held by U.S. government agencies and U.S. commercial business. The standard for determining public access to information requested from a U.S. government agency or a commercial business does not consider or require the expressed consent of the State conducting the investigation.
Chapter 6	**Reporting**
6.13	The U.S. supports the principle of not circulating, publishing, or providing access to a draft report or any part thereof unless such a report or document has already been published or released by the State which conducted the investigation. However, the laws of the U.S. facilitate the public disclosure of information held by government agencies and commercial business. The U.S. government may not be able to restrict public access to a draft report or any part thereof on behalf of the State conducting the investigation. The standard for determining public access to information requested from a U.S. government agency or a commercial business does not consider or require the expressed consent of the State conducting an investigation.

ANNEX 14 − AERODROMES	
VOLUME 1 − AERODROME DESIGN AND OPERATIONS	
Chapter 1	**General**
1.2.1	Airports in the U.S. are for the most part owned and operated by local governments and quasi−government organizations formed to operate transportation facilities. The Federal Government provides air traffic control, operates and maintains NAVAIDs, provides financial assistance for airport development, certificates major airports, and issues standards and guidance for airport planning, design, and operational safety. There is general conformance with the Standards and Recommended Practices of Annex 14, Volume I. At airports with scheduled passenger service using aircraft having more than nine seats, compliance with standards is enforced through regulation and certification. At other airports, compliance is achieved through the agreements with individual airports under which Federal development funds were granted; or, through voluntary actions.
1.3.1 1.3.2 1.3.3 1.3.4	In the U.S., the Airport Reference Code is a two−component indicator relating the standards used in the airport's design to a combination of dimensional and operating characteristics of the largest aircraft expected to use the airport. The first element, Aircraft Approach Category, corresponds to the ICAO PANS−OPS approach speed groupings. The second, Airplane Design Group, corresponds to the wingspan groupings of code element 2 of the Annex 14, Aerodrome Reference Code. See below:

TBL GEN 1.7−1

Airport Reference Code (ARC)

Aircraft Approach Category	Approximate Annex 14 Code Number
A	1
B	2
C	3
D	4
E	−
Airplane Design Group	**Corresponding Annex 14 Code Letter**
I	A
II	B
III	C
IV	D
V	E
VI	F (proposed)

EXAMPLE: AIRPORT DESIGNED FOR B747−400 ARC D−V.

Chapter 2	Aerodrome Data
2.2.1	The airport reference point is recomputed when the ultimate planned development of the airport is changed.
2.9.6 2.9.7	Minimum friction values have not been established to indicate that runways are "slippery when wet." However, U.S. guidance recommends that pavements be maintained to the same levels indicated in the ICAO Airport Services Manual.
2.11.3	If inoperative fire fighting apparatus cannot be replaced immediately, a NOTAM must be issued. If the apparatus is not restored to service within 48 hours, operations shall be limited to those compatible with the lower index corresponding to operative apparatus.
2.12 e)	Where the original VASI is still installed, the threshold crossing height is reported as the center of the on−course signal, not the top of the red signal from the downwind bar.

Chapter 3	Physical Characteristics
3.1.2*	The crosswind component is based on the ARC: 10.5 kt for AI and BI; 13 kt for AII and BII; 16 kt for AIII, BIII and CI through DIII; 20 kts for AIV through DVI.
3.1.9*	Runway widths (in meters) used in design are shown in the table below:

Width of Runway in Meters

Aircraft Approach Category	Airplane Design Group					
	I	II	III	IV	V	VI
A	18[1]	23[1]	−−	−−	45	60
B	18[1]	23[1]	−−	−−	45	60
C	30	30	30[2]	45	45	60
D	30	30	30[2]	45	45	60

[1]The width of a precision (lower than $^3/_4$ statute mile approach visibility minimums) runway is 23 meters for a runway which is to accommodate only small (less than 5,700 kg) airplanes and 30 meters for runways accommodating larger airplanes.

[2]For airplanes with a maximum certificated take−off mass greater than 68,000 kg, the standard runway width is 45 meters.

3.1.12*	Longitudinal runway slopes of up to 1.5 percent are permitted for aircraft approach categories C and D except for the first and last quarter of the runway where the maximum slope is 0.8 percent.
3.1.18*	Minimum and maximum transverse runway slopes are based on aircraft approach categories as follows: For categories A and B: 1.0 − 2.0 percent C and D: 1.0 − 1.5 percent
3.2.2	The U.S. does not require that the minimum combined runway and shoulder widths equal 60 meters. The widths of shoulders are determined independently.
3.2.3*	The transverse slope on the innermost portion of the shoulder can be as high as 5 percent.
3.3.3 3.3.4* 3.3.5*	A strip width of 120 meters is used for code 3 and 4 runways for precision, nonprecision, and non−instrumented operations. For code 1 and 2 precision runways, the width is 120 meters. For non−precision/visual runways, widths vary from 37.5 meters up to 120 meters.
3.3.9*	Airports used exclusively by small aircraft (U.S. Airplane Design Group I) may be graded to distances as little as 18 meters from the runway centerline.
3.3.14*	The maximum transverse slope of the graded portion of the strip can be 3 percent for aircraft approach categories C and D and 5 percent for aircraft approach categories A and B.
3.3.15*	The U.S. does not have standards for the maximum transverse grade on portions of the runway strip falling beyond the area that is normally graded.
3.3.17*	Runways designed for use by smaller aircraft under non−instrument conditions may be graded to distances as little as 18 meters from the runway centerline (U.S. Airplane Design Groups I and II).
3.4.2*	For certain code 1 runways, the runway end safety areas may be only 72 meters.
3.7.1* 3.7.2*	The U.S. does not provide Standards or Recommended Practices for radio altimeter operating areas.
3.8.3*	The U.S. specifies a 6 meter clearance for Design Group VI airplanes.
3.8.4*	The taxiway width for Design Group VI airplanes is 30 meters.
3.8.5*	The U.S. also permits designing taxiway turns and intersections using the judgmental oversteering method.

3.8.7*	Minimum separations between runway and taxiway centerlines, and minimum separations between taxiways and taxilanes and between taxiway/taxilanes and fixed/moveable objects are shown in the tables that follow. Generally, U.S. separations are larger for non−instrumented runways, and smaller for instrumented runways, than the Annex. Values are also provided for aircraft with wingspans up to 80 meters.

Minimum Separations Between Runway Centerline and Parallel Taxiway/Taxilane Centerline

Operation	Aircraft Approach Category	Airplane Design Group						
		I[1]	I	II	III	IV	V	VI
Visual runways and runways with not lower than 3/4-statute mile (1,200 meters) approach visibility minimums	A and B	150 feet 45 meters	225 feet 67.5 meters	240 feet 72 meters	300 feet 90 meters	400 feet 120 meters	−−	−−
Runways with lower than 3/4-statute mile (1,200 meters) approach visibility minimums	A and B	200 feet 60 meters	250 feet 75 meters	300 feet 90 meters	350 feet 105 meters	400 feet 120 meters	−−	−−
Visual runways and runways with not lower than 3/4-statute mile (1,200 meters) approach visibility minimums	C and D	−−	300 feet 90 meters	300 feet 90 meters	400 feet 120 meters	400 feet 120 meters	400[2] feet 120[2] meters	600 feet 180 meters
Runways with lower than 3/4-statute mile (1,200 meters) approach visibility minimums	C and D	−−	400 feet 120 meters	400 feet 120 meters	400 feet 120 meters	400 feet 120 meters	400[2] feet 120[2] meters	600 feet 180 meters

[1]These dimensional standards pertain to facilities for small airplanes exclusively.

[2]Corrections are made for altitude: 120 meters separation for airports at or below 410 meters; 135 meters for altitudes between 410 meters and 2,000 meters; and, 150 meters for altitudes above 2,000 meters.

Minimum Taxiway and Taxilane Separations:

	Airplane Design Group					
	I	II	III	IV	V	VI
Taxiway centerline to parallel taxiway/ taxilane centerline	69 feet 21 meters	105 feet 32 meters	152 feet 46.5 meters	215 feet 65.5 meters	267 feet 81 meters	324 feet 99 meters
Fixed or movable object	44.5 feet 13.5 meters	65.5 feet 20 meters	93 feet 28.5 meters	129.5 feet 39.5 meters	160 feet 48 meters	193 feet 59 meters
Taxilane centerline to parallel taxilane centerline	64 feet 19.5 meters	97 feet 29.5 meters	140 feet 42.5 meters	198 feet 60 meters	245 feet 74.5 meters	298 feet 91 meters
Fixed or movable object	39.5 feet 12 meters	57.5 feet 17.5 meters	81 feet 24.5 meters	112.5 feet 34 meters	138 feet 42 meters	167 feet 51 meters

3.8.10*	Line−of−sight standards for taxiways are not provided in U.S. practice, but there is a requirement that the sight distance along a runway from an intersecting taxiway must be sufficient to allow a taxiing aircraft to safely enter or cross the runway.
3.8.11*	Transverse slopes of taxiways are based on aircraft approach categories. For categories C and D, slopes are 1.0−1.5 percent; for A and B, 1.0−2.0 percent.
3.11.5	The runway centerline to taxi−holding position separation for code 1 is 38 meters for non−precision operations and 53 meters for precision. Code 3 and 4 precision operations require a separation of 75 meters, except for “wide bodies,” which require 85 meters.

Dimensions and Slopes for Protective Areas and Surfaces

	Precision Approach	Non−precision Instrument Approach			Visual Runway	
	All runways	All runways[a]	Runways other than utility[b]	Utility runways[d]	Runways other than utility	Utility runways
Width of inner edge	305 meters	305 meters	152 meters	152 meters	152 meters	76 meters[c]
Divergency (each side)	15 percent	15 percent	15 percent	15 percent	10 percent	10 percent
Final width	4,877 meters	1,219 meters	1,067 meters[c]	610 meters	475 meters[c]	381 meters[c]
Length	15,240 meters	3,048 meters[c]	3,048 meters[c]	1,524 meters[c]	1,524 meters[c]	1,524 meters[c]
Slope: inner 3,049 meters	2 percent	2.94 percent[c]	2.94 percent[c]	5 percent[c]	5 percent[c]	5 percent[c]
Slope: beyond 3,048 meters	2.5 percent[c]					

[a]With visibility minimum as low as 1.2 km; [b]with visibility minimum greater than 1.2 km; [c]criteria less demanding than Annex 14 Table 4−1 dimensions and slopes. [d]Utility runways are intended to serve propeller−driven aircraft having a maximum take−off mass of 5,570 kg.

Chapter 4	**Obstacle Restriction and Removal**
4.1	Obstacle limitation surfaces similar to those described in 4.1−4.20 are found in 14 CFR Part 77.
4.1.21	A balked landing surface is not used.
4.1.25	The U.S. does not establish take−off climb obstacle limitation areas and surface, *per se*, but does specify protective surfaces for each end of the runway based on the type of approach procedures available or planned. The dimensions and slopes for these surfaces and areas are listed in the table above.
4.2	The dimensions and slopes of U.S. approach areas and surfaces are set forth in the above table. Aviation regulations do not prohibit construction of fixed objects above the surfaces described in these sections.
Chapter 5	**Visual Aids for Navigation**
5.2.1.7*	The U.S. does not require unpaved taxiways to be marked.
5.2.2.2*	The U.S. does not require a runway designator marking for unpaved runways.
5.2.2.4	Zeros are not used to precede single−digit runway markings. An optional configuration of the numeral 1 is available to designate a runway 1 and to prevent confusion with the runway centerline.
5.2.4.2* 5.2.4.3*	Threshold markings are not required, but sometimes provided, for non−instrument runways that do not serve international operations.
5.2.4.5	The current U.S. standard for threshold designation is eight stripes, except that more than eight stripes may be used on runways wider than 45 meters. After 1 January 2008, the U.S. standard will comply with Annex 14.
5.2.4.6	The width and spacing of threshold stripes will comply with Annex 14 after 1 January 2008.
5.2.4.10	When a threshold is temporarily displaced, there is no requirement that runway or taxiway edge markings, prior to the displaced threshold, be obscured. These markings are removed only if the area is unsuitable for the movement of aircraft.
5.2.5.2 5.2.5.3*	Aiming point markings are required on precision instrument runways and code 3 and 4 runways used by jet aircraft.
5.2.5.4	The aiming point marking commences 306 meters from the threshold at all runways.
5.2.6.3	The U.S. pattern for touchdown zone markings, when installed on both runway ends, is only applicable to runways longer than 4,990 feet. On shorter runways, the three pair of markings closest to the runway midpoint are eliminated.
5.2.6.4	The U.S. standard places the aiming point marking 306 meters from the threshold where it replaces one of the pair of three stripe threshold markings. The 306 meters location is used regardless of runway length.

5.2.6.5*	Touchdown zone markings are not required at a non−precision approach runway, though they may be provided.
5.2.7.4*	Runway side stripe markings on a non−instrument runway may have an over−all width of 0.3 meter.
5.2.8.3	Taxiway centerline markings are never installed longitudinally on a runway even if the runway is part of a standard taxi route.
5.2.9.5*	The term ''ILS'' is used instead of CAT I, CAT II, CAT III.
5.2.11.4 5.2.11.5* 5.2.11.6*	Check−point markings are provided, but the circle is 3 meters in diameter, and the directional line may be of varying width and length. The color is the yellow used for taxiway markings.
5.2.12	Standards for aircraft stand markings are not provided.
5.2.13.1*	Apron safety lines are not required although many airports have installed them.
5.2.14.1	The U.S. does not have standards for holding position markings on roadways that cross runways. Local traffic control practices are used.
5.3.1.1 5.3.1.2*	The U.S. does not have regulations to prevent the establishment of non−aviation ground lights that might interfere with airport operations.
5.3.1.3 5.3.1.4	New approach lighting installations will meet the frangibility requirements. Some existing non−frangible systems may not be replaced before 1 January 2005.
5.3.2.1* 5.3.2.2* 5.3.2.3*	There is no requirement for an airport to have emergency runway lighting available if it does not have a secondary power source. Some airports do have these systems, and there is an FAA specification for these lights.
5.3.3.1 5.3.3.3	Only airports served by aircraft having more than 30 seats are required to have a beacon, though they are available at many others.
5.3.3.6	Although the present U.S. standard for beacons calls for 24−30 flashes per minute, some older beacons may have flash rates as low as 12 flashes per minute.
5.3.3.8	Coded identification beacons are not required and are not commonly installed. Typically, airport beacons conforming to 5.3.3.6 are installed at locations served by aircraft having more than 30 seats.
5.3.4.1	While the U.S. has installed an approach light system conforming to the specifications in 5.3.4.10 through 5.3.4.19, it also provides for a lower cost system consisting of medium intensity approach lighting and sequenced flashing lights (MALSF) at some locations.
5.3.4.2	In addition to the system described in 5.3.4.1, a system consisting of omnidirectional strobe lights (ODALS) located at 90 meters intervals extending out to 450 meters from the runway threshold is used at some locations.
5.3.4.10 through 5.3.4.19	The U.S. standard for a precision approach category I lighting system is a medium intensity approach lighting system with runway alignment indicator lights (MALSR). This system consists of 3 meters barrettes at 60 meters intervals out to 420 meters from the threshold and sequenced flashing lights at 60 meters intervals from 480 meters to 900 meters. A crossbar 20 meters in length is provided 300 meters from the threshold. The total length of this system is dependent upon the ILS glide path angle. For angles 2.75_0 and higher, the length is 720 meters.
5.3.4.16 5.3.4.31	The capacitor discharge lights can be switched on or off when the steady−burning lights of the approach lighting system are operating. However, they cannot be operated when the other lights are not in operation.
5.3.4.20	The U.S. standard for a precision approach category II and III lighting system has a total length dependent upon the ILS glide path angle. For angles 2.75_0 and higher, the length is 720 meters.
5.3.5.1 5.3.5.3 5.3.5.4	Visual approach slope indicator systems are not required for all runways used by turbojets except runways involved with land and hold short operations that do not have an electronic glideslope system.
5.3.5.2	In addition to PAPI and APAPI systems, VASI and AVASI type systems remain in service at U.S. airports with commercial service. Smaller general aviation airports may have various other approach slope indicators including tri−color and pulsating visual approach slope indicators.
5.3.5.27	The U.S. standard for PAPI allows for the distance between the edge of the runway and the first light unit to be reduced to 9 meters for code 1 runways used by nonjet aircraft.

5.3.5.42	The PAPI obstacle protection surface used is as follows: The surface begins 90 meters in front of the PAPI system (toward the threshold) and proceeds outward into the approach zone at an angle 1 degree less than the aiming angle of the third light unit from the runway. The surface flares 10 degrees on either side of the extended runway centerline and extends 4 statute miles from its point of origin.
5.3.8.4	The U.S. permits the use of omnidirectional runway threshold identification lights.
5.3.13.2	The U.S. does not require the lateral spacing of touchdown zone lights to be equal to that of touchdown zone marking when runways are less that 45 meters wide. The lateral distance between the markings is 22 meters when installed on runways with a width of 45 meters or greater. The distance is proportionately smaller for narrower runways. The lateral distance between touchdown zone lights is nominally 22 meters but may be reduced to 20 meters to avoid construction problems.
5.3.14	The U.S. has no provision for stopway lights.
5.3.15.1 5.3.15.2*	Taxiway centerline lights are required only below 183 meters RVR on designated taxi routes. However, they are generally recommended whenever a taxiing problem exists.
5.3.15.3 8.2.3	Taxiway centerline lights are not provided on runways forming part of a standard taxi route even for low visibility operations. Under these conditions, the taxi path is coincident with the runway centerline, and the runway lights are illuminated.
5.3.15.5	Taxiway centerline lights on exit taxiways presently are green. However, the new U.S. standard which is scheduled to be published by 1 January 98 will comply with the alternating green/yellow standard of Annex 14.
5.3.15.7*	The U.S. permits an offset of up to 60 cm.
5.3.16.2 8.2.3	Taxiway edge lights are not provided on runways forming part of a standard taxi route.
5.3.17.1 5.3.17.2* 5.3.17.3 5.3.17.4* 5.3.17.5*	Stop bars are required only for runway visual range conditions less than a value of 183 meters at taxiway/runway intersections where the taxiway is lighted during low visibility operations. Once installed, controlled stop bars are operated at RVR conditions less than a value of 350 meters.
5.3.17.6	Elevated stop bar lights are normally installed longitudinally in line with taxiway edge lights. Where edge lights are not installed, the stop bar lights are installed not more than 3 meters from the taxiway edge.
5.3.17.9	The beamspread of elevated stop bar lights differs from the inpavement lights. The inner isocandela curve for the elevated lights is ± 7 horizontal and ± 4 vertical.
5.3.17.12	The U.S. standard for stop bars, which are switchable in groups, does not require the taxiway centerline lights beyond the stop bars to be extinguished when the stop bars are illuminated. The taxiway centerline lights which extend beyond selectively switchable stop bars are grouped into two segments of approximately 45 meters each. A sensor at the end of the first segment re−illuminates the stop bar and extinguishes the first segment of centerline lights. A sensor at the end of the second segment extinguishes that segment of centerline lights.
5.3.18.1*	Taxiway intersection lights are also used at other hold locations on taxiways such as low visibility holding points.
5.3.18.2	Taxiway intersection lights are collocated with the taxiway intersection marking. The marking is located at the following distances from the centerline of the intersecting taxiway: Airplane Design Group — Distance I — 13.5 meters II — 20 meters III — 28.5 meters IV — 39 meters V — 48.5 meters VI — 59 meters

5.3.19.1 5.3.19.2*	Runway guard lights are required only for runway visual range conditions less than a value of 350 meters.
5.3.19.4 5.3.19.5	Runway guard lights are placed at the same distance from the runway centerline as the aircraft holding distance, or within a few feet of this location.
5.3.19.12	The new U.S. standard for in−pavement runway guard lights complies with Annex 14. However, there may be some existing systems that do not flash alternately.
5.3.20.4*	The U.S. does not set aviation standards for flood lighting aprons.
5.3.21	The U.S. does not provide standards for visual docking guidance systems. U.S. manufacturers of these devices generally adhere to ICAO SARPS.
5.3.23.1	The U.S. does not have a requirement for providing roadholding position lights during RVR conditions less than a value of 350 meters.
5.4.1.2	Signs are often installed a few centimeters taller than specified in Annex 14, Volume 1, Table 5−4.
5.4.1.5	Sign inscriptions are slightly larger, and margins around the sign slightly smaller, than indicated in Annex 14, Volume 1, Appendix 4.
5.4.1.6	The sign luminance requirements are not as high as specified in Appendix 4. The U.S. does not specify a nighttime color requirement in terms of chromaticity.
5.4.2.2 5.4.2.4 5.4.2.9 5.4.2.14 5.4.2.16	All signs used to denote precision approach holding positions have the legend ''ILS.''
5.4.2.6	U.S. practice uses the NO ENTRY sign to prohibit entry by aircraft only.
5.4.2.8 5.4.2.10	The second mandatory instruction sign is usually not installed unless added guidance is necessary.
5.4.2.15	Signs for holding aircraft and vehicles from entering areas where they would infringe on obstacle limitation surfaces or interfere with NAVAIDs are inscribed with the ***designator of the approach***, followed by the letters ''*APCH*''; *for example, "15−APCH.'*
5.4.3.13 5.4.3.15	U.S. practice is to install signs about 3 to 5 meters closer to the taxiway/runway (See Annex 14, Table 5−4).
5.4.3.16	The U.S. does not have standards for the location of runway exit signs.
5.4.3.24	A yellow border is used on all location signs, regardless of whether they are stand−alone or collocated with other signs.
5.4.3.26	U.S. practice is to use Pattern A on runway vacated signs, except that Pattern B is used to indicate that an ILS critical area has been cleared.
5.4.3.30*	The U.S. does not have standards for signs used to indicate a series of taxi−holding positions on the same taxiway.
5.4.4.4*	The inscription, ''VOR Check Course,'' is placed on the sign in addition to the VOR and DME data.
5.4.5.1*	The U.S. does not have requirements for airport identification signs, though they are usually installed.
5.4.6.1*	Standards are not provided for signs used to identify aircraft stands.
5.4.7.2	The distance from the edge of road to the road−holding position sign conforms to local highway practice.
5.5.2.2* 5.5.7.1*	Boundary markers may be used to denote the edges of an unpaved runway.
5.5.3	There is no provision for stopway edge markers.
Chapter 6	**Visual Aids for Denoting Obstacles**
6.1	Recommended practices for marking and lighting obstacles are found in FAA Advisory Circular 70/7460−1J, Obstruction Marking and Lighting.
6.2.3*	The maximum dimension of the rectangles in a checkered pattern is 6 meters on a side.

6.3.21* 6.3.22*	The effective intensity, for daylight−luminance background, of Type A high−intensity obstacle lights is 270,000 cd ± 25 percent. The effective intensity, for daylight−luminance background, of Type B high−intensity obstacle lights is 140,000 cd ± 25 percent.
Chapter 7	**Visual Aids for Denoting Restricted Use Areas**
7.1.2*	A “closed” marking is not used with partially closed runways. See 5.2.4.10, above.
7.1.4	Crosses with shapes similar to figure 7.1, illustration b) are used to indicate closed runways and taxiways. The cross for denoting a closed runway is yellow.
7.1.5	In the U.S. when a runway is permanently closed, only the threshold marking, runway designation marking, and touchdown zone marking need be obliterated. Permanently closed taxiways need not have the markings obliterated.
7.1.7	The U.S. does not require unserviceability lights across the entrance to a closed runway or taxiway when it is intersected by a night−use runway or taxiway.
7.4.4	Flashing yellow lights are used as unserviceability lights. The intensity is such as to be adequate to delineate a hazardous area.
Chapter 8	**Equipment and Installations**
8.1.5* 8.1.6* 8.1.7 8.1.8	A secondary power supply for non−precision instrument and non−instrument approach runways is not required, nor is it required for all precision approach runways. The U.S. does not provide secondary power specifically for take−off operations below 550 meters RVR.
8.2.1	There is no requirement in the U.S. to interleave lights as described in the Aerodrome Design Manual, Part 5.
8.2.3	See 5.3.15.3 and 5.3.16.2
8.7.2* 8.7.3 8.7.4*	Glide slope facilities and certain other installations located within the runway strip, or which penetrate obstacle limitation surfaces, may not be frangibly mounted.
8.9.7*	A surface movement surveillance system is recommended for operations from 350 meters RVR down to 183 meters. Below 183 meters RVR, a surface movement radar or alternative technology is generally required.
Chapter 9	**Emergency and Other Services**
9.1.1	Emergency plans such as those specified in this section are required only at airports serving scheduled air carriers using aircraft having more than 30 seats. These airports are certificated under 14 CFR Part 139. In practice, other airports also prepare emergency plans.
9.1.12	Full−scale airport emergency exercises are conducted at intervals, not to exceed three years, at airports with scheduled passenger service using aircraft with more than 30 seats.
9.2.1	Rescue and fire fighting equipment and services such as those specified in this section are required only at airports serving scheduled air carriers in aircraft having more than 30 seats. Such airports generally equate to ICAO categories 4 through 9. Other airports have varying degrees of services and equipment.
9.2.3*	There is no plan to eliminate, after 1 January 2005, the current practice of permitting a reduction of one category in the index when the largest aircraft has fewer than an average of five scheduled departures a day.
9.2.4 9.2.5	The level of protection at U.S. airports is derived from the length of the largest aircraft serving the airport similar to the Annex’s procedure, except that maximum fuselage width is not used. U.S. indices A−E are close equivalents of the Annex’s categories 5−9. The U.S. does not have an equivalent to category 10.

Fire Extinguishing Agents and Equipment

Index	Aircraft length		Total minimum quantities of extinguishing agents			
	More than	Not more than	Dry chemical	Water for protein foam	Minimum trucks	Discharge rate[1]
A		27 meters	225 kg	0	1	See below
B	27 meters	38 meters	225 kg	5,700 L	1	See below
C	38 meters	48 meters	225 kg	5,700 L	2	See below
D	48 meters	60 meters	225 kg	5,700 L	3	See below
E	60 meters		225 kg	11,400 L	3	See below

[1]Truck size	Discharge rate
1,900 L but less than 7,600	at least 1,900 L per minute but not more than 3,800 L per minute
7,600 L or greater	at least 2,280 L per minute but not more than 4,560 L per minute

9.2.10	The required firefighting equipment and agents by index are shown in the table above. The substitution equivalencies between complementary agents and foam meeting performance level A are also used for protein and fluoroprotein foam. Equivalencies for foam meeting performance level B are used only for aqueous film forming foams.
9.2.18*	There is no specific requirement to provide rescue equipment as distinguished from firefighting equipment.
9.2.19*	At least one apparatus must arrive and apply foam within 3 minutes with all other required vehicles arriving within 4 minutes. Response time is measured from the alarm at the equipment's customary assigned post to the commencement of the application of foam at the mid−point of the farthest runway.
9.2.29*	For ICAO category 6 (U.S. index B), the U.S. allows one vehicle.
9.4.4	At the present time, there is no requirement to perform tests using a continuous friction measuring device with self−wetting features. Some U.S. airports own these devices, while others use less formal methods to monitor build−up of rubber deposits and the deterioration of friction characteristics.
9.4.15	The standard grade for temporary ramps is 15 feet longitudinal per 1 inch of height (0.56 percent slope) maximum, regardless of overlay depth.
9.4.19	There is no U.S. standard for declaring a light unserviceable if it is out of alignment or if its intensity is less than 50 percent of its specified value.

*Indicates ICAO Recommended Practice

ANNEX 14 − AERODROMES	
VOLUME II − HELIPORTS	
Chapter 1	**Definitions**
Declared distances	The U.S. does not use declared distances (take−off distance available, rejected take−off distance available, or landing distance available) in designing heliports.
Final approach and take−off area (FATO)	The U.S. ‘‘take−off and landing area’’ is comparable to the ICAO FATO, and the U.S. ‘‘FATO’’ is more comparable to the ICAO TLOF. The U.S. definition for the FATO stops with ‘‘the take−off manoeuvre is commenced.’’ This difference in definition reflects a variation in concept. The rejected take−off distance is an operational computation and is not required as part of the design.
Helicopter stand	The U.S. does not use the term “helicopter stand.” Instead, the U.S. considers paved or unpaved aprons, helipads, and helidecks, all as helicopter parking areas; i.e., helicopter stands.
Safety area	The U.S. considers the safety area to be part of the take−off and landing area which surrounds the FATO and does not call for or define a separate safety area.
Touchdown and lift−off area (TLOF)	The U.S. differs in the definition by considering helipads and helidecks to be FATO. The U.S. does not define the load bearing area on which the helicopter may touch down or lift−off as a TLOF.
Chapter 2	**Heliport Data**
2.1 d)	The U.S. does not measure or report a safety area as a separate feature of a heliport.
2.2	The U.S. does not ‘‘declare’’ distances for heliports.
Chapter 3	**Physical Characteristics**
3.1.2	The U.S. does not distinguish between single−engine and multi−engine helicopters for the purposes of heliport design standards. Neither does the U.S. design or classify heliports on the basis of helicopter performance. The U.S. FATO dimensions are at least equal to the rotor diameter of the design single rotor helicopter and the area must be capable of providing ground effect. The U.S. does not have alternative design standards for water FATOs, elevated heliports, or helidecks.
3.1.3	The U.S. has a single gradient standard; i.e., 5 percent, except in fueling areas where the limit is 2 percent, which is applicable for all portions of heliports.
3.1.6 3.1.7* 3.1.8*	The U.S. does not require or provide criteria for clearways in its design standards. It does encourage ownership and clearing of the land underlying the innermost portion of the approach out to where the approach surface is 10.5 meters above the level of the take−off surface.
3.1.14 to 3.1.21	Safety areas are considered part of the take−off and landing area (or primary surface) in U.S. heliport design. The take−off and landing area of the U.S. design criteria, based on 2 rotor diameters, provides for the ICAO safety area; however, the surface does not have to be continuous with the FATO or be load bearing.
3.1.22	Taxiway widths are twice the undercarriage width of the design helicopter.
3.1.23	The U.S. requires 1.25 rotor diameters plus 2 meters of separation between helicopter ground taxiways.
3.1.24	The U.S. gradient standard for taxiways is a maximum of 5 percent.
3.1.32*	The U.S. sets no gradient standards for air taxiways.
3.1.33	The U.S. requires 1.5 rotor diameters of separation between hover or air taxiways.
3.1.34	The U.S. standards for air taxiways and air transit routes are combined as the standards for hover taxiways noted in paragraphs 3.1.23, 3.1.24 and 3.1.33.
3.1.35	The U.S. sets no maximum turning angle or minimum radius of turn on hover taxiways.
3.1.36	The U.S. gradient standard for aprons is a maximum of 5 percent except in fueling areas where it is 2 percent.
3.1.37	The U.S. criterion for object clearances is 1/3 rotor diameter or 3 meters, whichever is greater.
3.1.38	The U.S. standard for helipads (comparable to helicopter stands) is 1.5 times the undercarriage length or width, whichever is greater.
3.1.39	The U.S. standard for separation between FATO center and the centerline of the runway is 120 meters.

3.2.2	The U.S. does not apply either a performance related or an alternative design standard for elevated heliport facilities.
3.2.5 to 3.2.10	The U.S. does not use safety areas in its heliport design.
3.3 3.4	In the U.S., shipboard and relocatable off−shore helicopter "helideck" facilities are under the purview of the U.S. Coast Guard and utilize the International Maritime Organization (IMO) code. Fixed off−shore helideck facilities are under the purview of the Department of Interior based on their document 351DM2. Coastal water helideck facilities are under the purview of the individual affected States.
Chapter 4	**Obstacle Restriction and Removal**
4.1.1	The U.S. approach surface starts at the edge of the take−off and landing area.
4.1.2 a)	The U.S. approach surface width adjacent to the heliport take−off and landing area is a minimum of 2 rotor diameters.
4.1.2 b) 2)	The U.S. precision instrument approach surface flares from a width of 2 rotor diameters to a width of 1,800 meters at the 7,500 meters outer end. The U.S. does not use a note similar to the one that follows 4.1.4, as it does not differentiate between helicopter requirements on the basis of operational performance.
4.1.5	The outer limit of the U.S. transitional surfaces adjacent to the take−off and landing area is 76 meters from the centerline of the VFR approach/departure surfaces. The transitional surface width decreases to zero at a point 1,220 meters from the take−off and landing area. It does not terminate at an inner horizontal surface or at a predetermined height.
4.1.6	The U.S. transitional surfaces have a fixed width, 76 meters less the width of the take−off and landing area, from the approach centerline for visual operations and an outwardly flaring width to 450 meters for precision instrument operations. The U.S. does not use an inner horizontal surface nor terminate the transitional surfaces at a fixed/predetermined height.
4.1.7 b)	Since the U.S. includes the safety area in the take−off and landing area, the comparable elevation is at the elevation of the FATO.
4.1.9 through 4.1.20	The U.S. does not use the inner horizontal surface, the conical surface, or take−off climb surface described in these paragraphs or the note following paragraph 4.1.20 for heliport design.
4.1.21 through 4.1.25	The U.S. does not have alternative criteria for floating or fixed−in−place helidecks.
4.2	The U.S. has no requirement for a note similar to the one following the heading "Obstacle limitation requirements."
4.2.1	The U.S. criteria does not require a take−off climb surface or a conical obstacle limitation surface to establish a precision instrument approach procedure.
4.2.2	The U.S. criteria does not require a take−off climb surface or a conical obstacle limitation surface to establish a non−precision instrument approach procedure.
4.2.3	The U.S. criteria does not require a take−off climb obstacle limitation surface to establish a non−instrument approach procedure.
4.2.4*	The U.S. has no requirement for protective surfaces such as an inner horizontal surface or a conical surface.
4.2.5	The U.S. does not have tables for heliport design comparable to the ICAO Tables 4−1 to 4−4.
4.2.6	The U.S. subscribes to the intent of this paragraph to limit object heights in the heliport protective surfaces but uses fewer surfaces with different dimensions for those surfaces.
4.2.7*	The U.S. subscribes to the intent of this paragraph but uses different dimensional surfaces.
4.2.8	The U.S. criterion requires that a heliport have at least one approach and departure route and encourages multiple approaches separated by arcs of 90 to 180 degrees.
4.2.9*	The U.S. has no requirement that a heliport's approach surfaces provide 95 percent usability.
4.2.10	Since the U.S. does not differentiate between surface level and elevated heliports, the comments to paragraphs 4.2.1 through 4.2.5 above apply.

4.2.11	The U.S. has no requirement for a take−off climb surface. It does require at least one approach/departure surface and encourages that there be as many approaches as is practical separated by arcs of 90 to 180 degrees.
4.2.12 through 4.2.22	Since the U.S. does not have alternative design criteria for helidecks or shipboard heliports, there are no comparable U.S. protective surface requirements.
Tables 4−1, 4−2, 4−3, 4−4	The U.S. does not have tables comparable to the ICAO Tables 4−1 to 4−4.
Chapter 5	**Visual Aids**
5.2.1	The U.S. does not have criteria for markings to be used in defining winching areas.
5.2.3.3	The U.S. maximum mass markings are specified in 1,000 pound units rather than tonnes or kilograms.
5.2.4.3	The U.S. criterion requires FATO markers but is not specific on the number or spacing between markers.
5.2.4.4	The U.S. criteria for FATO markers is not dimensionally specific.
5.2.6	The U.S. does not require, or have criteria for, marking an aiming point.
5.2.7.1	The U.S. does not require specific criteria for marking floating or off−shore fixed−in−place helicopter or helideck facilities.
5.2.8	The U.S. does not require marking the touchdown area.
5.2.9	The U.S. does not have criteria for heliport name markings.
5.2.10	The U.S. does not have a requirement to mark helideck obstacle−free sectors.
5.2.12.2	The U.S. criterion places the air taxiway markers along the edges of the routes rather than on the centerline.
5.2.12.3	The U.S. criterion for air taxiway markers does not specify the viewing area or height to width ratio.
5.3.2.3	The U.S. heliport beacon flashes white−green−yellow colors rather than a series of timed flashes.
5.3.2.5*	The U.S. criteria is not specific on the light intensity of the flash.
5.3.3.3	The U.S. criterion specifies a 300 meters approach light system configuration. The light bars are spaced at 30 meters intervals. The first two bars of the configuration are single lights, the next two bars are two lights, then two bars with three lights, then two bars with four lights, and finally two bars with five lights.
5.3.3.4	The U.S. approach light system uses aimed PAR−56 lights.
5.3.3.6	The U.S. heliport approach light system does not contain flashing lights.
5.3.5.2 a)	The U.S. requires an odd number of lights, but not less than three lights per side.
5.3.5.2 b)	The U.S. requires a minimum of eight lights for a circular FATO and does not specify the distance between lights.
5.3.5.4*	The U.S. criteria does not specify light distribution.
5.3.6	The U.S. does not have specific criteria for aiming point lights.
5.3.8	The U.S. does not have standards for winching area lighting.
Chapter 6	**Heliport Services**
6.1*	The U.S. requirements for rescue and fire fighting services at certificated heliports are found in 14 CFR Part 139. Criteria for other heliports are established by the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) pamphlets 403 or 418, or in regulations of local fire departments.

*Indicates ICAO Recommended Practice

ANNEX 15 − AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION SERVICES	
Chapter 2	**Definitions**
Danger area	"Danger area" is not used in reference to areas within the U.S. or in any of its possessions or territories.
Integrated Aeronautical Information Package	The U.S. does not produce the entire information package.
Maneuvering area	This term is not used by the U.S.
Movement area	The runways, taxiways, and other areas of an airport/heliport which are utilized for taxiing/hover−taxiing, air−taxiing, takeoff, and landing of aircraft, exclusive of loading ramps and parking areas. At those airports/heliports with a tower, specific approval for entry onto the movement area must be obtained from ATC.
Prohibited area Restricted area	The terms "prohibited area" and "restricted area" will be employed substantially in accordance with the definitions established. Additionally, the following terms will be used: Alert area. Airspace which may contain a high volume of pilot training activities or an unusual type of aerial activity, neither of which is hazardous to aircraft. Alert areas are depicted on aeronautical charts for the information of nonparticipating pilots. All activities within an alert area are conducted in accordance with Federal Aviation Regulations, and pilots of participating aircraft as well as pilots transiting the area are equally responsible for collision avoidance. Controlled firing area. Airspace wherein activities are conducted under conditions so controlled as to eliminate hazards to nonparticipating aircraft and to ensure the safety of persons and property on the ground. Warning area. Airspace which may contain hazards to nonparticipating aircraft in international airspace. Military operations area (MOA). An airspace assignment of defined vertical and lateral dimensions established outside Class A airspace to separate/segregate certain military activities from IFR traffic and to identify for VFR traffic where these activities are conducted.
Chapter 4	**Aeronautical Information Publications (AIP)**
4.2.8 4.3.4	The U.S. does not publish an aeronautical information regulation and control (AIRAC).
4.4 4.5	The U.S. does not issue AIP supplements. Corrections or changes from the latest amendments to the AIP are carried as NOTAMs.
Chapter 5	**NOTAM**
5.1.1.2	The U.S. does not routinely issue "trigger NOTAMs" referencing published material when an AIP amendment is issued.
5.2.1	The current U.S. system numbers international NOTAMs consecutively by the location in the A field. The U.S. routinely issues over 70,000 outgoing international NOTAMs each year. Only series A is used for international distribution. This precludes numbering the NOTAMs by the originator.
5.2.3	The U.S. periodically issues multipart NOTAMs which are transmitted as multiple telecommunication messages. The nature of the NOTAM material is such that it will not always fit in one message.
5.2.8.1	The monthly checklist of NOTAMs does not specifically reference printed publications, such as AIP amendments.
5.2.8.3	A monthly printed plain language summary of NOTAMs in force is not issued. The International NOTAM publication, issued biweekly, is not inclusive of all U.S. international NOTAMs.
5.3.2	The U.S. does not use the System NOTAM format at this time. The format used is based on the previous ICAO Class I format. See notes on Appendix 6 for details.
Chapter 6	**Aeronautical Information Regulation and Control (AIRAC)**
	See 4.2.8.

Chapter 8	Pre−Flight and Post−Flight Information
8.1.2.1 f)	NOTAMs relating to bird hazards are relayed as local NOTAM information and are not disseminated internationally. The information is available from the local flight service station during preflight briefing.
Appendix 1	**Contents of Aeronautical Information Publication (AIP)**
GEN 2.7	The U.S. does not publish sunrise/sunset tables in the AIP.
GEN 3.1.3 4)	The U.S. does not publish pre−flight information bulletins (PIBs).
Appendix 2	**SNOWTAM Format**
	The U.S. does not use the SNOWTAM for issuance of winter weather information. Snow conditions are reported using our current international NOTAM format (Class I).
Appendix 3	**ASHTAM Format**
1.3	ASHTAM information will continue to be distributed as an International NOTAM.
2.1	The heading will not be entered as stated.
3	ASHTAM information will be distributed in U.S. International NOTAM format.
Appendix 6	**NOTAM Format**
	The U.S. is not prepared to transition to the System NOTAM format. NOTAMs are processed in the previous ICAO Class I format.
1.2 General	Multiple conditions, for a single location, may be reported in a NOTAM.
2 NOTAM numbering	The U.S. numbers NOTAMs consecutively by location, not by country of origin. Due to the volume of international NOTAMs generated by the U.S., the current U.S. numbering scheme is expected to continue.
3 Qualifiers	The current software will not accept the Item Q) qualifiers line.
5 Item B)	Item B) is currently issued as an eight digit date−time group. The U.S. also uses the initials "WIE" (with immediate effect) for NOTAMs that take effect immediately upon issuance. The U.S. does not include an Item B) in NOTAMCs. The assumption is that all cancellations take effect immediately when issued. While this date−time group could be added to NOTAMCs, the U.S. position is that it is unnecessary.
6 Item C)	Item C), like item B), is currently issued as an eight digit date−time group. The U.S. also uses the initials "UFN" (until further notice) for NOTAMs that have an uncertain duration.
8 Item E)	U.S. NOTAMs do not contain Item E) information for NOTAMCs. Remark: Item E) contains the NOTAM Code (Q−code) in addition to plain language and ICAO abbreviations.

ANNEX 16 − ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION	
VOLUME I − AIRCRAFT NOISE	
Reference: Part 36 of Title 14 of the United States Code of Federal Regulations	
Chapter 1	
1.7	Each person who applies for a type certificate for an airplane covered by 14 CFR Part 36, irrespective of the date of application for the type certificate, must show compliance with Part 36.
Chapter 2	
2.1.1	For type design change applications made after 14 August 1989, if an airplane is a Stage 3 airplane prior to a change in type design, it must remain a Stage 3 airplane after the change in type design regardless of whether Stage 3 compliance was required before the change in type design.
2.3.1 a)	Sideline noise is measured along a line 450 meters from and parallel to the extended runway centerline for two− and three−engine aircraft; for four−engine aircraft, the sideline distance is 0.35 NM.
2.4.2	Noise level limits for Stage 2 derivative aircraft depend upon whether the engine by−pass ratio is less than two. If it is, the Stage 2 limits apply. Otherwise, the limits are the Stage 3 limits plus 3 dB or the Stage 2 value, whichever is lower.
2.4.2.2 b)	Take−off noise limits for three−engine, Stage 2 derivative airplanes with a by−pass ratio equal to or greater than 2 are 107 EPNdB for maximum weights of 385,000 kg (850,000 lb) or more, reduced by 4 dB per halving of the weight down to 92 EPNdB for maximum weights of 28,700 kg (63,177 lb) or less. Aircraft with a by−pass ratio less than 2 only need meet the Stage 2 limits.
2.5.1	Trade−off sum of excesses not greater than 3 EPNdB and no excess greater than 2 EPNdB.
2.6.1.1	For airplanes that do not have turbo−jet engines with a by−pass ratio of 2 or more, the following apply: a) four−engine airplanes − 214 meters (700 feet); b) all other airplanes − 305 meters (1,000 feet). For all airplanes that have turbo−jet engines with a by−pass ratio of 2 or more, the following apply: a) four−engine airplanes − 210 meters (689 feet); b) three−engine airplanes − 260 meters (853 feet); c) airplanes with fewer than three engines − 305 meters (1,000 feet). The power may not be reduced below that which will provide level flight for an engine inoperative or that will maintain a climb gradient of at least 4 percent, whichever is greater.
Chapter 3	
3.1.1	For type design change applications made after 14 August 1989, if an airplane is a Stage 3 airplane prior to a change in type design, it must remain a Stage 3 airplane after the change in type design regardless of whether Stage 3 compliance was required before the change in type design.
3.3.1 a) 2)	The U.S. has no equivalent provision in 14 CFR Part 36.
3.3.2.2	A minimum of two microphones symmetrically positioned about the test flight track must be used to define the maximum sideline noise. This maximum noise may be assumed to occur where the aircraft reaches 305 meters (1,000 feet). 14 CFR Part 36 does not require symmetrical measurements to be made at each and every point for propeller−driven airplane sideline noise determination.
3.6.2.1 c)	Under 14 CFR Part 36, during each test take−off, simultaneous measurements should be made at the sideline noise measuring stations on each side of the runway and also at the take−off noise measuring station. If test site conditions make it impractical to simultaneously measure take−off and sideline noise, and if each of the other sideline measurement requirements is met, independent measurements may be made of the sideline noise under simulated flight path techniques. If the reference flight path includes a power cutback before the maximum possible sideline noise level is developed, the reduced sideline noise level, which is the maximum value developed by the simulated flight path technique, must be the certificated sideline noise value.

3.6.2.1 d)	14 CFR Part 36 specifies the day speeds and the acoustic reference speed to be the minimum approved value of V_2 +10 kt, or the all−engines operating speed at 35 feet (for turbine−engine powered airplanes) or 50 feet (for reciprocating−engine powered airplanes), whichever speed is greater as determined under the regulations constituting the type certification basis of the airplane. The test must be conducted at the test day speeds ±3 kt.
3.7.4	If a take−off test series is conducted at weights other than the maximum take−off weight for which noise certification is requested: a) at least one take−off test must be at or above that maximum weight; b) each take−off test weight must be within +5 or −10 percent of the maximum weight. If an approach test series is conducted at weights other than the maximum landing weight for which certification is requested: a) at least one approach test must be conducted at or above that maximum weight; b) each test weight must exceed 90 percent of the maximum landing weight. Total EPNL adjustment for variations in approach flight path from the reference flight path and for any difference between test engine thrust or power and reference engine thrust or power must not exceed 2 EPNdB.
Chapter 5	
5.1.1	Applies to all large transport category aircraft (as they do to all subsonic turbo−jet aircraft regardless of category). Commuter category aircraft, propeller−driven airplanes below 8,640 kg (19,000 lb) are subject to 14 CFR Part 36, Appendix F or to Appendix G, depending upon the date of completion of the noise certification tests.
Chapter 6	
6.1.1	Applies to new, all propeller−driven airplane types below 19,000 lb (8,640 kg.) in the normal, commuter, utility, acrobatic, transport, or restricted categories for which the noise certification tests are completed before 22 December 1988.
Chapter 8	
General	14 CFR Part 36 (Section 36.1 (h)) defines Stage 1 and Stage 2 noise levels and Stage 1 and Stage 2 helicopters. These definitions parallel those used in 14 CFR Part 36 for turbo−jets and are used primarily to simplify the acoustical change provisions in Section 36.11. 14 CFR Part 36 (Section 36.805(c)) provides for certain derived versions of helicopters for which there are no civil prototypes to be certificated above the noise level limits.
8.1.1 a)	Applicable to new helicopter types for which application for an original type certificate was made on or after 6 March 1988.
8.1.1 b)	Applicable only to "acoustical changes" for which application for an amended or supplemental type certificate was made on or after 6 March 1988.
8.4	14 CFR Part 36 Appendix H specifies a slightly different rate of allowable maximum noise levels as a function of helicopter mass. The difference can lead to a difference in the calculated maximum noise limits of 0.1 EPNdB under certain roundoff condition.
8.6.3.1 b)	Does not include the V_{NE} speeds.
8.7	14 CFR Part 36 Appendix H does not permit certain negative corrections. Annex 16 has no equivalent provision.
8.7.4	EPNL correction must be less than 2.0 EPNdB for any combination of lateral deviation, height, approach angle and, in the case of flyover, thrust or power. Corrections to the measured data are required if the tests were conducted below the reference weight. Corrections to the measured data are required if the tests were conducted at other than reference engine power.
8.7.5	The rotor speed must be maintained within one percent of the normal operating RPM during the take−off procedure.
8.7.8	The helicopter shall fly within ±10● from the zenith for approach and take−off, but within ±5● from the zenith for horizontal flyover.

Chapter 10	
General	Exception from acoustical change rule given for aircraft with flight time prior to 1 January 1955 and land configured aircraft reconfigured with floats or skis.
10.1.1	Applies to new, amended, or supplemental type certificates for propeller−driven airplanes not exceeding 8,640 kg (19,000 lb) for which noise certification tests have not been completed before 22 December 1988.
10.4	The maximum noise level is a constant 73 dBA up to 600 kg (1,320 lb). Above that weight, the limit increases at the rate of 1 dBA/75kg (1 dBA/165 lb) up to 85 dBA at 1,500 kg (3,300 lb) after which it is constant up to and including 8,640 kg (19,000 lb).
10.5.2, second phase, d)	For variable−pitch propellers, the definition of engine power is different in the second segment of the reference path. Maximum continuous installed power instead of maximum power is used.
Chapter 11	
11.1	14 CFR Part 36 Appendix J was effective 11 September 1992 and applies to those helicopters for which application for a type certificate was made on or after 6 March 1986.
11.4	14 CFR Part 36 Appendix J specifies a slightly different rate of allowable maximum noise levels as a function of helicopter mass. The difference can lead to a difference in the calculated maximum noise limits of 0.1 EPNdB under certain roundoff condition.
11.6	14 CFR Part 36 Appendix J prescribes a ±15 meter limitation on the allowed vertical deviation about the reference flight path. Annex 16 has no equivalent provision.
PART V	
General	No comparable provision exists in U.S. Federal Regulations. Any local airport proprietor may propose noise abatement operating procedures to the FAA which reviews them for safety and appropriateness.
Appendix 1	
General	Sections 3, 8, and 9 of Appendix 1 which contain the technical specifications for equipment, measurement and analysis and data correction for Chapter 2 aircraft and their derivatives differ in many important aspects from the corresponding requirements in Appendix 2 which has been updated several times. 14 CFR Part 36 updates have generally paralleled those of Appendix 2 of Annex 16. These updated requirements are applicable in the U.S. to both Stage 2 and Stage 3 aircraft and their derivatives.
2.2.1	A minimum of two microphones symmetrically positioned about the test flight track must be used to define the maximum sideline noise. This maximum noise may be assumed to occur where the aircraft reaches 305 meters (1,000 feet), except for four−engine, Stage 2 aircraft for which 439 meters (1,440 feet) may be used.
2.2.2	No obstructions in the cone defined by the axis normal to the ground and the half−angle 80_0 from the axis.
2.2.3 c)	Relative humidity and ambient temperature over the sound path between the aircraft and 10 meters above the ground at the noise measuring site is such that the sound attenuation in the 8 kHz one−third octave band is not greater than 12 dB/100 meters and the relative humidity is between 20 and 95 percent. However, if the dew point and dry bulb temperature used for obtaining relative humidity are measured with a device which is accurate to within one−half a degree Celsius, the sound attenuation rate shall not exceed 14 dB/100 meters in the 8 kHz one−third octave band.
2.2.3 d)	Test site average wind not above 12 kt and average cross−wind component not above 7 kt.
2.3.4	The aircraft position along the flight path is related to the recorded noise 10 dB downpoints.
2.3.5	At least one take−off test must be a maximum take−off weight and the test weight must be within +5 or −10 percent of maximum certificated take−off weight.
Appendix 2	
2.2.1	A minimum of two symmetrically placed microphones must be used to define the maximum sideline noise at the point where the aircraft reaches 305 meters.

2.2.2	When a multiple layering calculation is required, the atmosphere between the airplane and the ground shall be divided into layers. These layers are not required to be of equal depth, and the maximum layer depth must be 100 meters.
2.2.2 b)	14 CFR Part 36 specifies that the lower limit of the temperature test window is 36 degrees Fahrenheit (2.2 degrees Celsius). Annex 16 provides 10 degrees Celsius as the lower limit for the temperature test window. 14 CFR Part 36 does not specify that the airport facility used to obtain meteorological condition measurements be within 2,000 meters of the measurement site.
2.2.2 c)	14 CFR Part 36 imposes a limit of 14 dB/100 meters in the 8 kHz one−third octave band when the temperature and dew point are measured with a device which is accurate to within one−half a degree Celsius.
2.2.3	14 CFR Part 36 requires that the limitations on the temperature and relative humidity test window must apply over the whole noise propagation path between a point 10 meters above the ground and the helicopter. Annex 16 specifies that the limitations on the temperature and relative humidity test window apply only at a point 10 meters above the ground. 14 CFR Part 36 requires that corrections for sound attenuation must be based on the average of temperature and relative humidity readings at 10 meters and the helicopter. Annex 16 implies that the corrections for sound absorption are based on the temperature and relative humidity measured at 10 meters only.
3.2.6	No equivalent requirement.
3.4.5	For each detector/integrator the response to a sudden onset or interruption of a constant sinusoidal signal at the respective one−third octave band center frequency must be measured at sampling times 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, and 2.0 seconds after the onset or interruption. The rising responses must be the following amounts before the steady−state level: 0.5 seconds: 4.0 ± 1.0 dB 1.0 seconds: 1.75 ± 0.75 dB 1.5 seconds: 1.0 ± 0.5 dB 2.0 seconds: 0.6 ± 0.5 dB
3.4.5 (Note 1)	No equivalent provision in 14 CFR Part 36.
3.5.2	No equivalent requirement.
5.4	14 CFR Part 36 requires that the difference between airspeed and groundspeed shall not exceed 10 kt between the 10 dB down time period.
8.4.2	14 CFR Part 36 specifies a value of −10 in the adjustment for duration correction. Annex 16 specifies a value of −7.5.
9.1.2, 9.1.3	14 CFR Part 36 always requires use of the integrated procedure if the corrected take−off or approach noise level is within 1.0 dB of the applicable noise limit.
Appendix 6	
4.4.1	The microphone performance, not its dimensions, is specified. The microphone must be mounted 1.2 meters (4 feet) above ground level. A windscreen must be employed when the wind speed is in excess of 9 km/h (5 kt).
5.2.2 a)	Reference conditions are different. Noise data outside the applicable range must be corrected to 77 degrees F and 70 percent humidity.
5.2.2 c)	There is no equivalent provision in 14 CFR Part 36. Fixed−pitch propeller−driven airplanes have a special provision. If the propeller is fixed−pitch and the test power is not within 5 percent of reference power, a helical tip Mach number correction is required.

ANNEX 16 − ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION	
VOLUME II − AIRCRAFT ENGINE EMISSIONS	
Chapter 1	
	The U.S. currently has regulations prohibiting intentional fuel venting from turbojet, turbofan and turboprop aircraft, but we do not now have a regulation preventing the intentional fuel venting from helicopter engines.

ANNEX 17 − SECURITY − SAFEGUARDING INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION AGAINST ACTS OF UNLAWFUL INTERFERENCE
There are no reportable differences between U.S. regulations and the Standards and Recommended Practices contained in this Annex.

ANNEX 18 − THE SAFE TRANSPORT OF DANGEROUS GOODS BY AIR
Adopted by the ICAO Council 6/26/81
Effective Date: 1/1/83
Applicability Date: 1/1/84
(Note: Differences are to be filed with ICAO by 6/1/83).

PANS − OPS − 8168/611	
VOLUME 1	
PART III	
Table III−1−1 and Table III−1−2	The “Max speeds for visual maneuvering (Circling)” must not be applied to circling procedures in the U.S. Comply with the airspeeds and circling restrictions in ENR 1.5, paragraphs 10.1 and 10.6, in order to remain within obstacle protection areas. The table listed below shows aircraft categories with an associated maximum airspeed and distance to remain within from the end of runway.

Aircraft Category	Speeds for Circling (Kts)	Circling Area Maximum Radii from Runway Threshold (NM)
A	Speed less than 91 Knots	1.3
B	Speed 91 Knots or more but less than 121 Knots	1.5
C	Speed 121 Knots or more but less than 141 Knots	1.7
D	Speed 141 Knots or more but less than 166 Knots	2.3
E	Speed 166 Knots or more	4.5

PART IV	
1.2.1	The airspeeds contained in ENR 1.5 shall be used in U.S. **CONTROLLED AIRSPACE**.

PAN − ABC − DOC 8400
Differences between abbreviations used in U.S. AIP, International NOTAMs Class I and Class II, and Notices to Airmen Publication and ICAO PANS − ABC are listed in GEN 2.2**.** For other U.S. listings of abbreviations (contractions) for general use, air traffic control, and National Weather Service (NWS), which differ in some respects, see U.S. publication Contractions Handbook (DOT/FAA Order 7340.1). In addition, various U.S. publications contain abbreviations of terms used therein, particularly those unique to that publication.

GEN 2. TABLES AND CODES

GEN 2.1 Measuring System, Time System, and Aircraft Markings

1. Units of Measurement

1.1 The following table identifies the units of measurement that have been selected for use in messages transmitted by all U.S. aeronautical stations, in the U.S. AIP, NOTAM dissemination, and other publications.

2. Time System

2.1 Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) is used in the Air Traffic and Communication services provided and in most documents published by the Aeronautical Information Services.

2.2 When local mean time is used, it will be so indicated as local standard time (LST). See FIG GEN 2.1−1 for a depiction of the standard time zones within the continental U.S.

3. Geodetic Reference Datum

3.1 All published geographic coordinates indicating latitude and longitude are expressed in terms of the World Geodetic System − 1984 (WGS−84) geodetic reference datum.

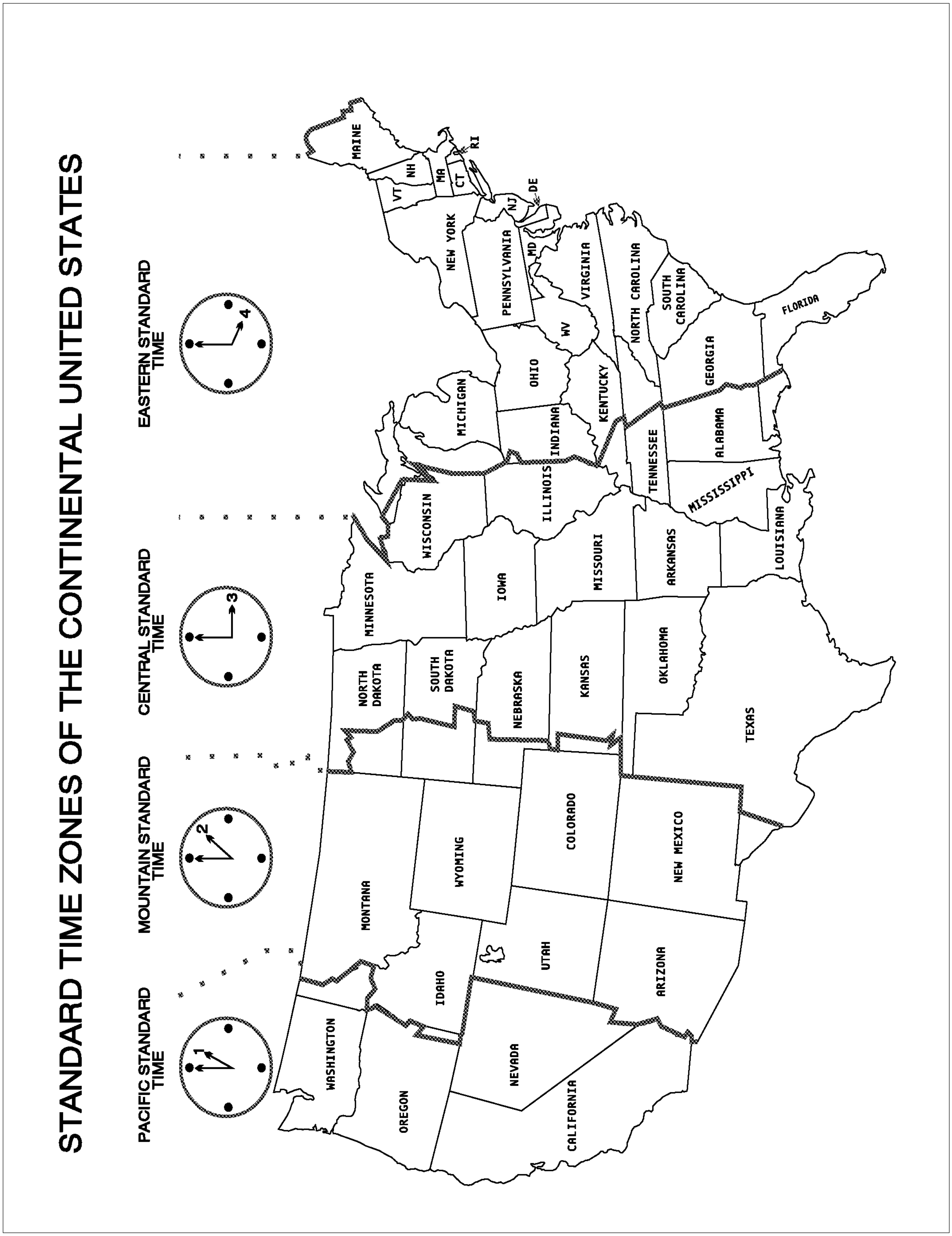
4. Nationality and Registration Marks

4.1 The nationality mark for the aircraft registered in the U.S. is the letter N, followed by a series of numbers or a series of numbers and letters.

TBL GEN 2.1−1

For Measurements of:	Units used:
Distance used in navigation, position reporting, etc. − generally in excess of 2 to 3 nautical miles	Nautical miles and tenths
Relatively short distances such as those relating to aerodrome (e.g., runway lengths)	Feet
Altitudes, elevations and heights	Feet
Horizontal speed, including wind speed	Knots
Vertical speed	Feet per minute
Wind direction for landing and taking off	Degrees magnetic
Wind direction except for landing and taking off	Degrees true
Visibility, including runway visual	Statute miles or feet
Altimeter Setting	Inches of mercury
Temperature	Degrees Fahrenheit
Weight	Pounds
Time	Hours and minutes, the day of 24 hours beginning at midnight Coordinated Universal Time

FIG GEN 2.1−1


STANDARD TIME ZONES OF THE CONTINENTAL UNITED STATES
PACIFIC STANDARD TIME
MOUNTAIN STANDARD TIME
CENTRAL STANDARD TIME
EASTERN STANDARD TIME
1
2
3
4
WASHINGTON
OREGON
CALIFORNIA
NEVADA
IDAHO
MONTANA
WYOMING
UTAH
ARIZONA
COLORADO
NEW MEXICO
NORTH DAKOTA
SOUTH DAKOTA
NEBRASKA
KANSAS
OKLAHOMA
TEXAS
MINNESOTA
IOWA
MISSOURI
ARKANSAS
LOUISIANA
WISCONSIN
ILLINOIS
MISSISSIPPI
TENNESSEE
ALABAMA
MICHIGAN
INDIANA
KENTUCKY
OHIO
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
SOUTH CAROLINA
NORTH CAROLINA
VIRGINIA
WV
MD
DE
PENNSYLVANIA
NJ
NEW YORK
CT
RI
MA
VT
NH
MAINE

GEN 2.2 Abbreviations Used in AIS Publications

NOTE − An "s" may be added for plural. ICAO indicates ICAO usage.

A	
/	and
AAS	airport advisory service
A/C	approach control
ICAO:	AAP − approach control; AC − altocumulus
ACFT	aircraft
ACR	air carrier
ADF	automatic direction finder
AER	approach end runway
AFT	after
AGL	above ground level
AHRS	Attitude Heading Reference System
AIM	Aeronautical Information Manual
ALS	approach light system
ALSF−1	standard 2400' high−intensity approach lighting system with sequenced flashers (Category I configuration)
ALSF−2	standard 2400' high−intensity approach lighting system with sequenced flashers (Category II configuration)
ALSTG	altimeter setting
ALT	altitude
ALTM	altimeter
ALTN	alternate
AMDT	amendment
ICAO:	AMD − amendment
APCH	approach
APCHG	approaching
APRX	approximate
APV	approve or approved or approval
ARPT	airport
ICAO:	AD − aerodrome
ARR	arrive or arrival
ARSR	air route surveillance radar
ARTCC	air route traffic control center
ASDE	airport surface detection equipment
ASPH	asphalt
ATCT	air traffic control tower
ASR	airport surveillance radar
ATIS	automatic terminal information service
AVBL	available
AWY	airway
B	
BC	back course
BCN	beacon
BCST	broadcast
BLDG	building
BRG	bearing
BTN	between
BYD	beyond
C	
CAT	category
ICAO:	CAT − clear air turbulence
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
CFR	crash fire rescue
CLNC	clearance
ICAO:	CLR − clear/cleared to/clearance
CLSD	close or closed or closing
CMSND	commissioned
CNTR	center
CNTRLN	centerline
ICAO:	CL − centerline
COMLO	compass locator
CONST	construction
CPTY	capacity
CRS	course
CTC	contact
ICAO:	CTR − control zone
D	
ICAO:	D − danger area
ICAO:	D − downward (tendency in RVR during previous 10 minutes)
DALGT	daylight
DCMSND	decommissioned
DDT	runway weight bearing capacity for aircraft with double dual−tandem type landing gear
DEGS	degrees

ICAO:	C – degrees Celsius (Centigrade) F – degrees Fahrenheit
DEP	depart; departure
ICAO:	DEP – depart/departure/departure message
DF	direction finder
ICAO:	DF – I am connecting you to the station you request
DH	decision height
DME	UHF standard (TACAN compatible distance measuring equipment)
ICAO:	DME – distance meaning equipment
DSPLCD	displaced
DSTC	distance
ICAO:	DIST – distance
DT	runway weight bearing capacity for aircraft with dual−tandem type landing gear
DURG	during
ICAO:	DRG – during
DVFR	defense visual flight rule
DW	runway weight bearing capacity for aircraft with dual−wheel type landing gear
E	
E	east
ICAO:	E – east/east longitude
EFAS	en route flight advisory service
ELEV	elevation
EMERG	emergency
EQUIP	equipment
ICAO:	EQPT – equipment
ETA	estimated time of arrival
ETE	estimated time en route
EXCP	except
ICAO:	EXC−except
EXTD	extend or extended
F	
FAF	final approach fix
FAR	Federal Aviation Regulation
FDC	flight data center
FI/P	flight information (permanent)
FI/T	flight information (temporary)
FL	flight level
FM	fan marker
FM	from
ICAO:	FM – from; FM – from (followed by time weather change is forecast to begin)
FREQ	frequency
FRQ	frequent
FSS	flight service station
FT	feet
G	
GOVT	government
GP	glide path
ICAO:	GP – glide path
GS	glide slope
ICAO:	GS – ground speed; GS – small hail and/or snow pellets
GWT	gross weight
H	
HAA	height above airport
HAT	height above touchdown
ICAO:	HGT – height/height above
HIRL	High intensity runway lights
HOL	holiday
HWY	highway
I	
IAF	initial approach fix
IAP	instrument approach procedure
ICAO:	INA – initial approach
IDENT	identification
ICAO:	ID – identifier/identification/identify
IF	intermediate fix
ICAO:	IF – intermediate approach fix
IFR	instrument flight rules
IFSS	international flight service station
ILS	instrument landing system
INFO	information
INOP	inoperative
INS	Inertial Navigation System
INT	intersection
INTL	international
INTST	intensity
IRU	Inertial Reference Unit
ISMLS	interim standard microwave landing system
J	
J−bar	jet runway barrier
K	
KHZ	kilohertz

L	
L	left (used only to designate rwys; e.g., rwy 12L)
ICAO:	L − left/runway identification/locator
LAT	latitude
LB	pounds (weight)
LCTD	located
LDA	localizer type directional aid
ICAO:	LDA − landing distance available LLZ − localizer
LDIN	lead−in lighting system
LGTD	lighted
LMM	compass locator at ILS middle marker
LNDG	landing
ICAO:	LDG − landing
LOC	localizer
ICAO:	LOC−localizer or locally or location or located
LOM	compass locator at ILS outer marker
LONG	longitude
LRCO	limited remote communications outlet
M	
MAA	maximum authorized altitude
MAG	magnetic
MAINT	maintain, maintenance
ICAO:	MNTN − maintain; MAINT − maintenance
MALS	medium intensity approach light system
MALSR	medium intensity approach light system with runway alignment indicator lights
MAP	missed approach point
ICAO:	MAP − aeronautical maps and charts
MAX	maximum
MCA	minimum crossing altitude
MDA	minimum descent altitude
MEA	minimum en route IFR altitude
MHZ	megahertz
MIN	minimum or minute
MIRL	medium intensity runway edge lights
MLS	microwave landing system
MM	middle marker ILS
MOCA	minimum obstruction clearance altitude
MRA	minimum reception altitude
MSA	minimum safe altitude
MSL	mean sea level
MUNI	municipal
N	
N	north
NA	not authorized
NATL	national
NAVAID	navigational aid
NDB	nondirectional radio beacon
NM	nautical mile(s)
NOPT	no procedure turn required
NR	number
O	
OBSTN	obstruction
ODALS	omnidirectional approach lighting system
OM	outer marker ILS
OPER	operate
OPN	operation
ICAO:	OPR − operator/operate/operative/operating/ operational
ORIG	original
OTS	out of service
OVRN	overrun
P	
PAR	precision approach radar
PAT	pattern
PCN	pavement classification number
PERMLY	permanently
POB	persons on board
PPR	prior permission required
PROC	procedure
Q	
QUAD	quadrant
R	
R	right (used only to designate rwys; e.g., rwy 19R)
ICAO:	R − received (acknowledgement of receipt)/red/restricted area (followed by identification)/right (runway identification)
RADAR	radio detection and ranging
RAPCON	radar approach control (USAF)
RCAG	remote communications air/ground

RCLS	runway centerline lights system
ICAO:	RCL − runway centerline
RCO	remote communications outlet
RCV	receive
RCVG	receiving
REIL	runway end identifier lights
REQ	request
RNAV	area navigation
RRP	runway reference point
RSTRD	restricted
RTS	returned to service
RVR	runway visual range
RVRM	runway visual range midpoint
RVRR	runway visual range rollout
RVRT	runway visual range touchdown
RVV	runway visibility values
RWY	runway
ICAO:	RWY−runway
S	
S	runway weight bearing capacity for aircraft with single−wheel type landing gear
S	south
ICAO:	S − south/south latitude
SDF	simplified directional facility
SEC	second
SFC	surface
SFL	sequenced flashing lights
SI	straight−in approach
ICAO:	STA − straight−in approach
SM	statute mile(s)
SR	sunrise
SS	sunset
ICAO:	SS − sandstorm
SSALF	simplified short approach lighting system with sequenced flashers
SSALR	simplified short approach lighting system with runway alignment indicator lights
SSALS	simplified short approach lighting system
STOL	short take−off and landing runway
ICAO:	STOL − short takeoff and landing
SVC	service
ICAO:	SVC − service message

T	
T	true (after a bearing)
ICAO:	T − temperature
TAC	terminal area chart
TACAN	UHF navigational facility − omnidirectioal course and distance information
ICAO:	TACAN − VHF tactical navigational aid
TAS	true air speed
ICAO:	TMA − TERMINAL CONTROL AREA
TCH	threshold crossing height
TFC	traffic
THR	threshold
THRU	through
ICAO:	THRU − through/I am connecting you to another switchboard
TKOF	take−off
TEMPRLY	temporarily
TMPRY	temporary/temporarily
ICAO:	TEMPO − Temporary/temporarily
TPA	traffic pattern altitude
TRACON	terminal radar approach control
TRML	terminal
TRSA	terminal radar service area
TSNT	transient
TWEB	transcribed weather broadcast
TWR	tower
TWY	taxiway
U	
UAVBL	unavailable
UHF	ultra high frequency
UNLGTD	unlighted
UNMON	unmonitored
UNSKED	unscheduled
UNUSBL	unusable
ICAO:	U/S − unserviceable
V	
VASI	visual approach slope indicator
VCNTY	vicinity
VDP	visual descent point
VFR	visual flight rules
VHF	very high frequency
VOR	VHF omni−directional radio range

VORTAC	Combined VOR and TACAN system (collocated)
VOT	a VOR Receiver testing facility
VSBY	visibility
ICAO:	VIS − visibility
W	
W	west
WEA	weather
ICAO:	WX − weather
WKDAY	weekday
WKEND	weekend
WPT	waypoint
WS	Weather Service
WT	weight
Z	
Z	Coordinated Universal Time
ICAO:	UTC − Coordinated Universal Time

GEN 2.3 Chart Symbols

Aeronautical chart symbols are published in the Chart Users Guide published by the National Aeronautical Charting Office (NACO).

Copies are available at the following address:

NACO Distribution Branch, AVN−530
Federal Aviation Administration
Riverdale, MD 20737−1199.

GEN 2.4 Location Indicators

Location identifiers authorized by the Federal Aviation Administration, Department of the Navy, and Transport Canada and U.S. airspace fixes and procedure codes are published in FAA Order 7350.7, Location Identifiers. This publication may be purchased as a subscription from the U.S. Government Printing Office.

GEN 2.5 List of Radio Navigation Aids

A listing of navigation aids is not available. See individual aeronautical charts for specific information.

GEN 2.6 Conversion Tables

TBL GEN 2.6−1

ft/M										
ft	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	0	0.30	0.61	0.91	1.22	1.52	1.83	2.13	2.44	2.74
10	3.05	3.35	3.66	3.96	4.27	4.57	4.88	5.18	5.49	5.79
20	6.10	6.40	6.71	7.01	7.32	7.62	7.92	8.23	8.53	8.84
30	9.14	9.45	9.75	10.06	10.36	10.67	10.97	11.28	11.58	11.89
40	12.19	12.50	12.80	13.11	13.41	13.72	14.02	14.33	14.73	14.94
50	15.24	15.54	15.85	16.15	16.46	16.76	17.07	17.37	17.68	17.98
60	18.29	18.59	18.90	19.20	19.51	19.81	20.12	20.42	20.73	21.03
70	21.34	21.64	21.95	22.25	22.56	22.86	23.16	23.47	23.77	24.08
80	24.38	24.69	24.99	25.30	25.60	25.91	26.21	26.52	26.82	27.13
90	27.43	27.74	28.04	28.35	28.65	28.96	29.26	29.57	29.87	30.18
	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90
100	30.48	33.53	36.58	39.62	42.67	45.72	48.77	51.82	54.86	57.91
200	60.96	64.01	67.06	70.10	73.15	76.20	79.25	82.30	85.34	88.39
300	91.44	94.49	97.54	100.53	103.63	106.68	109.73	112.78	115.82	118.87
400	121.92	124.97	128.02	131.06	134.11	137.16	140.21	143.26	146.30	149.35
500	152.40	155.45	158.50	161.54	164.59	167.64	170.69	173.74	176.78	179.83
600	182.88	185.93	188.98	192.02	195.07	198.12	201.17	204.22	207.26	210.31
700	213.36	216.41	219.46	222.50	225.55	228.60	231.65	234.70	237.74	240.79
800	243.84	246.89	249.94	252.98	256.03	259.09	262.13	265.18	268.22	271.27
900	274.32	277.37	280.42	283.42	268.51	289.56	292.61	295.66	298.70	301.75
	0	100	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900
1000	304.80	335.28	365.76	396.24	426.72	457.20	487.68	518.16	548.64	579.12
2000	609.60	640.08	670.56	701.04	731.52	762.00	792.48	822.96	853.44	883.92
3000	914.40	944.88	975.36	1005.8	1036.3	1066.8	1097.3	1127.8	1158.2	1188.7
4000	1219.2	1249.7	1280.2	1310.6	1341.6	1371.6	1402.1	1432.6	1463.0	1493.5
5000	1524.0	1554.5	1585.0	1615.4	1645.9	1676.4	1706.9	1737.4	1767.8	1798.3
6000	1828.8	1859.3	1889.8	1920.2	1950.7	1981.2	2011.7	2042.2	2072.6	2103.1
7000	2133.6	2164.1	2194.6	2225.0	2255.5	2286.0	2316.5	2347.0	2377.4	2407.9
8000	2438.4	2468.9	2499.4	2529.8	2560.3	2590.8	2621.3	2651.8	2682.2	2712.7
9000	2743.2	2773.7	2804.2	2834.6	2865.1	2895.6	2926.1	2956.6	2987.0	3017.5
	0	1000	2000	3000	4000	5000	6000	7000	8000	9000
10000	3048.0	3352.8	3657.6	3962.4	4267.2	4572.0	4876.8	5181.6	5486.4	5791.2
20000	6096.0	6400.8	6705.6	7010.4	7315.2	7620.0	7924.8	8229.6	8534.4	8839.2
30000	9144.0	9448.8	9753.6	10058	10363	10668	10937	11278	11582	11887
40000	12192	12497	12802	13106	13411	13716	14021	14326	14630	14935
50000	15240	15545	15850	16154	16459	16764	17069	17374	17678	17983

TBL GEN 2.6−2

M/ft										
M	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	0	3.28	6.56	9.84	13.12	16.40	19.68	22.97	26.25	29.53
10	32.81	36.09	39.37	42.65	45.93	49.21	52.49	55.77	59.05	62.34
20	65.62	68.90	72.18	75.46	78.74	82.02	85.30	88.58	91.86	95.14
30	98.42	101.70	104.99	108.27	111.55	114.83	118.11	121.39	124.67	127.95
40	131.23	134.51	137.79	141.07	144.36	147.64	150.92	154.20	157.48	160.76
50	164.04	167.32	170.60	173.88	177.16	180.44	183.72	187.01	190.29	193.57
60	196.85	200.13	203.14	206.69	209.97	213.25	216.53	219.81	223.09	226.38
70	229.66	232.94	236.22	239.50	242.78	246.06	249.34	252.62	255.90	259.18
80	262.46	265.74	269.03	272.31	275.59	278.87	282.15	285.43	288.71	291.99
90	295.27	298.55	301.83	305.11	308.40	311.68	314.96	318.24	321.52	324.80
	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90
100	328.08	360.89	393.70	426.50	459.31	492.12	524.93	557.74	590.54	623.35
200	656.16	688.97	721.78	754.58	787.39	820.20	853.01	885.82	918.62	951.43
300	984.24	1017.0	109.9	1082.7	1115.5	1148.3	1181.1	1213.9	1246.7	1279.5
400	1312.3	1345.1	1377.9	1410.7	1443.6	1476.4	1509.2	1542.0	1574.8	1607.6
500	1640.4	1673.2	1706.0	1738.8	1771.6	1804.4	1837.2	1870.1	1902.9	1935.7
600	1968.5	2001.3	2034.1	2066.9	2099.7	2132.5	2165.3	2198.1	2230.9	2263.8
700	2296.6	2329.4	2362.2	2395.0	2427.8	2460.6	2493.4	2562.2	2559.0	2591.8
800	2624.6	2657.4	2690.3	2723.1	2755.9	2788.7	2821.5	2854.3	2887.1	2919.9
900	2952.7	2985.5	3018.3	3051.1	3084.0	3116.8	3149.6	3182.4	3215.2	3248.0
	0	100	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900
1000	3280.8	3608.0	3937.0	4265.0	4593.1	4921.2	5249.3	5577.4	5905.4	6233.5
2000	6561.6	6889.7	7217.8	7545.8	7873.9	8202.0	8530.1	8858.2	9186.2	9514.3
3000	9842.4	10170	10499	10827	11155	11483	11811	12139	12467	12795
4000	13123	13451	13779	14107	14436	14764	15092	15420	15748	16076
5000	16404	16732	17060	17388	17716	18044	18372	18701	19029	19357
6000	19685	20013	20341	20669	20997	21325	21653	21981	22309	22638
7000	22966	23294	23622	23950	24278	24606	24934	25262	25590	25918
8000	26246	26574	26903	27231	27559	27887	28215	28543	28871	29199
9000	29527	29855	30183	30511	30840	31168	31496	31824	32152	32480

TBL GEN 2.6−3

INTERNATIONAL NAUTICAL MILES TO STATUTE MILES										
1 nautical mile = 6,076.10 feet or 1,852 meters 1 statute mile = 5,280 feet or 1,609.35 meters										
NM	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	0.000	1.151	2.302	3.452	4.603	5.754	6.905	8.055	9.206	10.357
10	11.508	12.659	13.809	14.960	16.111	17.262	18.412	19.563	20.714	21.865
20	23.016	24.166	25.317	26.468	27.619	28.769	29.920	31.071	32.222	33.373
30	34.523	35.674	36.825	37.976	39.126	40.277	41.428	42.579	43.730	44.880
40	46.031	47.182	48.333	49.483	50.634	51.785	52.936	54.087	55.237	56.388
50	57.539	58.690	59.840	60.991	62.142	63.293	64.444	65.594	66.745	67.896
60	69.047	70.197	71.348	72.499	73.650	74.801	75.951	77.102	78.253	79.404
70	80.554	81.705	82.856	84.007	85.158	86.308	87.459	88.610	89.761	90.911
80	92.062	93.213	94.364	95.515	96.665	97.816	98.967	100.118	101.268	102.419
90	103.570	104.721	105.871	107.022	108.173	109.324	110.475	111.625	112.776	113.927

TBL GEN 2.6−4

STATUTE MILES TO INTERNATIONAL NAUTICAL MILES										
SM	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	0.000	0.869	1.738	2.607	3.476	4.345	5.214	6.083	6.952	7.821
10	8.690	9.559	10.428	11.297	12.166	13.035	13.904	14.773	15.642	16.511
20	17.380	18.249	19.118	19.986	20.855	21.724	22.593	23.462	24.331	25.200
30	26.069	26.938	27.807	28.676	29.545	30.414	31.283	32.152	33.021	33.890
40	34.759	35.628	36.497	37.366	38.235	39.104	39.973	40.482	41.711	42.580
50	43.449	44.318	45.187	46.056	46.925	47.794	48.663	49.532	50.401	51.270
60	52.139	53.008	53.877	54.746	55.615	56.484	57.353	58.222	59.091	59.959
70	60.828	61.697	62.566	63.435	64.304	65.173	66.042	66.911	67.780	68.649
80	69.518	70.387	71.256	72.125	72.994	73.863	74.732	75.601	76.470	77.339
90	78.208	79.077	79.946	80.815	81.684	82.553	83.422	84.291	85.160	86.029

TBL GEN 2.6−5

CONVERSION TABLE − NM/ft										
NM	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	0	607	1215	1822	2430	3037	3645	4252	4860	5467
1	6075	6682	7289	7897	8504	9112	9719	10327	10934	11542
2	12149	12757	13364	13971	14579	15186	15794	16401	17009	17616
3	18224	18831	19439	20046	20653	21261	21868	22476	23083	23691
4	24298	24906	25513	26121	26728	27335	27943	28550	29158	29765
5	30373	30980	31588	32195	32803	33410	34017	34625	35232	35840
6	36447	37055	37662	38270	38877	39485	40092	40700	41307	41914
7	42522	43129	43737	44344	44952	45559	46167	46774	47328	47989
8	48596	49204	49811	50419	51026	51634	52241	52849	53456	54064
9	54671	55278	55886	56493	57101	57708	58316	58923	59531	60138

TBL GEN 2.6−6

CONVERSION TABLE − ft/NM										
ft	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0	0	0.016	0.033	0.049	0.066	0.082	0.099	0.115	0.132	0.148
1000	0.165	0.181	0.197	0.214	0.230	0.247	0.263	0.280	0.296	0.313
2000	0.329	0.346	0.362	0.379	0.395	0.411	0.428	0.444	0.461	0.477
3000	0.494	0.510	0.527	0.543	0.560	0.576	0.593	0.609	0.625	0.642
4000	0.658	0.675	0.691	0.708	0.724	0.741	0.757	0.774	0.790	0.806
5000	0.823	0.839	0.856	0.872	0.889	0.905	0.922	0.938	0.955	0.971
6000	0.988	1.004	1.020	1.037	1.053	1.070	1.086	1.103	1.119	1.136
7000	1.152	1.169	1.185	1.202	1.218	1.234	1.251	1.267	1.284	1.300
8000	1.317	1.333	1.350	1.366	1.383	1.399	1.416	1.432	1.448	1.465
9000	1.481	1.498	1.514	1.531	1.547	1.564	1.580	1.597	1.613	1.629
	0	1000	2000	3000	4000	5000	6000	7000	8000	9000
10000	1.646	1.811	1.975	2.140	2.304	2.469	2.634	2.798	2.963	3.127
20000	3.292	3.457	3.621	3.786	3.950	4.115	4.280	4.444	4.609	4.773
30000	4.938	5.103	5.267	5.432	5.596	5.761	5.926	6.090	6.255	6.419
40000	6.584	6.749	6.913	7.078	7.242	7.407	7.572	7.736	7.901	8.065
50000	8.230	8.395	8.559	8.724	8.888	9.053	9.218	9.382	9.547	9.711

TBL GEN 2.6–7

MB/INS						°C/°F					
MB	**INS**	**MB**	**INS**	**MB**	**INS**	**°C**	**°F**	**°C**	**°F**	**°C**	**°F**
948	27.99	982	29.00	1016	30.00	–60	–76.0	–15	15	30	86.0
949	28.02	983	29.03	1017	30.03	–59	–74.2	–14	6.8	31	87.8
950	28.05	984	29.06	1018	30.06	–58	–72.4	–13	8.6	32	89.6
951	28.08	985	29.09	1019	30.09	–57	–70.6	–12	10.4	33	91.4
952	28.11	986	29.12	1020	30.12	–56	–68.8	–11	12.2	34	93.2
953	28.14	987	29.15	1021	30.15	–55	–67.0	–10	14.0	35	95.0
954	28.17	988	29.18	1022	30.18	–54	–65.2	–9	15.8	36	96.8
955	28.20	989	29.21	1023	30.21	–53	–63.4	–8	17.6	37	98.6
956	28.23	990	29.23	1024	30.24	–52	–61.6	–7	19.4	38	100.4
957	28.26	991	29.26	1025	30.27	–51	–59.8	–6	21.2	39	102.2
958	28.29	992	29.29	1026	30.30	–50	–58.0	–5	23.0	40	104.0
959	28.32	993	29.32	1027	30.33	–49	–56.2	–4	24.8	42	105.8
960	28.35	994	29.35	1028	30.36	–48	–54.4	–3	26.6	42	107.6
961	28.38	995	29.38	1029	30.39	–47	–52.6	–2	28.4	43	109.4
962	28.41	996	29.41	1030	30.42	–46	–50.8	–1	30.2	44	111.2
963	28.44	997	29.44	1031	30.45	–45	–49.0	0	32.0	45	113.0
964	28.47	998	29.47	1032	30.47	–44	–47.2	1	33.8	46	114.8
965	28.50	999	29.50	1033	30.50	–43	–45.4	2	35.6	47	116.6
966	28.53	1000	29.53	1034	30.53	–42	–43.6	3	37.4	48	118.4
967	28.56	1001	29.56	1035	30.56	–41	–41.8	4	39.2	49	120.2
968	28.59	1002	29.59	1036	30.59	–40	–40.0	5	41.0	50	122.0
969	28.61	1003	29.62	1037	30.62	–39	–38.2	6	42.8	51	123.8
970	28.64	1004	29.65	1038	30.65	–38	–36.4	7	44.6	52	125.6
971	28.67	1005	29.68	1039	30.68	–37	–34.6	8	46.4	53	127.4
972	28.70	1006	29.71	1040	30.71	–36	–32.8	9	48.2	54	129.2
973	28.73	1007	29.74	1041	30.74	–35	–31.0	10	50.0	55	131.0
974	28.76	1008	29.77	1042	30.77	–34	–29.2	11	51.8	56	132.8
975	28.79	1009	29.80	1043	30.80	–33	–27.4	12	53.6	57	134.6
976	28.82	1010	29.83	1044	30.83	–32	–25.6	13	55.4	58	136.4
977	28.85	1011	29.86	1045	30.86	–31	–23.8	14	57.2	59	138.2
978	28.88	1012	29.88	1046	30.89	–30	–22.0	15	59.0	60	140.0
979	28.91	1013	29.91	1047	30.92	–29	–20.2	16	60.8	61	141.8
980	28.94	1014	29.94	1048	30.95	–28	–18.4	17	62.6	62	143.6
981	28.97	1015	29.97	1049	30.98	–27	–16.6	18	64.4	63	145.4
				1050	31.01	–26	–14.8	19	66.2	64	147.2
						–24	–11.2	21	69.8	66	150.8
						–23	–9.4	22	71.6	67	152.6
						–22	–7.6	23	73.4	68	154.4
						–21	–5.8	24	75.2	69	156.2
						–20	–4.0	25	77.0	70	158.0
						–19	–2.2	26	78.7		
						–18	–0.4	27	80.6		
						–17	1.4	28	82.4		
						–16	3.2	29	84.2		

TBL GEN 2.6−8

litres/imperial gallons						litres/U.S. gallons					
L	**IMP**	**L**	**IMP**	**L**	**IMP**	**L**	**U.S.**	**L**	**U.S.**	**L**	**U.S.**
1	.22	41	9.02	81	17.82	1	.26	41	10.83	81	21.40
3	.66	43	9.46	83	18.26	3	.79	43	11.36	83	21.93
4	.88	44	9.68	84	18.48	4	1.06	44	11.63	84	22.19
5	1.10	45	9.90	85	18.70	5	1.32	45	11.89	85	22.46
6	1.32	46	10.12	86	18.92	6	1.59	46	12.15	86	22.72
7	1.54	47	10.34	87	19.14	7	1.85	47	12.42	87	22.99
8	1.76	48	10.56	88	19.36	8	2.11	48	12.68	88	22.35
9	1.98	49	10.78	89	19.58	9	2.38	49	12.95	89	23.51
10	2.20	50	11.00	90	19.80	10	2.64	50	13.21	90	23.78
11	2.42	51	11.22	91	20.02	11	2.91	51	13.47	91	24.04
12	2.64	52	11.44	92	20.24	12	3.17	52	13.74	92	24.31
13	2.86	53	11.66	93	20.46	13	3.44	53	14.00	93	24.57
14	3.08	54	11.88	94	20.68	14	3.70	54	14.27	94	24.84
15	3.30	55	12.10	95	20.90	15	3.96	55	14.53	95	25.10
16	3.52	56	12.32	96	21.12	16	4.23	56	14.80	96	25.36
17	3.74	57	12.54	97	21.34	17	4.49	57	15.06	97	25.63
18	3.86	58	12.76	98	21.56	18	4.76	58	15.32	98	25.89
19	4.18	59	12.98	99	21.78	19	5.02	59	15.59	99	26.16
20	4.40	60	13.20	100	22.00	20	5.28	60	15.85	100	26.42
21	4.62	61	13.42	200	44.00	21	5.55	61	16.12	200	52.84
22	4.84	62	13.64	300	66.00	22	5.81	62	16.38	300	79.26
23	5.06	63	13.86	400	88.00	23	6.08	63	16.65	400	105.68
24	5.28	64	14.08	500	110.00	24	6.34	64	16.91	500	132.10
25	5.50	65	14.30	600	132.00	25	6.61	65	17.17	600	158.52
26	5.72	66	14.52	700	154.00	26	6.87	66	17.44	700	184.94
27	5.94	67	14.74	800	176.00	27	7.13	67	17.70	800	211.36
28	6.16	68	14.96	900	198.00	28	7.40	68	17.97	900	237.78
29	6.38	69	15.18	1000	220.00	29	7.66	69	18.23	1000	264.2
30	6.60	70	15.40	2000	440.00	30	7.93	70	18.49	2000	528.4
31	6.82	71	15.62	3000	660.00	31	8.19	71	18.76	3000	792.6
32	7.04	72	15.84	4000	880.00	32	8.45	72	19.02	4000	1056.8
33	7.26	73	16.06	5000	1100.00	33	8.72	73	19.29	5000	1321.0
34	7.48	74	16.28	6000	1320.00	34	8.98	74	19.55	6000	1585.2
35	7.70	75	16.50	7000	1540.00	35	9.25	75	19.82	7000	1849.4
36	7.92	76	16.72	8000	1760.00	36	9.51	76	20.08	8000	2113.6
37	8.14	77	16.94	9000	1980.00	37	9.78	77	20.34	9000	2377.8
38	8.36	78	17.16	10000	2200.00	38	10.04	78	29.61	10000	2642.0
39	8.58	79	17.38			39	10.30	79	20.87		
40	8.80	80	17.60			40	10.57	80	21.14		

TBL GEN 2.6−9

Kg/lb											
kg	**lb**	**kg**	**lb**	**kg**	**lb**	**kg**	**lb**	**kg**	**lb**	**kg**	**lb**
1	2.20	28	61.73	52	114.64	76	167.55	100	220.5	16000	35273.6
2	4.41	29	63.93	53	116.84	77	169.75	200	440.9	17000	37478.2
3	6.61	30	6.14	54	119.05	78	171.96	300	661.4	18000	39682.2
4	8.82	31	68.34	55	121.25	79	174.16	400	881.8	19000	41887.4
5	11.02	32	70.55	56	123.46	80	176.37	500	1102.3	20000	44092.0
6	13.23	33	72.75	57	125.66	81	178.57	600	1322.8	21000	46296.6
7	15.43	34	74.96	58	127.87	82	180.78	700	1543.2	22000	48501.2
8	17.64	35	77.16	59	130.07	83	182.98	800	1763.7	23000	50705.8
9	19.84	36	79.37	60	132.28	84	185.19	900	1984.1	24000	52910.4
10	22.05	37	81.57	61	134.48	85	187.39	1000	2204.6	25000	55115.0
11	24.25	38	83.78	62	136.69	86	189.60	2000	4409.2	26000	57319.6
12	26.46	39	85.98	63	138.98	87	191.80	3000	6613.8	27000	59524.2
13	28.66	40	88.18	64	141.09	88	194.01	4000	8818.4	28000	61728.8
14	30.86	41	90.39	65	143.30	89	196.21	5000	11023.0	29000	63933.5
15	33.07	42	92.59	66	145.50	90	198.41	6000	13227.6	30000	66138.0
16	35.27	43	94.80	67	147.71	91	200.62	7000	15432.2	35000	77161.0
17	37.48	44	97.00	68	149.91	92	202.82	8000	17636.8	40000	88184.0
18	39.68	45	99.21	69	152.12	93	205.03	9000	19841.4	45000	99207.0
19	41.89	46	101.41	70	154.32	94	207.23	10000	22046.0	50000	110230.0
20	44.09	47	103.62	71	156.53	95	209.44	11000	24250.6	60000	132276.0
21	46.30	48	105.82	72	158.73	96	211.64	12000	26455.2	70000	154322.0
22	48.50	49	108.03	73	160.94	97	213.85	13000	28659.8	80000	176368.0
23	50.71	50	110.23	74	163.14	98	216.05	14000	30864.4	90000	198414.0
24	52.91	51	112.44	75	165.35	99	218.26	15000	33069.0	100000	220460.0
25	55.12										
26	57.32										
27	59.52										

GEN 2.7 Sunrise/Sunset Tables

The U.S. does not publish sunrise/sunset tables.

GEN 3. SERVICES

GEN 3.1 Aeronautical Information Services

1. Aeronautical Information Service

1.1 The U.S. Aeronautical Information Service is the National Flight Data Center, which forms a part of the Air Traffic Airspace Management of the Federal Aviation Administration.

Postal Address:
Federal Aviation Administration
National Flight Data Center (ATA−110)
800 Independence Avenue, SW.
Washington, D.C. 20591
Telephone: 202−267−9311
Telex: 892−562
Commercial Telegraphic Address: FAA WASH
AFTN Address: KRWAYAYX

1.2 The U.S. NOTAM office is located at the following address:

Postal Address:
Federal Aviation Administration
U.S. NOTAM Office, ATT−134
Air Traffic Control System Command Center
13600 EDS Drive
Herndon, VA 20171−3225
Telephone: 703−904−4557
Toll Free: 1−888−876−6826
Facsimile: 703−904−4437
Telex: 892−562
AFTN Address (Administrative):
KDCAYNYX
AFTN (NOTAM): KDZZNAXX

2. Area of Responsibility of AIS

2.1 The National Flight Data Center is responsible for the collection, validation, and dissemination of aeronautical information for the U.S. and areas under its jurisdiction for air traffic control purposes.

3. Aeronautical Publications

3.1 United States AIP

3.1.1 The AIP, issued in one volume, is the basic aeronautical information document published for international use. It contains information of a lasting character, with interim updates published in various other publications. The AIP is available in English only and is maintained on a current basis by a 6−month amendment service.

3.2 NOTAM Publication

3.2.1 NOTAM information is published in booklet form every 28 days, entitled Notices to Airmen. This booklet disseminates aeronautical information of operational significance concerning airspace, procedures, and information concerning the status of both international and domestic airports and navigational aids.

3.3 Aeronautical Information Circulars

3.3.1 These circulars, called Advisory Circulars, contain information of general or technical interest relating to administrative or aviation matters which are inappropriate to either the AIP or the NOTAM. Advisory Circulars are available in English only. A checklist of outstanding circulars is issued annually.

3.4 En route Aeronautical Charts, En Route Supplements, Approach Procedure Charts, Regional Airport/Facility Directories

3.4.1 These publications, available in English only, contain specific information on airspace, airports, navigational aids, and flight procedures applicable to the regional areas of the U.S. and the territories and airspace under its jurisdiction. These publications are available by subscription only.

4. Distribution of Publications

4.1 The AIP subscriptions, including amendments, are made available to foreign aeronautical authorities on a reciprocal basis through the Federal Aviation Administration, AAT−30, 800 Independence Avenue, SW., Washington, D.C. 20591 upon request. Address corrections and changes in distribution to foreign aeronautical authorities are also accomplished through this office. See information in paragraph 1.2 for published NOTAMs.

4.2 Private paying subscriptions must be obtained for each separate AIP document from the:

Superintendent of Documents
U.S. Government Printing Office
P. O. Box 371954
Pittsburgh, PA 15250−7954
Telephone: 202−512−1800
Internet: http://www.access.gpo.gov/su_docs

4.3 Advisory Circulars are available, upon request, from the:

U.S. Department of Transportation
Subsequent Distribution Office
Ardmore East Business Center
3341 Q 75th Avenue
Landover, MD 20785

4.4 All domestic chart and chart products as well as National Imagery and Mapping Agency (NIMA) world−wide products are available upon subscription from the:

NACO Distribution Branch, AVN−530
Federal Aviation Administration
Riverdale, Maryland 20737−1199
Telephone: 800−638−8972

5. NOTAM Service

5.1 NOTAM Publication (Postal Distribution)

5.1.1 NOTAM publication distribution, by means of the Notices to Airmen publication, is in booklet form which contains a recapitulation of pertinent or permanent information of concern to airspace, facilities, services, and procedures which are of interest to both international and domestic civil aviation users. The information contained will eventually be published in either the U.S. AIP or in other publications for domestic use, as applicable. The Notices to Airmen publication will also contain information regarding temporary changes or unscheduled interruptions to flight procedures and navigational aids or airport services, the duration of which is expected to last seven or more days. Distribution of the Notices to Airmen publication parallels NOTAM Class I and AIP distribution.

5.2 NOTAM Class I (Telecommunication Distribution)

5.2.1 NOTAM Class I distribution is used mainly for the notification of temporary information of timely significance such as unforeseen changes in services, facilities, airspace utilization, or any other emergency. Distribution is via telecommunications through the International NOTAM Office of the National Flight Data Center, in accordance with the following classifications:

5.2.1.1 International NOTAM. NOTAM containing full information on all airports, facilities and flight procedures available for use by international civil aviation. NOTAMs are given selected distribution to adjacent or appropriate International NOTAM Offices which require their exchange.

5.2.1.2 International Airspace NOTAM. NOTAM containing short term information pertaining to potentially hazardous international and domestic airspace utilization which is of concern to international flights. NOTAMs are given selected distribution to adjacent or appropriate International NOTAM Offices which require their exchange.

5.2.1.3 International Airspace NOTAM. NOTAM containing permanent changes−en route airway structure/aeronautical service and information of a general nature. NOTAMs are given selected distribution to adjacent or appropriate International NOTAM Offices which require their exchange.

5.2.1.4 International OMEGA and LORAN Facilities status of the OMEGA or LORAN Navigational Aid Facilities. NOTAMs are given selected distribution to adjacent or appropriate International NOTAM Offices which require their exchange.

5.2.1.5 Domestic NOTAM. NOTAM containing information of concern to aircraft other than those engaged in international civil aviation. Distribution is to local or national users only. (See ENR 1.10.)

5.2.2 Each NOTAM is assigned a four digit serial number which is followed by the location indicator for which the series is applicable. The serial numbers start with number 0001 at 0000 UTC on 1 July of each year. Each serial number is preceded by a letter:

5.2.2.1 A for NOTAM classification "1."

NOTE−
NOTAM number one for the year 1984 for the New York, John F. Kennedy International Airport would read A0001/84 KJFK. All NOTAMs issued will be preceded by an "A."

5.2.2.2 B for NOTAM classification "2." (Airspace): the identifier of the affected air traffic control center/FIR will be used.

NOTE−
NOTAM number one for the year 1984 for the Oakland ARTCC/FIR (Pacific Ocean Area) would read A0001/84 KZOA.

5.2.2.3 C for NOTAM classification "3" (Permanent Airspace): The KFDC identifier will be used for data of permanent airway/aeronautical services and of a general nature that are transmitted as NOTAMs and are given selected distribution to adjacent or appropriate International NOTAM Offices which require their exchange.

NOTE−
NOTAM number one for the year 1984 for KFDC is A0001/84 KFDC.

5.2.2.4 D for NOTAM classification "4" (OMEGA/ LORAN facilities): The KNMH will be used for OMEGA/LORAN information that is transmitted to all NOTAM Offices that exchange information with the U.S. International NOTAM Office.

NOTE−
NOTAM number one for the year 1984 concerning the status of OMEGA Station Norway would read A0001/84 KNMH.

5.2.2.5 E for NOTAM classification "5" (domestic): No application (see ENR 1.10).

5.3 Each NOTAM is provided with an identification letter adjoining the end of the word NOTAM meaning:

5.3.1 NOTAMN: NOTAM containing new information.

5.3.2 NOTAMC: NOTAM cancelling a previous NOTAM indicated.

5.3.3 NOTAMR: NOTAM replacing a previous NOTAM indicated.

5.4 A checklist of NOTAMs currently in force for each international NOTAM classification is issued each month over the Aeronautical Fixed Telecommunications Network (AFTN) to each International NOTAM office which exchanges International NOTAMs with the U.S. International NOTAM Office.

5.5 NOTAM Class I information is exchanged between the U.S. International NOTAM Office and the following International NOTAM Offices.

TBL GEN 3.1−1

COUNTRY	**CITY**
AFGHANISTAN	KABUL
ALBANIA	ROME
ALGERIA	ALGIERS
ANGOLA	LUANDA
ARGENTINA	BUENOS AIRES
AUSTRALIA	SIDNEY
AUSTRIA	VIENNA
AZORES	SANTO MARIA
BAHAMAS	NASSAU
BAHRAIN	BAHRAIN
BANGLADESH	DHAKA (DACCA)
BELGIUM	BRUSSELS
BERMUDA	BERMUDA
BOLIVIA	LA PAZ
BOSNIA	ZAGREB
BRAZIL	RIO DE JANEIRO
BULGARIA	SOFIA
CAMBODIA	PHNOM−PEHN
CANADA	OTTAWA
CAPE VERDE ISLANDS	AMILCAR CABRAL
CHILE	SANTIAGO
CHINA	BEIJING
CHINA (FORMOSA)	TAIPEI
COLOMBIA	BOGOTA
CONGO	BRAZZAVILLE
CROATIA	ZAGREB
CUBA	HAVANA
CYPRUS	NICOSIA
CZECH REPUBLIC	PRAGUE
DENMARK	COPENHAGEN
DOMINICAN REPUBLIC	SANTO DOMINGO
ECUADOR	GUAYAQUIL
ENGLAND	LONDON
ESTONIA	TALLINN
ETHIOPIA	ADDIS ABABA
EYGPT	CAIRO
FIJI	NANDI
FINLAND	HELSINKI
FRANCE	PARIS

COUNTRY	CITY
FRENCH GUIANA	MARTINIQUE
FRENCH POLYNESIA	TAHITI
GERMANY (WEST)	FRANKFURT
GHANA	ACCRA
GREECE	ATHENS
GREENLAND	SONDRE STROMFJORD
GUYANA	GEORGETOWN
HAITI	PORT−AU−PRINCE
HONDURAS	TEQUCIGALPA
HONG KONG	HONG KONG
HUNGARY	BUDAPEST
ICELAND	REYKJAVIK
INDIA	BOMBAY
INDIA	CALCUTTA
INDIA	DELHI
INDIA	MADRAS
INDONESIA	JAKARTA
IRAN	TEHRAN (NOT AVBL)
IRELAND	SHANNON
ISRAEL	TEL AVIV
ITALY	ROME
JAMAICA	KINGSTON
JAPAN	TOKYO
JORDAN	AMMAN
KENYA	NAIROBI
KOREA (SOUTH)	SEOUL
KUWAIT	KUWAIT
LATVIA	MOSCOW
LEBANON	BEIRUT
LIBERIA	ROBERTS
LIBYA	TRIPOLI
MALAYSIA	KUALA LUMPUR
MALTA	LUQA
MAURITIUS	PLAISANCE
MAYNMAR	RANGOON
MEXICO	MEXICO CITY
MOROCCO	CASABLANCA
MOZAMBIQUE	MAPUTO
NAMIBIA	JOHANNESBURG
NAURU ISLAND	NAURU
NETHERLANDS	AMSTERDAM
NETHERLANDS ANTILLES	CURACAO

COUNTRY	CITY
NEW GUINEA	PORT MOSEBY
NEW ZEALAND	AUCKLAND
NIGERIA	LAGOS
NORWAY	OSLO
OMAN	MUSCAT
PAKISTAN	KARACHI
PANAMA	TOCUMEN
PARAGUAY	ASUNCION
PERU	LIMA
PHILLIPINES	MANILLA
POLAND	WARSAW
PORTUGAL	LISBON
ROMANIA	BUCHAREST
RUSSIA	MOSCOW
SAMOA	FALEOLA
SAUDI ARABIA	JEDDAH
SENEGAL	DAKAR
SEYCHELLES	MAHE
SINGAPORE	SINGAPORE
SLOVAKIA	BRATISLAVA
SOLOMON ISLANDS	HONIARA
SOUTH AFRICA	JOHANNESBURG
SPAIN	MADRID
SRI LANKA	COLOMBO
SUDAN	KHARTOUM
SURINAME	PARAMARIBO
SWEDEN	STOCKHOLM
SWITZERLAND	ZURICH
SYRIA	DAMASCUS
TANZANIA	DAR−ES−SALAAM
THAILAND	BANKOK
TRINIDAD	PORT OF SPAIN
TUNISIA	TUNIS
TURKEY	ANKARA
URUGUAY	MONTEVIDEO
VIET NAM	HO CHI MINH CITY
VENEZUELA	CARACAS
YEMEN	ADEN
YUGOSLAVIA	BELGRADE
ZAIRE	KINSHASA
ZAMBIA	LUSAKA
ZIMBABWE	HARARE

6. Pre−Flight Information Service at Aerodromes Available to International Flights

6.1 Pre−Flight Information Units in the U.S. are either FAA operated Flight Service Stations (FSS) or National Weather Service operated Weather Service Offices (WS).

6.2 Flight Service Stations (FSSs) are air traffic facilities which provide pilot briefings, en route communications and VFR search and rescue services, assist lost aircraft and aircraft in emergency situations, relay ATC clearances, originate Notices to Airmen, broadcast aviation weather and National Airspace System (NAS) information, receive and process IFR flight plans, and monitor NAVAIDs. In addition, at selected locations FSSs provide En Route Flight Advisory Service (Flight Watch), take weather observations, issue airport advisories, and advise the U.S. Customs and Immigration Services of trans-border flights.

6.3 Supplemental Weather Service Locations (SWSLs) are airport facilities staffed with contract personnel who take weather observations and provide current local weather to pilots via telephone or radio. All other services are provided by the parent FSS.

6.4 Flight Service Station (FSS) locations, services and telephone information are available in the U.S. Airport/Facility Directory, Supplement Alaska, and Pacific Chart Supplement.

6.5 Flight Service Station, Pre−Flight information service coverage is designed primarily to provide service within a 500−mile area of the Flight Service Station. All Flight Service Stations, nevertheless, do have telecommunications access to all of the weather and NOTAM information available, on an as needed basis, for preflight briefing to international locations with which the U.S. International NOTAM office exchanges information.

GEN 3.2 Aeronautical Charts

1. General

1.1 Civil aeronautical charts for the U.S. and its territories, and possessions are produced by the National Aeronautical Charting Office (NACO), **www.naco.faa.gov**, which is part of the FAA's Office of Aviation System Standards (AVN).

2. Obtaining Aeronautical Charts

2.1 Most charts and publications described in this chapter can be obtained by subscription or one−time sales from:

NACO Distribution Division, AVN−530
Federal Aviation Administration
6303 Ivy Lane, Suite 400
Greenbelt, MD 20770
Telephone: 1−800−638−8972
(Toll free within U.S.)
301−436−8301/6990
301−436−6829 (FAX)

e−mail: 9−AMC−Chartsales@faa.gov

2.2 Public sales of charts and publications are also available through a network of FAA chart agents primarily located at or near major civil airports. A listing of products and agents is printed in the free FAA catalog, *Aeronautical Charts and Related Products*. (FAA Stock No. ACATSET). A free quarterly bulletin, *Dates of Latest Editions,* (FAA Stock No. 5318), is also available from NACO.

3. Selected Charts and Products Available

VFR Navigation Charts
IFR Navigation Charts
Planning Charts
Supplementary Charts and Publications
Digital Products

4. General Description of Each Chart Series

4.1 VFR Navigation Charts

4.1.1 Sectional Aeronautical Charts. Sectional Charts are designed for visual navigation of slow to medium speed aircraft. The topographic information consists of contour lines, shaded relief, drainage patterns, and an extensive selection of visual checkpoints and landmarks used for flight under VFR. Cultural features include cities and towns, roads, railroads, and other distinct landmarks. The aeronautical information includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, special−use airspace, obstructions, and related data. Scale 1 inch = 6.86nm/1:500,000. 60 x 20 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. Revised semiannually, except most Alaskan charts are revised annually.
(See FIG GEN 3.2−1 and FIG GEN 3.2−11.)

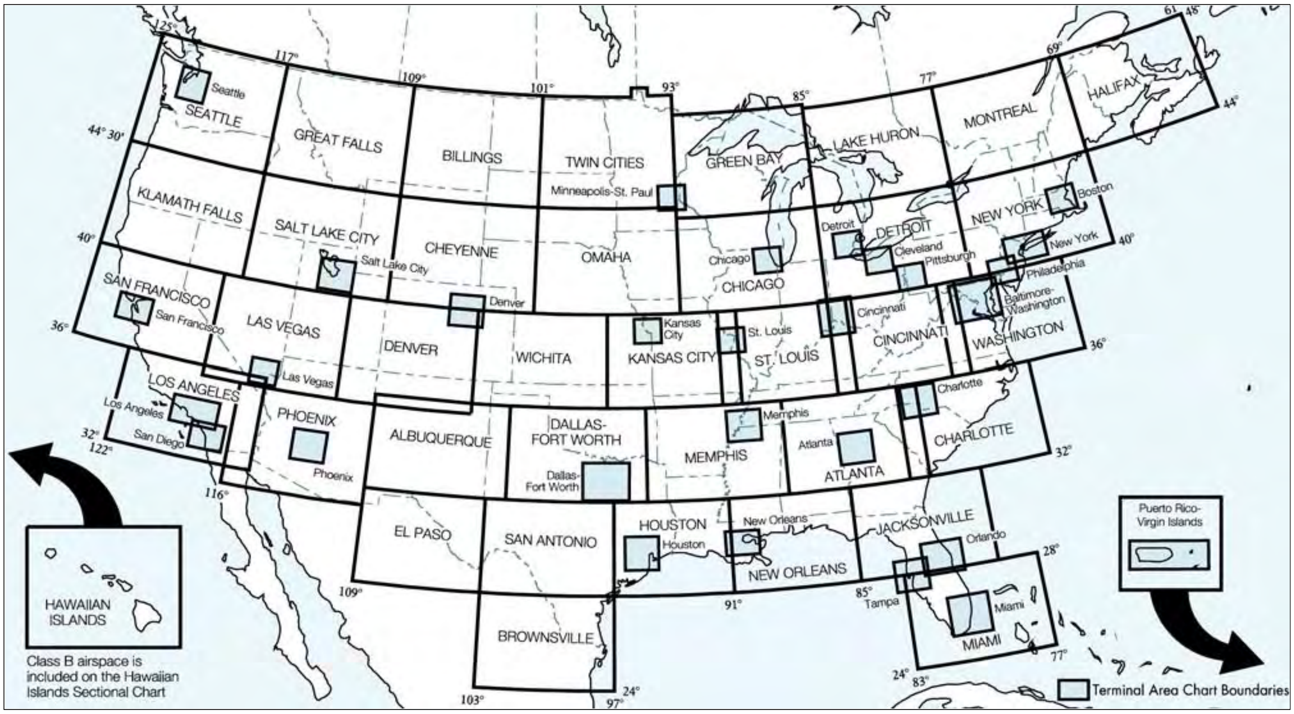
4.1.2 VFR Terminal Area Charts (TAC). TACs depict the airspace designated as Class B airspace. While similar to sectional charts, TACs have more detail because the scale is larger. The TAC should be used by pilots intending to operate to or from airfields within or near Class B or Class C airspace. Areas with TAC coverage are indicated by a on the Sectional Chart indexes. Scale 1 inch = 3.43nm/1:250,000. Charts are revised semiannually, except Puerto Rico−Virgin Islands which is revised annually.
(See FIG GEN 3.2−1 and FIG GEN 3.2−11.)

4.1.3 World Aeronautical Charts (WAC). WACs cover land areas for navigation by moderate speed aircraft operating at high altitudes. Included are city tints, principal roads, railroads, distinctive landmarks, drainage patterns, and relief. Aeronautical information includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, airways, special−use airspace, and obstructions. Because of a smaller scale, WACs do not show as much detail as sectional or TACs, and therefore are not recommended for exclusive use by pilots of low speed, low altitude aircraft. Scale 1 inch = 13.7nm/ 1:1,000,000. 60 x 20 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. WACs are revised annually, except for a few in Alaska and the Caribbean, which are revised biennially.
(See FIG GEN 3.2−12 and FIG GEN 3.2−13.)

4.1.4 U.S. Gulf Coast VFR Aeronautical Chart. The Gulf Coast Chart is designed primarily for helicopter operation in the Gulf of Mexico area. Information depicted includes offshore mineral leasing areas and blocks, oil drilling platforms, and high density helicopter activity areas. Scale 1 inch = 13.7nm/1:1,000,000. 55 x 27 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. Revised annually.

FIG GEN 3.2−1

Sectional and VFR Terminal Area Charts for the Conterminous U.S., Hawaii, Puerto Rico, and Virgin Islands



4.1.5 Grand Canyon VFR Aeronautical Chart. Covers the Grand Canyon National Park area and is designed to promote aviation safety, flight free zones, and facilitate VFR navigation in this popular area. The chart contains aeronautical information for general aviation VFR pilots on one side and commercial VFR air tour operators on the other side.

4.1.6 Helicopter Route Charts. A three−color chart series which shows current aeronautical information useful to helicopter pilots navigating in areas with high concentrations of helicopter activity. Information depicted includes helicopter routes, four classes of heliports with associated frequency and lighting capabilities, NAVAIDs, and obstructions. In addition, pictorial symbols, roads, and easily identified geographical features are portrayed. Helicopter charts have a longer life span than other chart products and may be current for several years. All new editions of these charts are printed on a durable plastic material. Helicopter Route Charts are updated as requested by the FAA. Scale 1 inch = 1.71nm/1:125,000. 34 x 30 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches.

4.2 IFR Navigation Charts

4.2.1 IFR En Route Low Altitude Charts (Conterminous U.S. and Alaska). En route low altitude charts provide aeronautical information for navigation under IFR conditions below 18,000 feet MSL. This four−color chart series includes airways; limits of controlled airspace; VHF NAVAIDs with frequency, identification, channel, geographic coordinates; airports with terminal air/ground communications; minimum en route and obstruction clearance altitudes; airway distances; reporting points; special use airspace; and military training routes. Scales vary from 1 inch = 5nm to 1 inch = 20nm. 50 x 20 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. Charts revised every 56 days. *Area charts* show congested terminal areas at a large scale. They are included with subscriptions to any conterminous U.S. Set Low (Full set, East or West sets). (See FIG GEN 3.2−2 and FIG GEN 3.2−4.)

FIG GEN 3.2−2

En Route Low Altitude Instrument Charts for the Conterminous U.S. (Includes Area Charts)

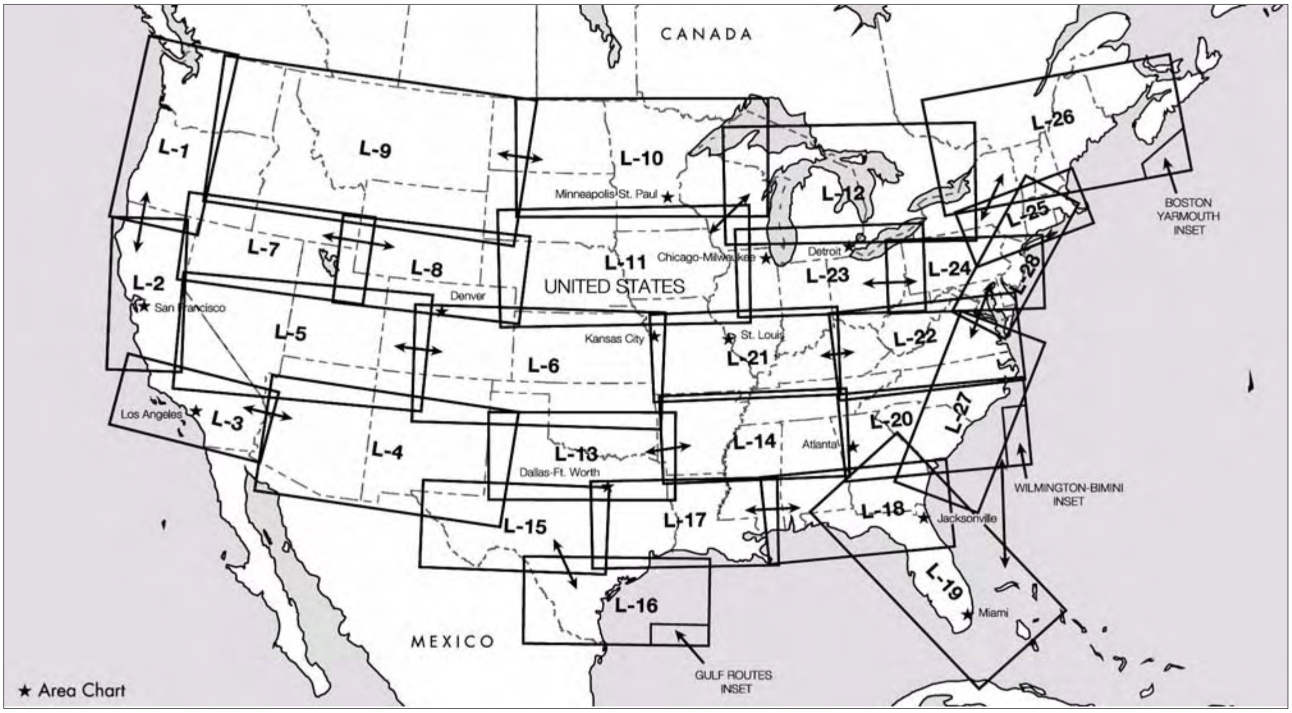
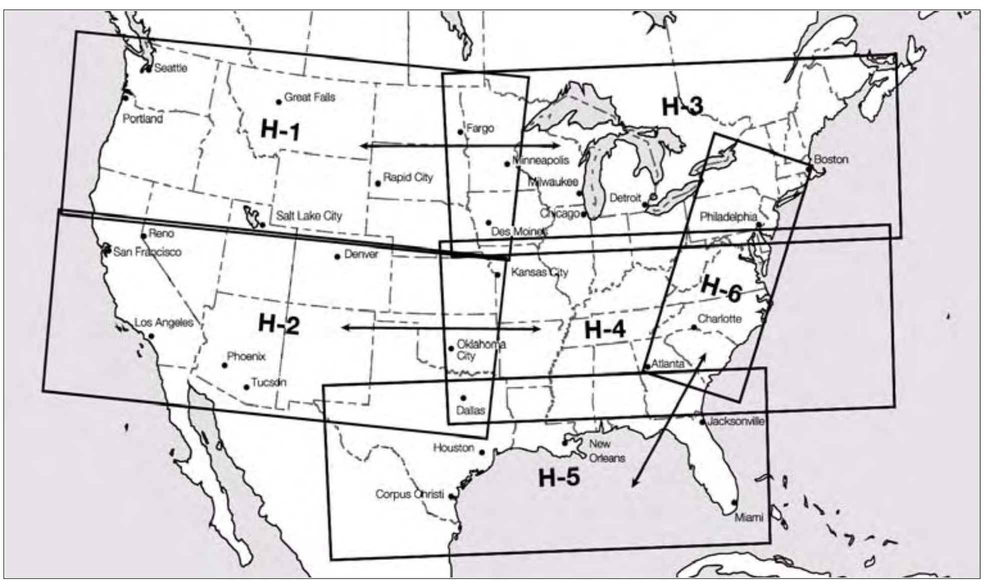


FIG GEN 3.2−3

En Route High Altitude Charts for the Conterminous U.S.



4.2.2 IFR En Route High Altitude Charts (Conterminous U.S. and Alaska). En route high altitude charts are designed for navigation at or above 18,000 feet MSL. This four−color chart series includes the jet route structure; VHF NAVAIDs with frequency, identification, channel, geographic coordinates; selected airports; reporting points. Scales vary from 1 inch = 45nm to 1 inch = 18nm. 55 x 20 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. Revised every 56 days. (See FIG GEN 3.2−3 and FIG GEN 3.2−5.)

FIG GEN 3.2−4

Alaska En Route Low Altitude Chart

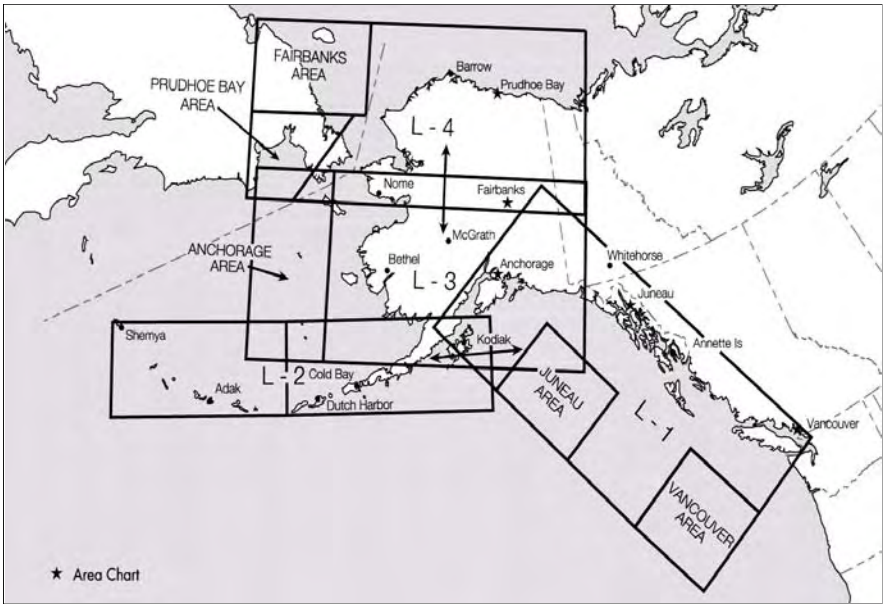
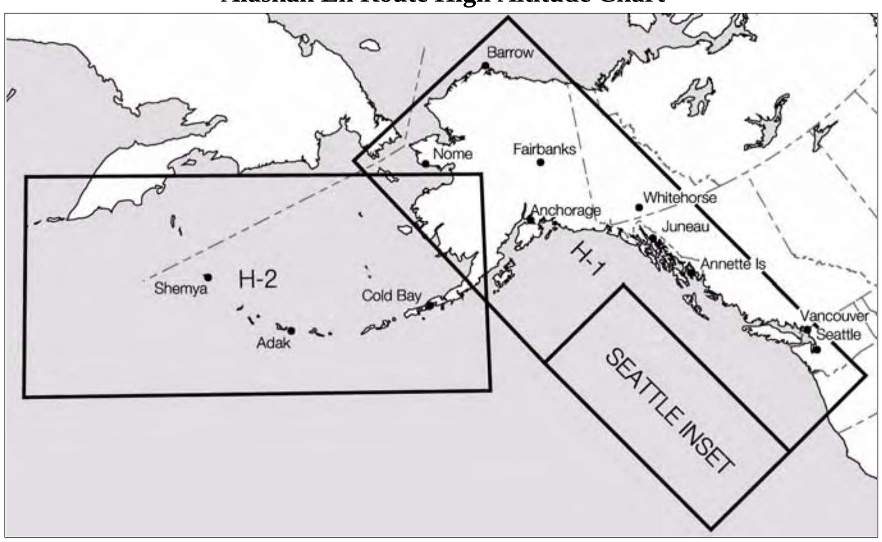


FIG GEN 3.2−5

Alaskan En Route High Altitude Chart



4.2.3 U.S. Terminal Procedures Publication (TPP). TPPs are published in 24 loose−leaf or perfect bound volumes covering the conterminous U.S., Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands. A Change Notice is published at the midpoint between revisions in bound volume format and is available on the internet for free download at the NACO web site. (See FIG GEN 3.2−10.) The TPPs include:

4.2.3.1 Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) Charts. IAP charts portray the aeronautical data that is required to execute instrument approaches to airports. Each chart depicts the IAP, all related navigation data, communications information, and an airport sketch. Each procedure is designated for use with a specific electronic navigational aid, such as ILS, VOR, NDB, RNAV, etc.

4.2.3.2 Instrument Departure Procedure (DP) Charts. DP charts are designed to expedite clearance delivery and to facilitate transition between takeoff and en route operations. They furnish pilots' departure routing clearance information in graphic and textual form.

4.2.3.3 Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) Charts. STAR charts are designed to expedite ATC arrival procedures and to facilitate transition between en route and instrument approach operations. They depict preplanned IFR ATC arrival procedures in graphic and textual form. Each STAR procedure is presented as a separate chart and may serve either a single airport or more than one airport in a given geographic area.

4.2.3.4 Airport Diagrams. Full page airport diagrams are designed to assist in the movement of ground traffic at locations with complex runway/taxiway configurations and provide information for updating geodetic position navigational systems aboard aircraft. Airport diagrams are available for free download at the NACO website.

4.2.4 Alaska Terminal Procedures Publication. This publication contains all terminal flight procedures for civil and military aviation in Alaska. Included are IAP charts, DP charts, STAR charts, airport diagrams, radar minimums, and supplementary support data such as IFR alternate minimums, take−off minimums, rate of descent tables, rate of climb tables and inoperative components tables. Volume is 5−3/8 x 8−1/4 inch top bound. Publication revised every 56 days with provisions for a Terminal Change Notice, as required.

4.3 Planning Charts

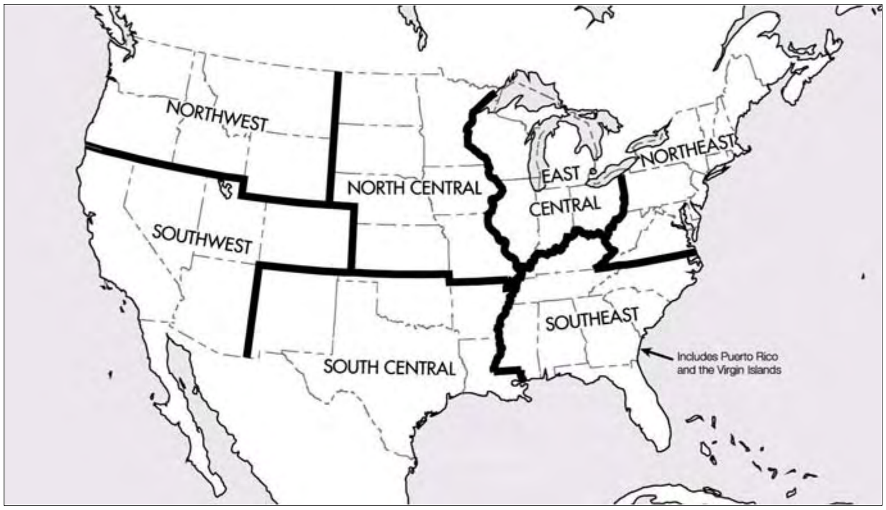
4.3.1 U.S. IFR/VFR Low Altitude Planning Chart. This chart is designed for prefight and en route flight planning for IFR/VFR flights. Depiction includes low altitude airways and mileage, NAVAIDs, airports, special use airspace, cities, times zones, major drainage, a directory of airports with their airspace classification, and a mileage table showing great circle distances between major airports. Scale 1 inch = 47nm/ 1:3,400,000. Chart revised annually, and is available either folded or unfolded for wall mounting. (See FIG GEN 3.2−6.)

FIG GEN 3.2−6
Planning Charts

4.3.2 Gulf of Mexico and Caribbean Planning Chart. This is a VFR planning chart on the reverse side of the *Puerto Rico − Virgin Islands VFR Terminal Area Chart.* Information shown includes mileage between airports of entry, a selection of special use airspace and a directory of airports with their available services. Scale 1 inch = 85nm/1:6,192,178. 60 x 20 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. The chart is revised annually. (See FIG GEN 3.2−6.)

FIG GEN 3.2−7

Airport/Facility Directory Geographic Areas



4.3.3 Charted VFR Flyway Planning Charts. This chart is printed on the reverse side of selected TAC charts. The coverage is the same as the associated TAC. Flyway planning charts depict flight paths and altitudes recommended for use to bypass high traffic areas. Ground references are provided as a guide for visual orientation. Flyway planning charts are designed for use in conjunction with TACs and sectional charts and are not to be used for navigation. Chart scale 1 inch = 3.43nm/1:250,000.

4.4 Supplementary Charts and Publications

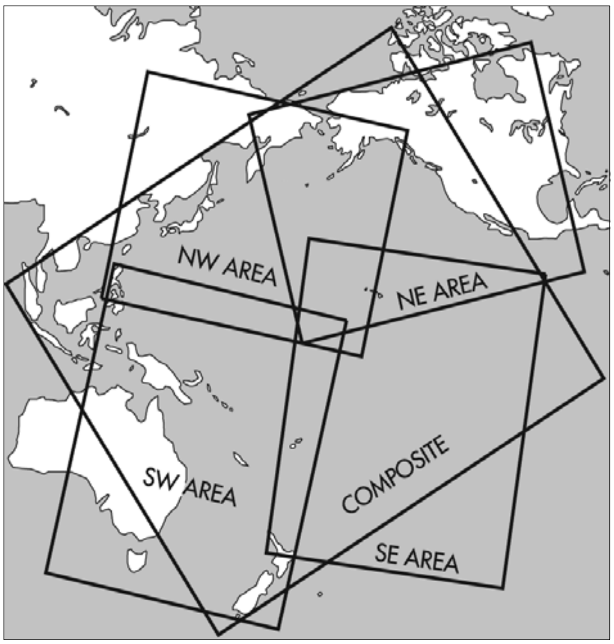
4.4.1 Airport/Facility Directory (AFD). This 7−volume booklet series contains data on airports, seaplane bases, heliports, NAVAIDs, communications data, weather data sources, airspace, special notices, and operational procedures. Coverage includes the conterminous U.S., Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands. The AFD shows data that cannot be readily depicted in graphic form; e.g. airport hours of operations, types of fuel available, runway widths, lighting codes, etc. The chart bulletin section of the AFD also provides a means for pilots to update visual charts between edition dates. (AFD is published every 56 days while sectional and Terminal Area Charts are generally revised every six months). Volumes are side−bound 5−3/8 x 8−1/4 inches. (See FIG GEN 3.2−7.)

4.4.2 Supplement Alaska. This is a civil/military flight information publication issued by FAA every 56 days. It is a single volume booklet designed for use with appropriate IFR or VFR charts. The Supplement Alaska contains an airport/facility directory, airport sketches, communications data, weather data sources, airspace, listing of navigational facilities, and special notices and procedures. Volume is side−bound 5−3/8 x 8−1/4 inches.

4.4.3 Chart Supplement Pacific. This supplement is designed for use with appropriate VFR or IFR en route charts. Included in this one−volume booklet are the airport/facility directory, communications data, weather data sources, airspace, navigational facilities, special notices, and Pacific area procedures. IAP charts, DP charts, STAR charts, airport diagrams, radar minimums, and supporting data for the Hawaiian and Pacific Islands are included. The manual is published every 56 days. Volume is side−bound 5−3/8 x 8−1/4 inches.

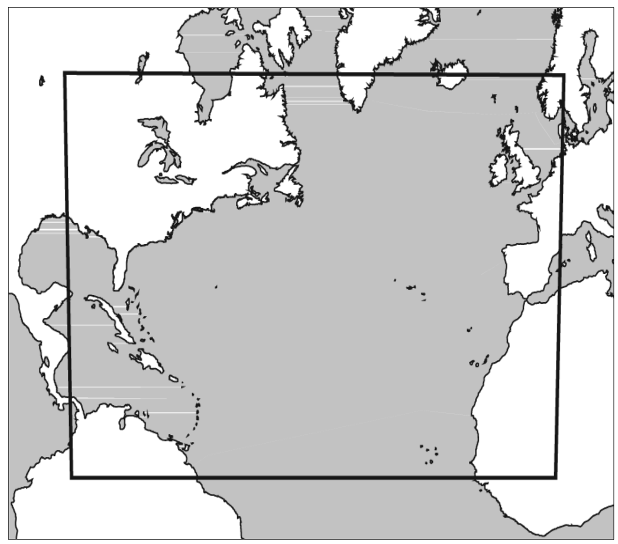
4.4.4 North Pacific Route Charts. These charts are designed for FAA controllers to monitor transoceanic flights. They show established intercontinental air routes, including reporting points with geographic positions. Composite Chart: scale 1 inch = 164NM/1:12,000,000. 48 x 41−1/2 inches. Area Charts: scale 1 inch = 95.9nm/1:7,000,000. 52 x 40−1/2 inches. All charts are shipped unfolded. Charts are revised every 56 days. (See FIG GEN 3.2−8.)

FIG GEN 3.2−8
North Pacific Oceanic Route Charts



4.4.5 North Atlantic Route Chart. Designed for FAA controllers to monitor transatlantic flights, this 5−color chart shows oceanic control areas, coastal navigation aids, oceanic reporting points, and NAVAID geographic coordinates. Full Size Chart: scale 1 inch = 113.1nm/1:8,250,000. Chart is shipped flat only. Half Size Chart: scale 1 inch = 150.8nm/1:11,000,000. Chart is 29−3/4 x 20−1/2 inches, shipped folded to 5 x 10 inches only. Chart are revised every 56 days. (See FIG GEN 3.2−9.)

FIG GEN 3.2−9
North Atlantic Route Chart



4.4.6 Airport Obstruction Charts (OC). The OC is a 1:12,000 scale graphic depicting 14 CFR Part 77, *Objects Affecting Navigable Airspace* surfaces, a representation of objects that penetrate these surfaces, aircraft movement and apron areas, navigational aids, prominent airport buildings, and a selection of roads and other planimetric detail in the airport vicinity. Also included are tabulations of runway and other operational data.

4.4.7 FAA Aeronautical Chart User's Guide. A booklet designed to be used as a teaching aid and reference document. It describes the substantial amount of information provided on FAA's aeronautical charts and publications. It includes explanations and illustrations of chart terms and symbols organized by chart type. The users guide is available for free download at the NACO web site.

4.5 Digital Products

4.5.1 The Digital Aeronautical Information CD (DAICD). The DAICD is a combination of the NAVAID Digital Data File, the Digital Chart Supplement, and the Digital Obstacle File on one Compact Disk. These three digital products are no longer sold separately. The files are updated every 56 days and are available by subscription only.

4.5.1.1 The NAVAID Digital Data File. This file contains a current listing of NAVAIDs that are compatible with the National Airspace System. This file contains all NAVAIDs including ILS and its components, in the U.S., Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands plus bordering facilities in Canada, Mexico, and the Atlantic and Pacific areas.

4.5.1.2 The Digital Obstacle File. This file describes all obstacles of interest to aviation users in the U.S., with limited coverage of the Pacific, Caribbean, Canada, and Mexico. The obstacles are assigned unique numerical identifiers, accuracy codes, and listed in order of ascending latitude within each state or area.

4.5.1.3 The Digital Aeronautical Chart Supplement (DACS). The DACS is specifically designed to provide digital airspace data not otherwise readily available. The supplement includes a *Change Notice* for IAPFIX.dat at the mid−point between revisions. The *Change Notice* is available only by free download from the NACO website.

The DACS individual data files are:

ENHIGH.DAT: High altitude airways (conterminous U.S.)
ENLOW.DAT: Low altitude airways (conterminous U.S.)
IAPFIX.DAT: Selected instrument approach procedure NAVAID and fix data.
MTRFIX.DAT: Military training routes data.
ALHIGH.DAT: Alaska high altitude airways data.
ALLOW.DAT: Alaska low altitude airways data.
PR.DAT: Puerto Rico airways data.
HAWAII.DAT: Hawaii airways data.
BAHAMA.DAT: Bahamas routes data.
OCEANIC.DAT: Oceanic routes data.
STARS.DAT: Standard terminal arrivals data.
DP.DAT: Instrument departure procedures data.
LOPREF.DAT: Preferred low altitude IFR routes data.
HIPREF.DAT: Preferred high altitude IFR routes data.
ARF.DAT: Air route radar facilities data.
ASR.DAT: Airport surveillance radar facilities data.

4.5.2 The National Flight Database (NFD) (ARINC 424 [Ver 13 & 15]). The NFD is a basic digital dataset, modeled to an international standard, which can be used as a basis to support GPS navigation. Initial data elements included are: Airport and Helicopter Records, VHF and NDB Navigation aids, en route waypoints and airways. Additional data elements will be added in subsequent releases to include: departure procedures, standard terminal arrivals, and GPS/RNAV instrument approach procedures. The database is updated every 28 days. The data is available by subscription only and is distributed on CD−ROM or by ftp download.

4.5.3 Sectional Raster Aeronautical Charts (SRAC). These digital VFR charts are geo−referenced scanned images of FAA sectional charts. Additional digital data may easily be overlaid on the raster image using commonly available Geographic Information System software. Data such as weather, temporary flight restrictions, obstacles, or other geospatial data can be combined with SRAC data to support a variety of needs. Most SRACs are provided in two halves, a north side and a south side. The file resolution is 200 dots per inch and the data is 8−bit color. The data is provided as a GeoTIFF and distributed on DVD−R media. The root mean square error of the transformation will not exceed two pixels. SRACs DVDs are updated every 28 days and are available by subscription only.

FIG GEN 3.2−10

U.S. Terminal Publication Volumes

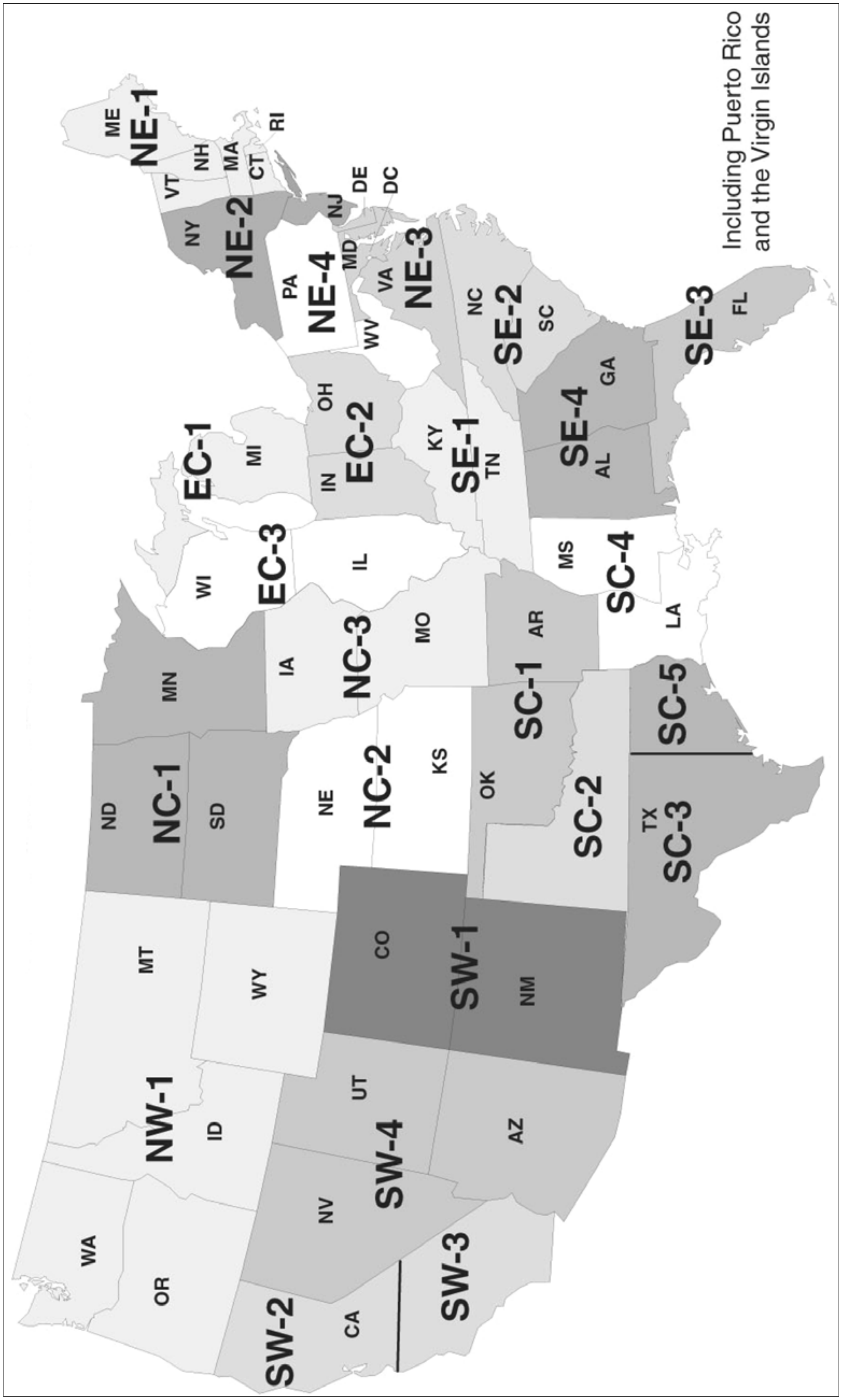


FIG GEN 3.2−11

Sectional and VFR Terminal Area Charts for Alaska

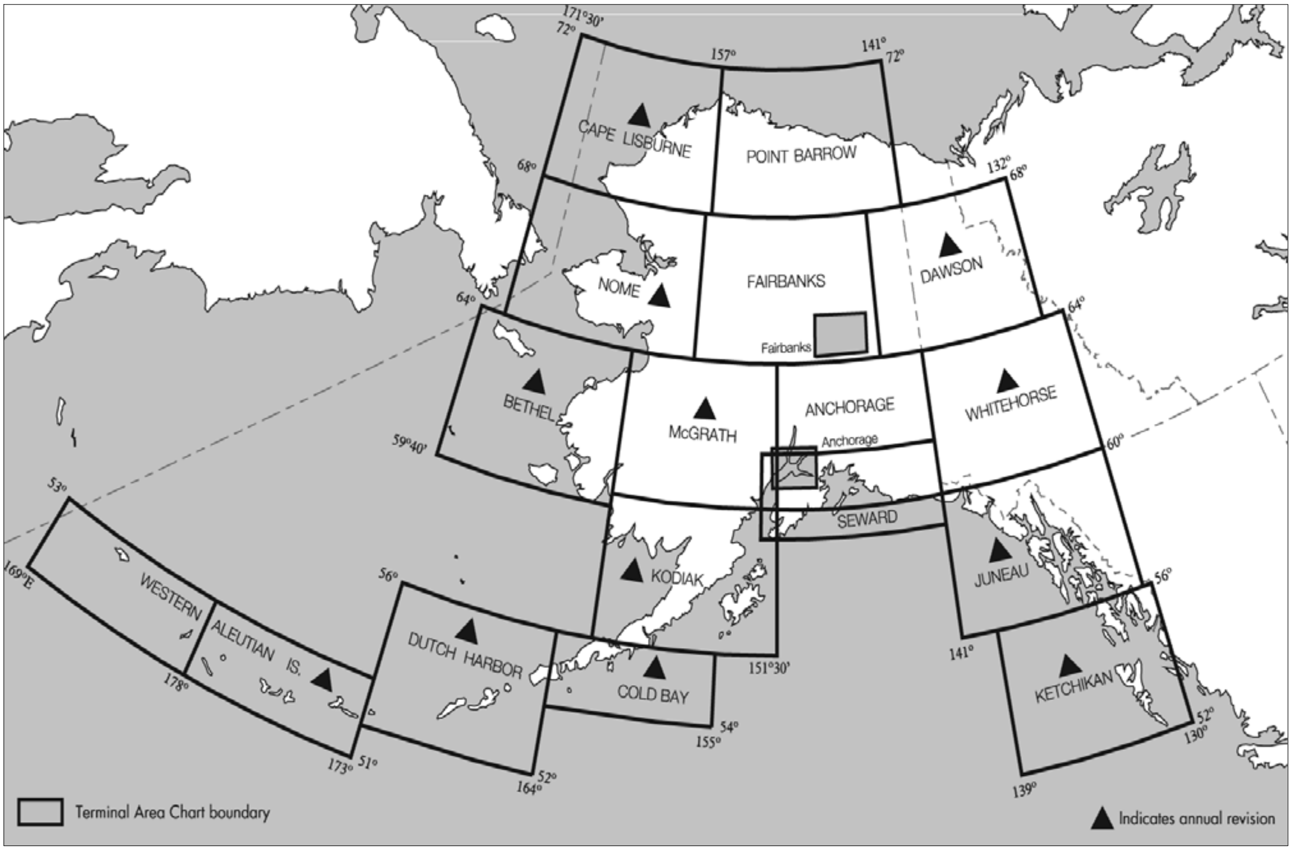


FIG GEN 3.2−12

World Aeronautical Charts for Alaska

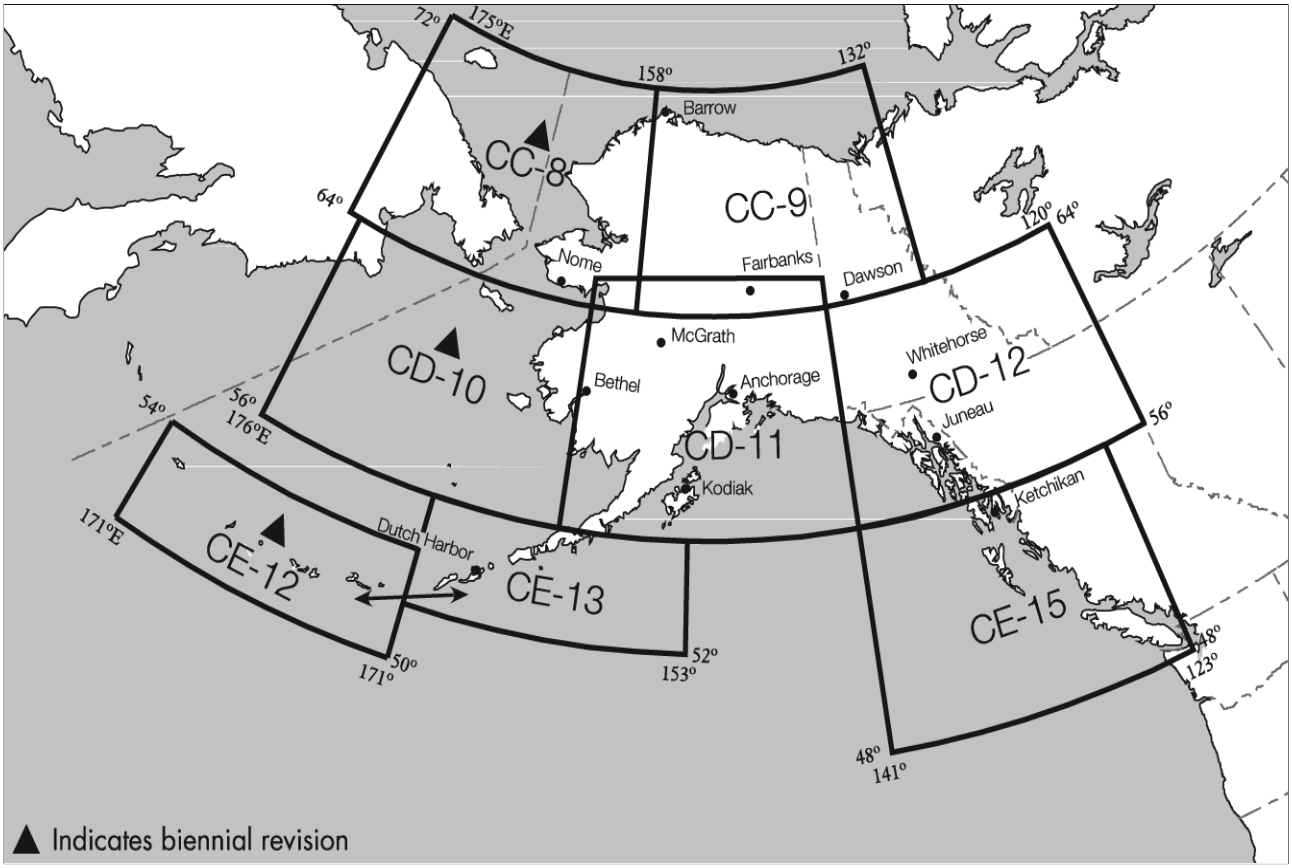
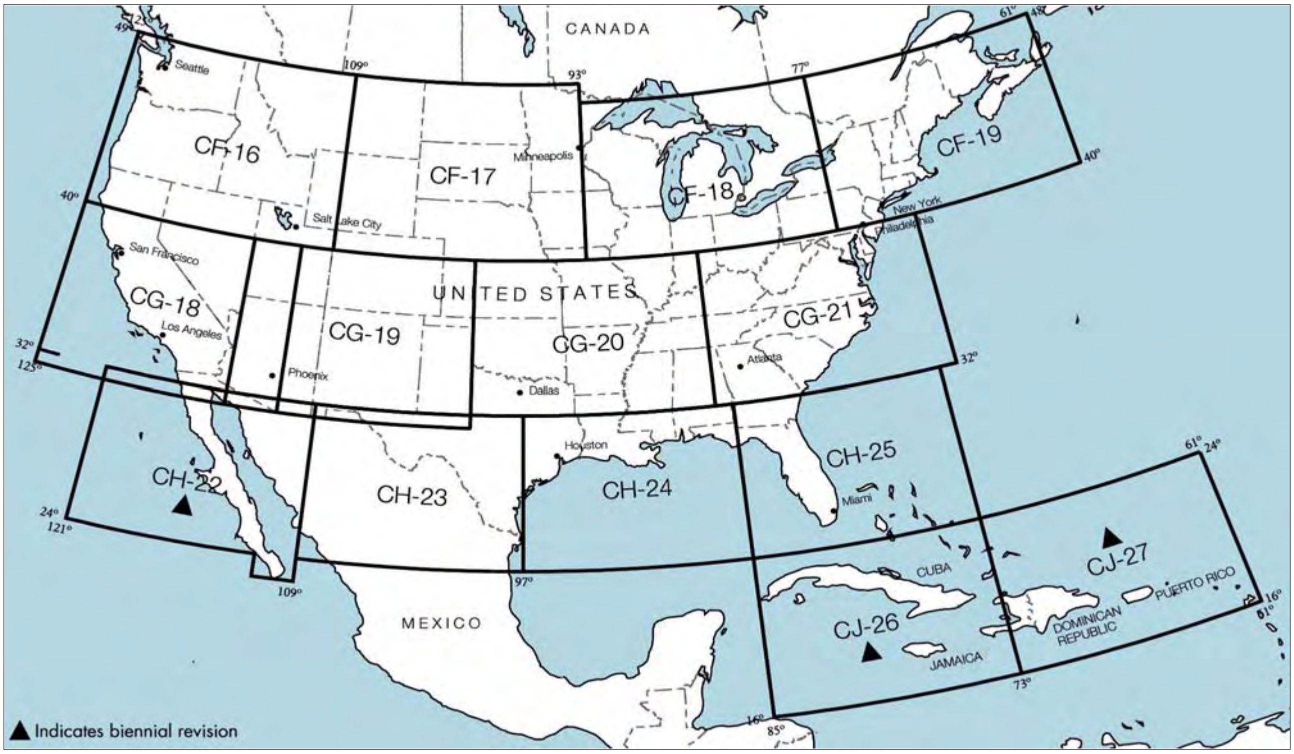


FIG GEN 3.2−13

World Aeronautical Charts for the Conterminous U.S. Mexico, and the Caribbean Areas



5. National Imagery and Mapping Agency (NIMA) Products

5.1 How to Order NIMA Products. FAA catalog of *NIMA Public Sale Aeronautical Charts and Publications* (FAA Stock No. DMAACATSET), is available from the FAA NACO Distribution Division. The catalog describes available charts and publications primarily covering areas outside the U.S. A free quarterly bulletin, *Dates of Latest Editions − NIMA Aeronautical Charts and Publications* (FAA Stock No. DADOLE), is also available from FAA.

5.1.1 Flight Information Publication (FLIP) Planning Documents

General Planning (GP)
Area Planning
Area Planning − Special Use Airspace − Planning Charts

5.1.2 FLIP En Route Charts and Chart Supplements

Pacific, Australasia, and Antarctica
United States − IFR and VFR Supplements
Flight Information Handbook
Caribbean and South America − Low Altitude
Caribbean and South America − High Altitude
Europe, North Africa, and Middle East − Low Altitude
Europe, North Africa, and Middle East − High Altitude
Africa
Eastern Europe and Asia
Area Arrival Charts

5.1.3 FLIP Instrument Approach Procedures (IAPs)

Africa
Canada and North Atlantic
Caribbean and South America
Eastern Europe and Asia
Europe, North Africa, and Middle East
Pacific, Australasia, and Antarctica
VFR Arrival/Departure Routes − Europe and Korea
United States

5.1.4 Miscellaneous DOD Charts and Products

Aeronautical Chart Updating Manual (CHUM)
DOD Weather Plotting Charts (WPC)
Tactical Pilotage Charts (TPC)
Operational Navigation Charts (ONC)
Global Navigation and Planning Charts (GNC)
Global LORAN−C Navigation Charts (GLCC)
LORAN−C Coastal Navigation Charts (LCNC)
Jet Navigation Charts (JNC) and Universal Jet Navigation Charts (JNU)
Jet Navigation Charts (JNCA)
Aerospace Planning Charts (ASC)
Oceanic Planning Charts (OPC)
Joint Operations Graphics − Air (JOG−A)
Standard Index Charts (SIC)
Universal Plotting Sheet (VP−OS)
Sight Reduction Tables for Air Navigation (PUB249)
Plotting Sheets (VP−30)
Dial−Up Electronic CHUM

GEN 3.3 Air Traffic Services

1. Responsible Authority

1.1 The authority responsible for the overall administration of air traffic services provided for civil aviation in the U.S. and its territories, possessions and international airspace under its jurisdiction is the Associate Administrator for Air Traffic Services, acting under the authority of the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA).

Postal Address:
Director
Air Traffic Operations Program (ATP−1)
Federal Aviation Administration
800 Independence Ave., SW
Washington, D.C. 20591
U.S.A.
Telephone: 202−267−9155
Telex: 892−562
Commercial Telegraphic Address: FAA WSH
AFTN Address: KDCAYAYX

2. Area of Responsibility

2.1 Air traffic services as indicated in the following paragraphs are provided for the entire territory of the conterminous U.S., Alaska, Hawaii, Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands, and the Panama Canal Zone, as well as the international airspace in oceanic areas under the jurisdiction of the U.S. which lies within the ICAO Caribbean (CAR), North Atlantic (NAT), North American (NAM) and Pacific (PAC) regions.

3. Air Traffic Services

3.1 With the exception of terminal control services at certain civil aerodromes and military aerodromes, air traffic service in the U.S. is provided by the Air Traffic Operations Program, FAA, Department of Transportation (DOT), U.S. Government.

3.2 Air Traffic control is exercised within the area of responsibility of the U.S.:

3.2.1 On all airways.

3.2.2 In Class B, C, D, and E Airspace; and

3.2.3 Within the Class A airspace whose vertical extent is from 18,000 feet to and including FL 600 throughout most of the conterminous U.S. and, in Alaska, from 18,000 feet to and including FL 600 but not including the airspace less than 1,500 feet above the surface of the earth and the Alaskan Peninsula west of longitude 160°00″ West. (A complete description of Class A airspace is contained in the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 14, Part 71.)

3.3 Air traffic control and alerting services are provided by various air traffic control (ATC) units and are described in ENR 1.1.

3.4 Radar service is an integral part of the air traffic system. A description of radar services and procedures is provided in ENR 1.6.

3.5 The description of airspace designated for air traffic services is found in ENR 1.4.

3.6 Procedural data and descriptions are found in ENR 1.5.

3.7 Numerous restricted and prohibited areas are established within U.S. territory. These areas, none of which interfere with normal air traffic, are explained in ENR 1.5. Activation of areas subject to intermittent activity is notified in advance by a Notice to Airmen (NOTAM), giving reference to the area by its identification.

3.8 In general, the air traffic rules and procedures in force and the organization of the air traffic services are in conformity with ICAO Standards, Recommended Practices and Procedures. Differences between the national and international rules and procedures are given in GEN 1.7. The regional supplementary procedures and altimeter setting procedures are reproduced in full with an indication wherein there is a difference.

3.9 Coordination between the operator and air traffic services is effected in accordance with 2.11 of Annex II, and 2.1.1.4 and 2.1.2.5 of Part VIII of the PANS−RAC (DOC 4444−RAC/501).

3.10 Minimum flight altitudes on the ATS routes as listed in ENR 1.4 have been determined so as to ensure at least 1,000 feet vertical clearance above the highest obstacle within 4 nautical miles (NM) on each side of the centerline of the route. However, where the regular divergence (4.5 degrees) of the navigational aid signal in combination with the distance between the navigational aids could result in the aircraft being more than 4 NM on either side of the centerline, the

4 NM protection limit is increased by the extent to which the divergence is more than 4 NM from the centerline.

3.11 Pilot Visits to Air Traffic Facilities. Pilots are encouraged to visit air traffic facilities (Airport Traffic Control Towers (ATCTs), Air Route Traffic Control Centers (ARTCCs), and Flight Service Stations (FSSs)) and familiarize themselves with the ATC system. On rare occasions, facilities may not be able to approve a visit because of workload or other reasons. Pilots should contact the facility prior to the visit and advise of the number of persons in the group, the time and date of the proposed visit, and the primary interest of the group. With this information available, the facility can prepare an itinerary and have someone available to guide the group through the facility.

3.12 Operation Take−off and Operation Raincheck. Operation Take−off is a program that educates pilots in how best to utilize the FSS modernization efforts and services available in Automated Flight Service Stations (AFSS), as stated in FAA Order 7230.17, Pilot Education Program − Operation Takeoff. Operation Raincheck is a program designed to familiarize pilots with the ATC system, its functions, responsibilities, and benefits.

4. En Route Procedures

4.1 Air Route Traffic Control Center (ARTCC)

An ARTCC is a facility established to provide air traffic control service to aircraft operating on instrument flight rule (IFR) flight plans within CONTROLLED AIRSPACE and principally during the en route phase of flight. When equipment capabilities and controller workload permit, certain advisory/assistance services may be provided to visual flight rule (VFR) aircraft.

4.2 ARTCC Communications

4.2.1 Direct Communications, Controllers and Pilots

4.2.1.1 ARTCCs are capable of direct communications with IFR air traffic on certain frequencies. Maximum communications coverage is possible through the use of Remote Center Air/Ground (RCAG) sites comprised of very high frequency (VHF) and ultra high frequency (UHF) transmitters and receivers. These sites are located throughout the U.S. Although they may be several hundred miles away from the ARTCC, they are remoted to the various centers by land lines or microwave links. As IFR operations are expedited through the use of direct communications, pilots are requested to use these frequencies strictly for communications pertinent to the control of IFR aircraft. Flight plan filing, en route weather, weather forecasts, and similar data should be requested through Flight Service Stations, company radio, or appropriate military facilities capable of performing these services.

4.2.1.2 An ARTCC is divided into sectors. Each sector is handled by one or a team of controllers and has its own sector discrete frequency. As a flight progresses from one sector to another, the pilot is requested to change to the appropriate sector discrete frequency.

4.2.1.3 Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC) is a system that supplements air/ground voice communications. As a result, it expands two−way air traffic control air/ground communications capabilities. Consequently, the air traffic system's operational capacity is increased and any associated air traffic delays become minimized. A related safety benefit is that pilot/controller read−back and hear−back errors will be significantly reduced. The CPDLC's principal operating criteria are:

a) Voice remains the primary and controlling air/ground communications means.

b) Participating aircraft will need to have the appropriate CPDLC avionics equipment in order to receive uplink or transmit downlink messages.

c) CPDLC Build 1 offers four ATC data link services. These are altimeter setting (AS), transfer of communications (TC), initial contact (IC), and menu text messages (MT).

1) Altimeter settings are usually transmitted automatically when a CPDLC session and eligibility has been established with an aircraft. A controller may also manually send an altimeter setting message.

NOTE−
When conducting instrument approach procedures, pilots are responsible to obtain and use the appropriate altimeter setting in accordance with 14 CFR Section 97.20. CPDLC issued altimeter settings are excluded for this purpose.

2) Initial contact is a safety validation transaction that compares a pilot's initiated altitude downlink message with an aircraft's ATC host computer stored altitude. If an altitude mismatch is detected, the controller will verbally provide corrective action.

3) Transfer of communications automatically establishes data link contact with a succeeding sector.

4) Menu text transmissions are scripted nontrajectory altering uplink messages.

NOTE−
Initial use of CPDLC will be at the Miami Air Route Traffic Control Center (ARTCC). Air carriers will be the first users. Subsequently, CPDLC will be made available to all NAS users. Later versions will include trajectory altering services and expanded clearance and advisory message capabilities.

4.2.2 ATC Frequency Change Procedures

4.2.2.1 The following phraseology will be used by controllers to effect a frequency change:

EXAMPLE−
(Aircraft identification) CONTACT (facility name or location name and terminal function) (frequency) AT (time, fix, or altitude).

NOTE−
Pilots are expected to maintain a listening watch on the transferring controller's frequency until the time, fix, or altitude specified. ATC will omit frequency change restrictions whenever pilot compliance is expected upon receipt.

4.2.2.2 The following phraseology should be utilized by pilots for establishing contact with the designated facility:

a) When operating in a radar environment:

1) On initial contact, the pilot should inform the controller of the aircraft's assigned altitude preceded by the words "level," or "climbing to," or "descending to," as appropriate; and the aircraft's present vacating altitude, if applicable.

EXAMPLE−
1. *(Name) CENTER, (aircraft identification), LEVEL (altitude or flight level).*

2. *(Name) CENTER, (aircraft identification), LEAVING (exact altitude or flight level), CLIMBING TO OR DESCENDING TO (altitude or flight level).*

NOTE−
Exact altitude or flight level means to the nearest 100 foot increment. exact altitude or flight level reports on initial contact provide ATC with information required prior to using Mode C altitude information for separation purposes.

b) When operating in a nonradar environment:

1) On initial contact, the pilot should inform the controller of the aircraft's present position, altitude and time estimate for the next reporting point.

EXAMPLE−
(Name) CENTER, (aircraft identification), (POSITION), (altitude), ESTIMATING (reporting point) at (time).

2) After initial contact, when a position report will be made, the pilot should give the controller a complete position report.

EXAMPLE−
(Name) CENTER, (aircraft identification), (position), (time), (altitude), (type of flight plan), (ETA and name of next reporting point), (the name of the next succeeding reporting point), AND (remarks).

REFERENCE−
AIP, Position Reporting, Paragraph 6.

4.2.2.3 At times controllers will ask pilots to verify the fact that they are at a particular altitude. The phraseology used will be: "VERIFY AT (altitude)." In climbing/descending situations, controllers may ask pilots to "VERIFY ASSIGNED ALTITUDE AS (altitude)." Pilots should confirm that they are at the altitude stated by the controller or that the assigned altitude is correct as stated. If this is not the case, they should inform the controller of the actual altitude being maintained or the different assigned altitude.

CAUTION−
Pilots should not take action to change their actual altitude or different assigned altitude to that stated in the controller's verification request unless the controller specifically authorizes a change.

4.2.3 ARTCC Radio Frequency Outage. ARTCC's normally have at least one back−up radio receiver and transmitter system for each frequency which can usually be pressed into service quickly with little or no disruption of ATC service. Occasionally, technical problems may cause a delay but switchover seldom takes more than 60 seconds. When it appears that the outage will not be quickly remedied, the ARTCC will usually request a nearby aircraft, if there is one, to switch to the affected frequency to broadcast communications instructions. It is important, therefore, that the pilot wait at least one minute before deciding that the ARTCC has actually experienced a radio frequency failure. When such an outage does occur, the pilot should, if workload and equipment capability permit, maintain a listening watch on the affected frequency while attempting to comply with the recommended communications procedures which follow.

4.2.3.1 If two−way communications cannot be established with the ARTCC after changing frequencies, a pilot should attempt to recontact the transferring controller for the assignment of an alternative frequency or other instructions.

4.2.3.2 When an ARTCC radio frequency failure occurs after two−way communications have been established, the pilot should attempt to reestablish contact with the center on any other known ARTCC frequency, preferably that of the next responsible sector when practicable, and ask for instructions. However, when the next normal frequency change along the route is known to involve another ATC facility, the pilot should contact that facility, if feasible, for instructions. If communications cannot be reestablished by either method, the pilot is expected to request communications instructions from the FSS appropriate to the route of flight.

NOTE−
The exchange of information between an aircraft and an ARTCC through an FSS is quicker than relay via company radio because the FSS has direct interphone lines to the responsible ARTCC sector. Accordingly, when circumstances dictate a choice between the two, during an ARTCC frequency outage, relay via FSS radio is recommended.

5. Radio Communications Failure

5.1 Pilots of IFR flights experiencing two−way radio failure are expected to adhere to the procedures prescribed in GEN 3.4, paragraph 12.

REFERENCE−
14 CFR Section 91.185

6. Position Reporting

6.1 The safety and effectiveness of traffic control depends to a large extent on accurate position reporting. In order to provide the proper separation and expedite aircraft movements, ATC must be able to make accurate estimates of the progress of every aircraft operating on an IFR flight plan.

6.2 Position Identification

6.2.1 When a position report is to be made passing a VOR radio facility, the time reported should be the time at which the first complete reversal of the "to/from" indicator is accomplished.

6.2.2 When a position report is made passing a facility by means of an airborne automatic direction finder (ADF), the time reported should be the time at which the indicator makes a complete reversal.

6.2.3 When an aural or light−panel indication is used to determine the time passing a reporting point, such as a fan marker, Z marker, cone of silence or intersection of range courses, the time should be noted when the signal is first received and again when it ceases. The mean of these two times should then be taken as the actual time over the fix.

6.2.4 If a position is given with respect to distance and direction from a reporting point, the distance and direction should be computed as accurately as possible.

6.2.5 Except for terminal transition purposes, position reports or navigation with reference to aids not established for use in the structure in which flight is being conducted will not normally be required by ATC.

6.3 Position Reporting Points

6.3.1 Federal Aviation Regulations require pilots to maintain a listening watch on the appropriate frequency and, unless operating under the provisions of subparagraph 6.4, to furnish position reports passing certain reporting points. Reporting points are indicated by symbols on en route charts. The designated compulsory reporting point symbol is the solid triangle ▲; the "on request" reporting point symbol is the open triangle △. Reports passing an "on request" reporting point are only necessary when requested by ATC.

6.4 Position Reporting Requirements

6.4.1 Flights Along Airways or Routes. A position report is required by all flights regardless of altitude, including those operating in accordance with an ATC clearance specifying "VFR−on−top," over each designated compulsory reporting point along the route being flown.

6.4.2 Flight Along a Direct Route. Regardless of the altitude or flight level being flown, including flights operating in accordance with an ATC clearance specifying "VFR−on−top," pilots shall report over each reporting point used in the flight plan to define the route of flight.

6.4.3 Flights in a Radar Environment. When informed by ATC that their aircraft are in "RADAR CONTACT," PILOTS SHOULD DISCONTINUE POSITION REPORTS OVER DESIGNATED REPORTING POINTS. They should resume normal position reporting when ATC advises "RADAR CONTACT LOST" or "RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED."

NOTE−
ATC will inform pilots that they are in "radar contact" (a) When their aircraft is initially identified in the ATC system; and (b) When radar identification is reestablished after radar service has been terminated or radar contact has been lost. Subsequent to being advised that the controller has established radar contact, this fact will not be repeated to the pilot when handed off to another controller. At times, the aircraft identity will be confirmed by the receiving controller; however, this should not be construed to mean that radar contact has been lost. The identity of transponder−equipped aircraft will be confirmed by asking the pilot to "ident, squawk standby," or to change codes. Aircraft without transponders will be advised of their position to confirm identity. In this case, the pilot is expected to advise the controller if in disagreement with the position given. If the pilot cannot confirm the accuracy of the position given because of not being tuned to the NAVAID referenced by the controller, the pilot should ask for another radar position relative to the tuned in NAVAID.

6.5 Position Report Items

6.5.1 Position reports should include the following items:

6.5.1.1 Identification.

6.5.1.2 Position.

6.5.1.3 Time.

6.5.1.4 Altitude or flight level (Include actual altitude or flight level when operating on a clearance specifying "VFR−on−top.").

6.5.1.5 Type of flight plan (not required in IFR position reports made directly to ARTCCs or approach control).

6.5.1.6 ETA and name of next reporting point.

6.5.1.7 The name only of the next succeeding reporting point along the route of flight.

6.5.1.8 Pertinent remarks.

7. Additional Reports

7.1 The following reports should be made to ATC or FSS facilities without a specific request:

7.1.1 At all times, report:

7.1.1.1 When vacating any previously assigned altitude/flight level for a newly assigned altitude/flight level.

7.1.1.2 When an altitude change will be made if operating on a clearance specifying "VFR−on−top."

7.1.1.3 When unable to climb/descend at a rate of at least 500 feet per minute.

7.1.1.4 When approach has been missed. (Request clearance for specific action; i.e., to alternative airport, another approach, etc.).

7.1.1.5 Change in the average true airspeed (at cruising altitude) when it varies by 5 percent or 10 knots (whichever is greater) from that filed in the flight plan.

7.1.1.6 The time and altitude/flight level reaching a holding fix or point to which cleared.

7.1.1.7 When leaving any assigned holding fix or point.

NOTE−
The reports in subparagraphs 7.1.1.6 and 7.1.1.7 may be omitted by pilots of aircraft involved in instrument training at military area facilities when radar service is being provided.

7.1.1.8 Any loss, in controlled airspace, of VOR, TACAN, ADF, low frequency navigation receiver capability, GPS anomalies while using installed IFR−certified GPS/GNSS receivers, complete or partial loss of ILS receiver capability or impairment of air/ground communications capability. Reports should include aircraft identification, equipment affected, degree to which the capability to operate under IFR in the ATC system is impaired, and the nature and extent of assistance desired from ATC.

NOTE−
When reporting GPS anomalies, include the location and altitude of the anomaly. Be specific when describing the location and include duration of the anomaly if necessary.

7.1.1.9 Any information relating to the safety of flight.

NOTE−
Other equipment installed in an aircraft may effectively impair safety and/or the ability to operate under IFR. If such equipment; e.g., airborne weather radar, malfunctions and in the pilot's judgment either safety or IFR capabilities are affected, reports should be made as above.

7.2 When not in radar contact, report:

7.2.1 When leaving the final approach fix inbound on final approach (nonprecision approach) or when leaving the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound on final approach (precision approach); or

7.2.2 A corrected estimate at any time it becomes apparent that an estimate as previously submitted is in error in excess of 3 minutes.

7.3 Pilots encountering weather conditions which have not been forecast, or hazardous conditions which have been forecast, are expected to forward a report of such weather to ATC.

8. Quota Flow Control

8.1 Quota Flow Control is designed to balance the ATC system demand with system capacity.

8.2 ARTCCs will hold the optimum number of aircraft that their primary and secondary holding fixes will safely accommodate without imposing undue limitations on the control of other traffic operating within the ARTCC's airspace. This is based on the user's requirement to continue operating to a terminal regardless of the acceptance rate at that terminal. When staffing, equipment, or severe weather will inhibit the number of aircraft the arrival ARTCC may safely hold, a reduction may be necessary.

8.3 When an ARTCC is holding the optimum number of aircraft, the adjacent ARTCCs will be issued quotas concerning aircraft which can be cleared into the impacted ARTCC's airspace. When the adjacent center's demand exceeds the quota, aircraft will be held in the adjacent ARTCC's airspace until they can be permitted to proceed.

8.4 The size of the hourly quota will be based initially on the projected acceptance rate and thereafter on the actual landing and diversion totals. Once quotas have been imposed, departures in the arrival and adjacent ARTCC's area to the affected airport may be assigned ground delay, if necessary, to limit airborne holding to ATC capacity. However, when a forecast of improved acceptance rate appears reliable, in the opinion of the arrival ARTCC, additional above−quota flights may be approved based on the expectation that by the time these additional above−quota flights become an operational factor in the affected area, the system will be able to absorb them without undue difficulty.

8.5 Long distance flights, which originate beyond the adjacent ARTCC area, will normally be permitted to proceed to a point just short of the arrival ARTCC boundary where a delay, at least equal to the delays (ground/airborne) being encountered, will be assigned.

8.6 ARTCCs imposing ground delays make efforts to advise the users when lengthy delays are a prospect to preclude unnecessary boarding and subsequent unloading prior to actual takeoff due to lengthy unanticipated ground delays. Users should advise the ARTCC through FSS or operation offices when there is any significant change in the proposed departure time so as to permit more efficient flow control planning. Airborne aircraft holding in the adjacent ARTCC airspace generally receive more benefit than ground delayed aircraft when increases unexpectedly develop in the quota number because the reaction time is less. For this reason, whenever operationally feasible, adjacent ARTCCs may offer airborne delay within their areas instead of ground delay.

8.7 Flights originating beyond the adjacent ARTCC areas may not have sufficient fuel to absorb the total anticipated delay while airborne. Accordingly, the concerned adjacent ARTCC may permit these flights to land in its area while retaining previously accumulated delay for the purpose of quota priority. When the amount of air traffic backlogging in an adjacent ARTCC area is approaching the saturation point, additional en route traffic will be subject to prior approval.

8.8 Generally, movement of arrival aircraft into the impacted airport terminal area will be made on the basis that those flights with the most accumulated delay, either ground, airborne, or a combination of both, normally receive priority over other traffic. This applies only to delays encountered because of the situation at the airport of intended landing.

8.9 Pilots/operators are advised to check for flow control advisories which are transmitted to FSSs, to selected airline dispatch offices, and to ARTCCs.

9. Advisory and Air Traffic Information Services

9.1 Approach Control Service for VFR Arriving Aircraft

9.1.1 Numerous approach control facilities have established programs for arriving VFR aircraft to contact approach control for landing information. This information includes: wind, runway, and altimeter setting at the airport of intended landing. This information may be omitted if contained in the ATIS broadcast and the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code.

NOTE−
Pilot use of "have numbers" does not indicate receipt of the ATIS broadcast. In addition, the controller will provide traffic advisories on a workload permitting basis.

9.1.2 Such information will be furnished upon initial contact with the concerned approach control facility. The pilot will be requested to change to the tower frequency at a predetermined time or point, to receive further landing information.

9.1.3 Where available, use of this procedure will not hinder the operation of VFR flights by requiring excessive spacing between aircraft or devious routing. Radio contact points will be based on time or distance rather than on landmarks.

9.1.4 Compliance with this procedure is not mandatory, but pilot participation is encouraged. (See ENR 1.6, paragraph 11, Terminal Radar Programs for VFR Aircraft.)

NOTE−
Approach control services for VFR aircraft are normally dependent on air traffic control radar. These services are not available during periods of a radar outage. Approach control services for VFR aircraft are limited when Center Radar ARTS Presentation/ Processing (CENRAP) is in use.

9.2 Traffic Advisory Practices at Airports Without Operating Control Towers

9.2.1 Airport Operations Without an Operating Control Tower

9.2.1.1 There is no substitute for alertness while in the vicinity of an airport. It is essential that pilots be alert and look for other traffic and exchange traffic information when approaching or departing an airport without an operating control tower. This is of particular importance since other aircraft may not have communication capability or, in some cases, pilots may not communicate their presence or intentions when operating into or out of such airports. To achieve the greatest degree of safety, it is essential that all radio−equipped aircraft transmit/receive on a common frequency identified for the purpose of airport advisories.

9.2.1.2 An airport may have a full or part−time tower or FSS located on the airport, a full or part−time UNICOM station or no aeronautical station at all. There are three ways for pilots to communicate their intention and obtain airport/traffic information when operating at an airport that does not have an operating tower: by communicating with an FSS, a UNICOM operator, or by making a self−announce broadcast.

9.2.1.3 Many airports are now providing completely automated weather, radio check capability and airport advisory information on an automated UNICOM system. These systems offer a variety of features, typically selectable by microphone clicks, on the UNICOM frequency. Availability of the automated UNICOM will be published in the Airport/Facility Directory and approach charts.

9.2.2 Communicating on a Common Frequency

9.2.2.1 The key to communicating at an airport without an operating control tower is selection of the correct common frequency. The acronym, CTAF, which stands for common traffic advisory frequency, is synonymous with this program. A CTAF is a frequency designated for the purpose of carrying out airport advisory practices while operating to or from an airport without an operating control tower. The CTAF may be a UNICOM, MULTICOM, FSS, or tower frequency and is identified in appropriate aeronautical publications.

9.2.2.2 The CTAF frequency for a particular airport is contained in the Airport/Facility Directory (A/FD), Alaska Supplement, Alaska Terminal Publication, Instrument Approach Procedure Charts, and Instrument Departure Procedure (DP) charts. Also, the CTAF frequency can be obtained by contacting any FSS. Use of the appropriate CTAF, combined with a visual alertness and application of the following recommended good operating practices, will enhance safety of flight into and out of all uncontrolled airports.

9.2.3 Recommended Traffic Advisory Practices

9.2.3.1 Pilots of inbound aircraft should monitor and communicate on the designated CTAF from 10 miles to landing. Pilots of departing aircraft should monitor/communicate on the appropriate frequency from start−up, during taxi, and until 10 miles from the airport unless the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) or local procedures require otherwise.

9.2.3.2 Pilots of aircraft conducting other than arriving or departing operations at altitudes normally used by arriving and departing aircraft should monitor/communicate on the appropriate frequency while within 10 miles of the airport unless required to do otherwise by the CFR or local procedures. Such operations include parachute jumping/dropping (see ENR 5.1, paragraph 2.3), en route, practicing maneuvers, etc.

9.2.4 Airport Advisory/Information Services Provided by a FSS

9.2.4.1 There are three advisory type services provided at selected airports.

a) Local Airport Advisory (LAA) is provided at airports that have a FSS physically located on the airport, which does not have a control tower or where the tower is operated on a part−time basis. The CTAF for LAA airports is disseminated in the appropriate aeronautical publications.

b) Remote Airport Advisory (RAA) is provided at selected very busy GA airports, which do not have an operating control tower. The CTAF for RAA airports is disseminated in the appropriate aeronautical publications. Hours of operation may be changed by NOTAM D.

c) Remote Airport Information Service (RAIS) is provided in support of special events at nontowered airports by request from the airport authority and shall be published as a NOTAM D.

9.2.4.2 In communicating with a CTAF FSS, check the airport's automated weather and establish two−way communications before transmitting outbound/inbound intentions or information. An inbound aircraft should initiate contact approximately 10 miles from the airport, reporting aircraft identification and type, altitude, location relative to the airport, intentions (landing or over flight), possession of the automated weather, and request airport advisory or airport information service. A departing aircraft should initiate contact before taxiing, reporting aircraft identification and type, VFR or IFR, location on the airport, intentions, direction of take−off, possession of the automated weather, and request airport advisory or information service, as applicable. Also, report intentions before taxiing onto the active runway for departure. If you must change frequencies for other service after initial report to FSS, return to FSS frequency for traffic update.

a) Inbound

EXAMPLE−
Vero Beach radio, Centurion Six Niner Delta Delta is ten miles south, two thousand, landing Vero Beach. I have the automated weather, request airport advisory.

b) Outbound

EXAMPLE−
Vero Beach radio, Centurion Six Niner Delta Delta, ready to taxi to runway 22, VFR, departing to the southwest. I have the automated weather, request airport advisory.

9.2.4.3 Airport advisory service includes wind direction and velocity, favored or designated runway, altimeter setting, known airborne and ground traffic, NOTAMs, airport taxi routes, airport traffic pattern information, and instrument approach procedures. These elements are varied so as to best serve the current traffic situation. Some airport managers have specified that under certain wind or other conditions designated runways be used. Pilots should advise the FSS of the runway they intend to use.

CAUTION−
All aircraft in the vicinity of an airport may not be in communication with the FSS.

9.2.5 Information Provided by Aeronautical Advisory Stations (UNICOM)

9.2.5.1 UNICOM is a nongovernment air/ground radio communication station which may provide airport information at public use airports where there is no tower or FSS.

9.2.5.2 On pilot request, UNICOM stations may provide pilots with weather information, wind direction, the recommended runway, or other necessary information. If the UNICOM frequency is designated as the CTAF, it will be identified in appropriate aeronautical publications.

9.2.5.3 Unavailability of Information from FSS or UNICOM. Should LAA by an FSS or Aeronautical Advisory Station UNICOM be unavailable, wind and weather information may be obtainable from nearby controlled airports via Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS) or Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS) frequency.

9.2.6 Self−Announce Position and/or Intentions

9.2.6.1 "Self−announce" is a procedure whereby pilots broadcast their position or intended flight activity or ground operation on the designated CTAF. This procedure is used primarily at airports which do not have an FSS on the airport. The self−announce procedure should also be used if a pilot is unable to communicate with the FSS on the designated CTAF.

9.2.6.2 If an airport has a tower which is temporarily closed or operated on a part−time basis, and there is no FSS on the airport or the FSS is closed, use the CTAF to self−announce your position or intentions.

9.2.6.3 Where there is no tower, FSS, or UNICOM station on the airport, use MULTICOM frequency 122.9 for self−announce procedures. Such airports will be identified in appropriate aeronautical information publications.

9.2.6.4 Practice Approaches. Pilots conducting practice instrument approaches should be particularly alert for other aircraft that may be departing in the opposite direction. When conducting any practice approach, regardless of its direction relative to other airport operations, pilots should make announcements on the CTAF as follows:

a) Departing the final approach fix, inbound (nonprecision approach) or departing the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker, inbound (precision approach).

b) Established on the final approach segment or immediately upon being released by ATC.

c) Upon completion or termination of the approach; and

d) Upon executing the missed approach procedure.

9.2.6.5 Departing aircraft should always be alert for arrival aircraft coming from the opposite direction.

9.2.6.6 Recommended Self−Announce Phraseologies. It should be noted that aircraft operating to or from another nearby airport may be making self−announce broadcasts on the same UNICOM or MULTICOM frequency. To help identify one airport from another, the airport name should be spoken at the beginning and end of each self−announce transmission.

a) Inbound

EXAMPLE−
Strawn traffic, Apache Two Two Five Zulu, (position), (altitude), (descending) or entering downwind/base/ final (as appropriate) runway one seven full stop/touch−and−go,Strawn.

Strawn traffic Apache Two Two Five Zulu clear of runway one seven Strawn.

b) Outbound

EXAMPLE−
Strawn traffic, Queen Air Seven One Five Five Bravo (location on airport) taxiing to runway two six Strawn.

Strawn traffic, Queen Air Seven One Five Five Bravo departing runway two six. "Departing the pattern to the (direction), climbing to (altitude) Strawn."

c) Practice Instrument Approach

EXAMPLE−
Strawn traffic, Cessna Two One Four Three Quebec (position from airport) inbound descending through (altitude) practice (name of approach) approach runway three five Strawn.

Strawn traffic, Cessna Two One Four Three Quebec practice (type) approach completed or terminated runway three five Strawn.

9.2.7 UNICOM Communication Procedures

9.2.7.1 In communicating with a UNICOM station, the following practices will help reduce frequency congestion, facilitate a better understanding of pilot intentions, help identify the location of aircraft in the traffic pattern, and enhance safety of flight:

a) Select the correct UNICOM frequency.

b) State the identification of the UNICOM station you are calling in each transmission.

c) Speak slowly and distinctly.

d) Report approximately 10 miles from the airport, reporting altitude, and state your aircraft type, aircraft identification, location relative to the airport, state whether landing or overflight, and request wind information and runway in use.

e) Report on downwind, base and final approach.

f) Report leaving the runway.

9.2.7.2 Recommended UNICOM Phraseologies:

a) Inbound.

PHRASEOLOGY−
FREDERICK UNICOM CESSNA EIGHT ZERO ONE TANGO FOXTROT 10 MILES SOUTHEAST DESCENDING THROUGH (altitude) LANDING FREDERICK, REQUEST WIND AND RUNWAY INFORMATION FREDERICK.

FREDERICK TRAFFIC CESSNA EIGHT ZERO ONE TANGO FOXTROT ENTERING DOWNWIND/BASE/FINAL (as appropriate) FOR RUNWAY ONE NINER FULL STOP/TOUCH−AND−GO FREDERICK.

FREDERICK TRAFFIC CESSNA EIGHT ZERO ONE TANGO FOXTROT CLEAR OF RUNWAY ONE NINER FREDERICK.

b) Outbound

PHRASEOLOGY−
FREDERICK UNICOM CESSNA EIGHT ZERO ONE TANGO FOXTROT (location on airport) TAXIING TO RUNWAY ONE NINE, REQUEST WIND AND TRAFFIC INFORMATION FREDERICK.

FREDERICK TRAFFIC CESSNA EIGHT ZERO ONE TANGO FOXTROT DEPARTING RUNWAY ONE NINE. "REMAINING IN THE PATTERN" OR "DEPARTING THE PATTERN TO THE (direction) (as appropriate)" FREDERICK.

9.3 IFR Approaches/Ground Vehicle Operations

9.3.1 IFR Approaches. When operating in accordance with an IFR clearance and ATC approves a change to the advisory frequency, make an expeditious change to the CTAF and employ the recommended traffic advisory procedures.

9.3.2 Ground Vehicle Operation. Airport ground vehicles equipped with radios should monitor the CTAF frequency when operating on the airport movement area and remain clear of runways/taxiways being used by aircraft. Radio transmissions from ground vehicles should be confined to safety−related matters.

9.3.3 Radio Control of Airport Lighting Systems. Whenever possible, the CTAF will be used to control airport lighting systems at airports without operating control towers. This eliminates the need for pilots to change frequencies to turn the lights on and allows a continuous listening watch on a single frequency. The CTAF is published on the instrument approach chart and in other appropriate aeronautical information publications. For further details concerning radio controlled lights, see Advisory Circular 150/5340.27.

TBL GEN 3.3−1

Summary of Recommended Communication Procedures

			COMMUNICATION/BROADCAST PROCEDURES		
	Facility at Airport	**Frequency Use**	**Outbound**	**Inbound**	**Practice Instrument Approach**
1.	UNICOM (No Tower or FSS)	Communicate with UNICOM station on published CTAF frequency (122.7; 122.8; 122.725; 122.975; or 123.0). If unable to contact UNICOM station, use self-announce procedures on CTAF.	Before taxiing and before taxiing onto the runway for departure.	10 miles out; entering downwind, base, and final; leaving the runway.	
2.	No Tower, FSS, or UNICOM	Self-announce on MULTICOM frequency 122.9.	Before taxiing and before taxiing onto the runway for departure.	10 miles out; entering downwind, base, and final; leaving the runway.	Departing final approach fix (name) or on final approach segment inbound.
3.	No Tower in operation, FSS open	Communicate with FSS on CTAF frequency.	Before taxiing and before taxiing onto the runway for departure.	10 miles out; entering downwind, base, and final; leaving the runway.	Approach completed/ terminated.
4.	FSS closed (No Tower)	Self-announce on CTAF.	Before taxiing and before taxiing onto the runway for departure.	10 miles out; entering downwind, base, and final; leaving the runway.	
5.	Tower or FSS not in operation	Self-announce on CTAF.	Before taxiing and before taxiing onto the runway for departure.	10 miles out; entering downwind, base, and final; leaving the runway.	

9.4 Designated UNICOM/MULTICOM Frequencies

9.4.1 Communications Between Aircraft

CAUTION−
The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) may require an aircraft station license for certain types of aircraft transmitters and or certain types of flight operations. Pilots and aircraft owners or aircraft operators must review the current FCC requirements to ensure compliance with applicable FCC and FAA regulations.

9.4.2 Frequency Use

9.4.2.1 TBL GEN 3.3−2 depicts UNICOM and MULTICOM frequency uses as designated by the FCC.

NOTE−
1. *In some areas of the country, frequency interference may be encountered from nearby airports using the same UNICOM frequency. Where there is a problem, UNICOM operators are encouraged to develop a "least interference" frequency assignment plan for airports concerned using the frequencies designated for airports without operating control towers. UNICOM licensees are encouraged to apply for UNICOM 25 KHz spaced channel frequencies. Due to the extremely limited number of frequencies with 50 KHz channel spacing, 25 KHz channel spacing should be implemented. UNICOM licensees may then request FCC to assign frequencies in accordance with the plan, which FCC will review and consider for approval.*
2. *Wind direction and runway information may not be available on UNICOM frequency 122.950.*

TBL GEN 3.3−2
UNICOM/MULTICOM Frequency Usage

Use	Frequency
Airports without an operating control tower.	122.700 122.725 122.800 122.975 123.000 123.050 123.075
(MULTICOM FREQUENCY) Activities of a temporary, seasonal, emergency nature or search and rescue, as well as, airports with no tower, FSS, or UNICOM.	122.900
(MULTICOM FREQUENCY) Forestry management and fire suppression, fish and game management and protection, and environmental monitoring and protection.	122.925
Airports with a control tower or FSS on airport.	122.950

9.4.2.2 TBL GEN 3.3−3 depicts other frequency uses as designated by the FCC.

TBL GEN 3.3−3
Other Frequency Usage Designated by FCC

Use	Frequency
Air-to-air communications & private airports (not open to the public).	122.750 122.850
Air-to-air communications (general aviation helicopters).	123.025
Aviation instruction, Glider, Hot Air Balloon **(not to be used for advisory service)**.	123.300 123.500

9.5 Use of UNICOM for ATC purposes

9.5.1 UNICOM service may be used for air traffic control purposes, only under the following circumstances:

9.5.1.1 Revision to proposed departure time.

9.5.1.2 Takeoff, arrival, or flight plan cancellation time.

9.5.2 ATC clearance, provided arrangements are made between the ATC facility and the UNICOM licensee to handle such messages.

9.6 Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS)

9.6.1 ATIS is the continuous broadcast of recorded noncontrol information in selected high activity terminal areas. Its purpose is to improve controller effectiveness and to relieve frequency congestion by automating the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information. The information is continuously broadcast over a discrete VHF radio frequency or the voice portion of a local NAVAID. ATIS transmissions on a discrete VHF radio frequency are engineered to be receivable to a maximum of 60 NM from the ATIS site and a maximum altitude of 25,000 feet AGL. At most locations, ATIS signals may be received on the surface of the airport, but local conditions may limit the maximum ATIS reception distance and/or altitude. Pilots are urged to cooperate in the ATIS program as it relieves frequency congestion on approach control, ground control, and local control frequencies. The Airport/Facility Directory indicates airports for which ATIS is provided.

9.6.2 ATIS information includes the time of the latest weather sequence, ceiling, visibility, obstructions to visibility, temperature, dew point (if available), wind direction (magnetic), and velocity, altimeter, other pertinent remarks, instrument approach, and runway in use. The ceiling/sky condition, visibility, and obstructions to vision may be omitted from the ATIS broadcast if the ceiling is above 5,000 feet and the visibility is more than 5 miles. The departure runway will only be given if different from the landing runway except at locations having a separate ATIS for departure. The broadcast may include the appropriate frequency and instructions for VFR arrivals to make initial contact with approach control. Pilots of aircraft arriving or departing the terminal area can receive the continuous ATIS broadcast at times when cockpit duties are least pressing and listen to as many repeats as desired. ATIS broadcast shall be updated upon the receipt of any official hourly and special weather. A new recording will also be made when there is a change in other pertinent data such as runway change, instrument approach in use, etc.

SAMPLE BROADCAST−
DULLES INTERNATIONAL INFORMATION SIERRA. 1300ZULU WEATHER. MEASURED CEILING THREE THOUSAND OVERCAST. VISIBILITY THREE, SMOKE. TEMPERATURE SIX EIGHT. WIND THREE FIVE ZERO AT EIGHT. ALTIMETER TWO NINER NINER TWO. ILS RUNWAY ONE RIGHT APPROACH IN USE. LANDING RUNWAY ONE RIGHT AND LEFT. DEPARTURE RUNWAY THREE ZERO. ARMEL VORTAC OUT OF SERVICE. ADVISE YOU HAVE SIERRA.

9.6.3 Pilots should listen to ATIS broadcasts whenever ATIS is in operation.

9.6.4 Pilots should notify controllers on initial contact that they have received the ATIS broadcast by repeating the alphabetical code word appended to the broadcast.

EXAMPLE−
"*Information Sierra received.*"

9.6.5 When the pilot acknowledges receipt of the ATIS broadcast, controllers may omit those items contained on the broadcast if they are current. Rapidly changing conditions will be issued by ATC and the ATIS will contain words as follows:

EXAMPLE−
"*Latest ceiling/visibility/altimeter/wind/(other conditions) will be issued by approach control/tower.*"

NOTE−
The absence of a sky condition/ceiling and/or visibility on ATIS indicates a sky condition/ceiling of 5,000 feet or above and visibility of 5 miles or more. A remark may be made on the broadcast, " the weather is better than 5,000 and 5," or the existing weather may be broadcast.

9.6.6 Controllers will issue pertinent information to pilots who do not acknowledge receipt of a broadcast or who acknowledge receipt of a broadcast which is not current.

9.6.7 To serve frequency−limited aircraft, FSSs are equipped to transmit on the omnirange frequency at most en route VORs used as ATIS voice outlets. Such communication interrupts the ATIS broadcast. Pilots of aircraft equipped to receive on other FSS frequencies are encouraged to do so in order that these override transmissions may be kept to an absolute minimum.

9.6.8 While it is a good operating practice for pilots to make use of the ATIS broadcast where it is available, some pilots use the phrase "Have Numbers" in communications with the control tower. Use of this phrase means that the pilot has received wind, runway and altimeter information ONLY and the tower does not have to repeat this information. It does not indicate receipt of the ATIS broadcast and should never be used for this purpose.

9.7 Airport Reservation Operations and Special Traffic Management Programs

9.7.1 This section describes procedures for obtaining required airport reservations at high density traffic airports and for airports operating under Special Traffic Management Programs.

9.7.2 High Density Traffic Airports (HDTA)

9.7.2.1 The FAA, by 14 CFR Part 93, Subpart K, has designated the John F. Kennedy International (JFK), LaGuardia (LGA), Ronald Reagan Washington National (DCA), and Newark International (EWR) Airports as high density airports and has prescribed air traffic rules and requirements for operating aircraft to and from these airports. (The quota for EWR has been suspended indefinitely.) Reservations for JFK are required between 3:00 p.m. and 7:59 p.m. local time. Reservations for LGA and DCA are required between 6:00 a.m. and 11:59 p.m. local time. Helicopter operations are excluded from the requirement for a reservation.

9.7.2.2 The FAA has established an Airport Reservations Office (ARO) to receive and process all Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) requests for nonscheduled operations at the designated HDTA's. This office monitors operation of the high density rule and allocates reservations on a "first−come−first−served" basis determined by the time the request is received at the reservation office. Standby lists are not maintained. The ARO utilizes the Enhanced Computer Voice Reservation System (e−CVRS) to make all reservations. Users may access the computer system using a touch−tone telephone or via the Internet. Requests for IFR reservations will be accepted starting 72 hours prior to the proposed time of operation at the affected airport.

9.7.2.3 The toll−free telephone number for obtaining IFR reservations through e−CVRS at HDTA's is 1−800−875−9694. This number is valid for calls originating within the United States, Canada, and the Caribbean. The toll number for other areas is (703) 707−0568. The Internet address for the e−CVRS Web interface is: **http://www.fly.faa.gov/ecvrs**.

9.7.2.4 For more detailed information on operations and reservation procedures at an HDTA, please see Advisory Circular 93−1, Reservations for Unscheduled Operations at High Density Traffic Airports. A copy of the Advisory Circular may be obtained via the Internet at: **http://www.faa.gov**.

9.7.3 Special Traffic Management Programs (STMP)

9.7.3.1 Special procedures may be established when a location requires special traffic handling to accommodate above normal traffic demand (e.g., the Indianapolis 500, Super Bowl, etc.) or reduced airport capacity (e.g., airport runway/taxiway closures for airport construction). The special procedures may remain in effect until the problem has been resolved or until local traffic management procedures can handle the situation and a need for special handling no longer exists.

9.7.3.2 There will be two methods available for obtaining slot reservations at the ATCSCC: the web interface and the touch−tone interface. If these methods are used, a NOTAM will be issued relaying the web site address and toll−free telephone number. Be sure to check current NOTAMs to determine: what airports are included in the STMP; the dates and times reservations are required; the time limits for reservation requests; the point of contact for reservations; and any other instructions.

9.7.4 Users may contact the ARO at 703−904−4452 if they have a problem making a reservation or have a question concerning the HDTA/STMP regulations or procedures.

9.7.5 Making Reservations

9.7.5.1 Internet Users. Detailed information and User Instruction Guides for using the Web Interface to the reservation systems are available on the websites for the HDTA (e−CVRS) and STMP's (e−STMP).

9.7.5.2 Telephone users. When using the telephone to make a reservation, you are prompted for input of information about what you wish to do. All input is accomplished using the keypad on the telephone. The only problem with a telephone is that most keys have a letter and number associated with them. When the system asks for a date or time, it is expecting an input of numbers. A problem arises when entering an aircraft call sign or tail number. The system does not detect if you are entering a letter (alpha character) or a number. Therefore, when entering an aircraft call sign or tail number two keys are used to represent each letter or number. When entering a number, precede the number you wish by the number 0 (zero) i.e., 01, 02, 03, 04, ... If you wish to enter a letter, first press the key on which the letter appears and then press 1, 2, or 3, depending upon whether the letter you desire is the first, second, or third letter on that key. For example to enter the letter "N" first press the "6" key because "N" is on that key, then press the "2" key because the letter "N" is the second letter on the "6" key. Since there are no keys for the letters "Q" and "Z" e−CVRS pretends they are on the number "1" key. Therefore, to enter the letter "Q", press 11, and to enter the letter "Z" press 12.

NOTE−
Users are reminded to enter the "N" character with their tail numbers. (See TBL GEN 3.3−4 and TBL GEN 3.3−5 Helpful Key Entries).

TBL GEN 3.3−4

Codes for Call Sign/Tail Number Input Only			
A−21	J−51	S−73	1-01
B−22	K−52	T−81	2−02
C−23	L−53	U−82	3−03
D−31	M−61	V−83	4−04
E−32	N−62	W−91	5−05
F−33	O−63	X−92	6−06
G−11	P−71	Y−93	7−07
H−42	Q−11	Z−12	8−08
I−43	R−72	0−00	9−09

TBL GEN 3.3−5

Helpful Key Entries

◻	After entering a call sign/tail number, depressing the "pound key" (◻) twice will indicate the end of the entry.
*2	Will take the user back to the start of the process.
*3	Will repeat the call sign/tail number used in a previous reservation.
*5	Will repeat the previous question.
*8	Tutorial Mode: In the tutorial mode each prompt for input includes a more detailed description of what is expected as input. *8 is a toggle on/off switch. If you are in tutorial mode and enter *8, you will return to the normal mode.
*0	Expert Mode: In the expert mode, each prompt for input is brief with little or no explanation. Expert mode is also on/off toggle.

9.8 Operations at Uncontrolled Airports with Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS)/Automated Weather Observation System (AWOS)

9.8.1 Many airports throughout the National Airspace System are equipped with either ASOS or AWOS. At most airports with an operating control tower or human observer, the weather will be available to you in a METAR hourly or special observation format on the Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS) or directly transmitted from the controller/observer.

9.8.2 At uncontrolled airports that are equipped with ASOS/AWOS with ground−to−air broadcast capability, the one−minute updated airport weather should be available to you within approximately 25 NM of the airport below 10,000 feet. The frequency for the weather broadcast will be published on sectional charts and in the Airport/Facility Directory. Some part−time towered airports may also broadcast the automated weather on their ATIS frequency during the hours that the tower is closed.

9.8.3 Controllers issue SVFR or IFR clearances based on pilot request, known traffic and reported weather; i.e., METAR/SPECI observations, when they are available. Pilots have access to more current weather at uncontrolled ASOS/AWOS airports than do the controllers who may be located several miles away. Controllers will rely on the pilot to determine the current airport weather from the ASOS/AWOS. All aircraft arriving or departing an ASOS/AWOS equipped uncontrolled airport should monitor the airport weather frequency to ascertain the status of the airspace. Pilots in Class E airspace must be alert for changing weather conditions which may effect the status of the airspace from IFR/VFR. If ATC service is required for IFR/SVFR approach/departure or requested for VFR service, the pilot should advise the controller that he/she has received the one−minute weather and state his/her intentions.

EXAMPLE−
“ *I have the* (airport) *one−minute weather, request an ILS runway 14 approach.*”

REFERENCE−
Section GEN 3.5, Paragraph 7, Weather Observing Programs.

GEN 3.4 Communication Service

1. Responsible Authority

1.1 The authority responsible for the administration of communications services in the U.S. is the Federal Aviation Administration, Communication, Navigation, Surveillance, and Infrastructure.

Postal Address:
Federal Aviation Administration
Communications, Navigation, Surveillance,
and Infrastructure (ARN−1)
400 7th Street, SW
Washington, D.C. 20590
AFTN Address: KDCAYAYX
Commercial Telegraphic Address:
ACIVAIR Washington DC
Telex: 892−562

2. Area of Responsibility

2.1 Communications services are available on a continuous basis without charge to the user. The Air Traffic Services Division is responsible for the establishment of the operational requirements of the U.S. communications system. Responsibility for the day to day operation of these services resides with the local air traffic facility. Enquiries or complaints regarding any communications services or facilities should be referred to the relevant air traffic facility or to the Federal Aviation Administration, Air Traffic Operations Services, as appropriate.

3. Types of Services

3.1 Radio Navigation Service

3.1.1 Various types of air navigation aids are in use today, each serving a special purpose. These aids have varied owners and operators, namely: the Federal Aviation Administration, the military services, private organizations; and individual states and foreign governments. The Federal Aviation Administration has the statutory authority to establish, operate, and maintain air navigation facilities and to prescribe standards for the operation of any of these aids which are used by both civil and military aircraft for instrument flight in federally controlled airspace. These aids are tabulated in the Airport/Facility Directory by State.

3.1.2 Pilots should be aware of the possibility of momentary erroneous indications on cockpit displays when the primary signal generator for a ground−based navigational transmitter (for example, a glideslope, VOR, or nondirectional beacon) is inoperative. Pilots should disregard any navigation indication, regardless of its apparent validity, if the particular transmitter was identified by NOTAM or otherwise as unusable or inoperative.

3.1.3 The following types of radio navigation aids are provided in the U.S.:

3.1.3.1 VHF Direction−Finding (VHF−DF).

3.1.3.2 LF Non−Directional Beacon (NDB).

3.1.3.3 VHF Omni−Directional Radio Range (VOR).

3.1.3.4 Distance Measuring Equipment (DME).

3.1.3.5 Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN).

3.1.3.6 Instrument Landing System (ILS).

3.1.3.7 Final Approach Simplified Directional Facility (SDF).

3.1.3.8 Precision Approach Radar (PAR) at certain military aerodromes.

3.1.3.9 LORAN.

3.1.3.10 Global Positioning System (GPS).

3.1.4 NAVAID Service Volumes

3.1.4.1 Most air navigation radio aids which provide positive course guidance have a designated standard service volume (SSV). The SSV defines the reception limits of unrestricted NAVAIDs which are usable for random/unpublished route navigation.

3.1.4.2 A NAVAID will be classified as restricted if it does not conform to flight inspection signal strength and course quality standards throughout the published SSV. However, the NAVAID should not be considered usable at altitudes below that which could be flown while operating under random route IFR conditions; even though these altitudes may lie within the designated SSV.

NOTE−
Refer to Federal Aviation Regulations (14 CFR Section 91.177) for minimum altitudes for IFR operations. Service volume restrictions are first published in the Notices to Airman (NOTAMs) and then with the alphabetical listing of the NAVAIDs in the Airport/Facility Directory.

3.1.4.3 Standard service volume limitations do not apply to published IFR routes or procedures.

3.1.4.4 VOR/DME/TACAN Standard Service Volumes (SSV):

a) SSVs are graphically shown in FIG GEN 3.4−1, FIG GEN 3.4−2, FIG GEN 3.4−3, FIG GEN 3.4−4, and FIG GEN 3.4−5. The SSV of a station is indicated by using the class designator as a prefix to the station type designation.

EXAMPLE−
TVOR, LDME, and HVORTAC.

b) Within 25 NM, the bottom of the T service volume is defined by the curve in FIG GEN 3.4−4. Within 40 NM, the bottoms of the L and H service volumes are defined by the curve in FIG GEN 3.4−5.

FIG GEN 3.4−1

Standard High Altitude Service Volume
(See FIG GEN 3.4−5 for altitudes below 1,000 feet.)

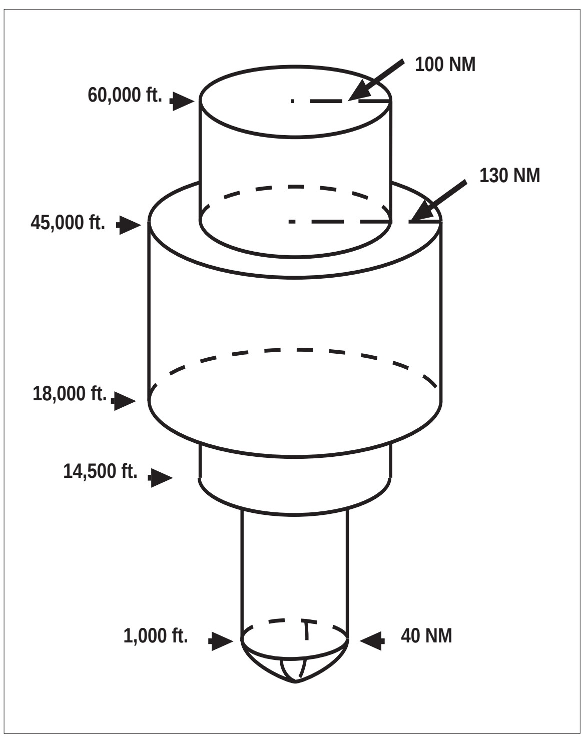


FIG GEN 3.4−2

Standard Low Altitude Service Volume
(See FIG GEN 3.4−5 for altitudes below 1,000 feet.)

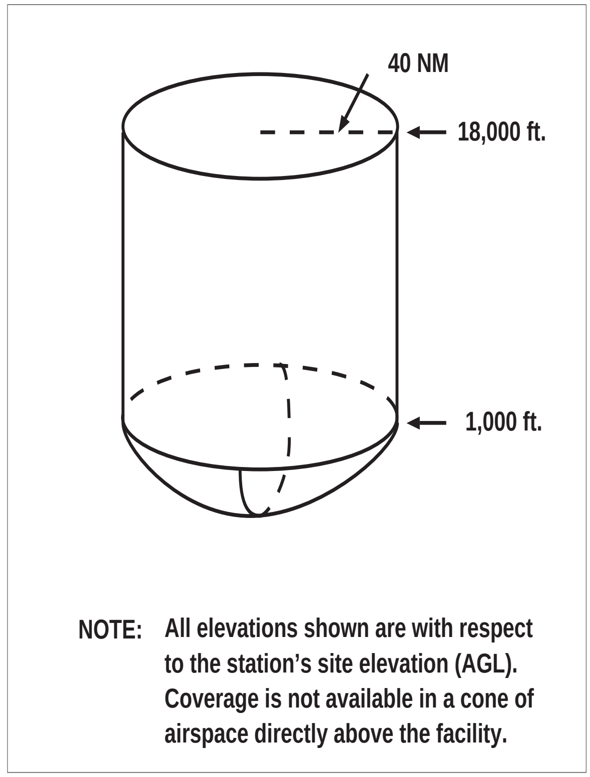
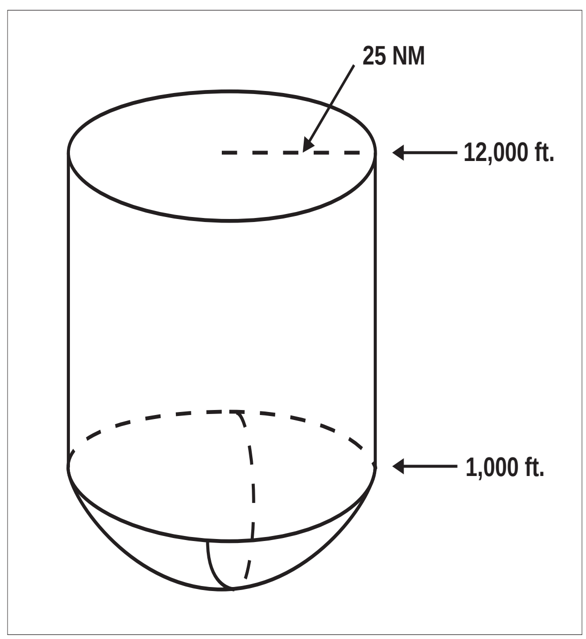


FIG GEN 3.4−3

Standard Terminal Service Volume
(See FIG GEN 3.4−4 for altitudes below 1,000 feet)



3.1.4.5 Nondirectional Radio Beacon (NDB)

a) NDBs are classified according to their intended use.

b) The ranges of NDB service volumes are shown in TBL GEN 3.4−2. The distances (radius) are the same at all altitudes.

TBL GEN 3.4−1

VOR/DME/TACAN Standard Service Volumes

SSV Class Designator	Altitude and Range Boundaries
T (Terminal)	From 1,000 feet above ground level (AGL) up to and including 12,000 feet AGL at radial distances out to 25 NM.
L (Low Altitude)	From 1,000 feet AGL up to and including 18,000 feet AGL at radial distances out to 40 NM.
H (High Altitude)	From 1,000 feet AGL up to and including 14,500 feet AGL at radial distances out to 40 NM. From 14,500 AGL up to and including 60,000 feet at radial distances out to 100 NM. From 18,000 feet AGL up to and including 45,000 feet AGL at radial distances out to 130 NM.

TBL GEN 3.4−2

NDB Service Volumes

Class	Distance (Radius)
Compass Locator	15 NM
MH	25 NM
H	50 NM*
HH	75 NM

** Service ranges of individual facilities may be less than 50 nautical miles (NM). Restrictions to service volumes are first published as a Notice to Airmen and then with the alphabetical listing of the NAVAID in the A/FD.*

FIG GEN 3.4−4

Service Volume Lower Edge Terminal

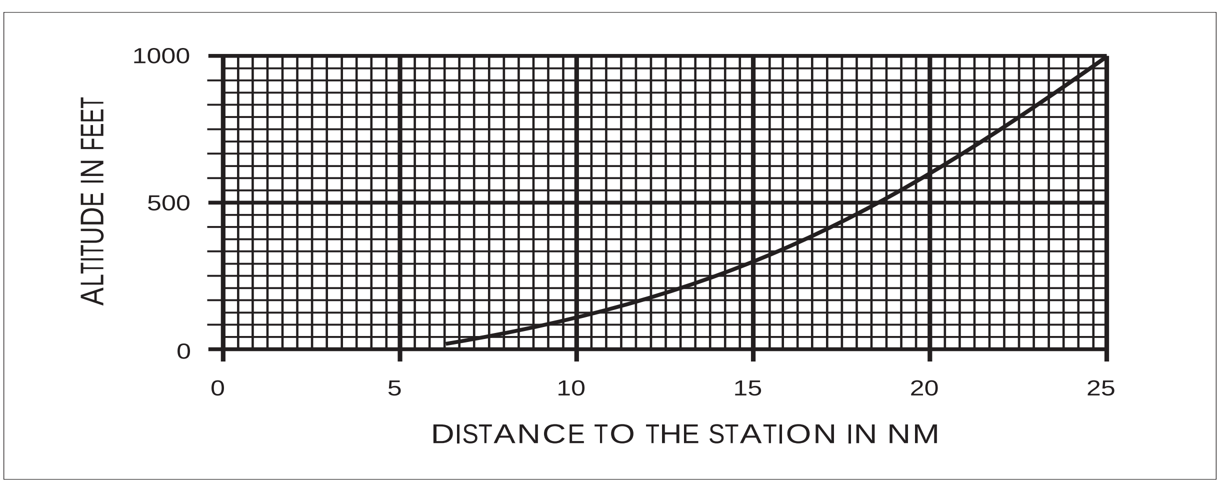
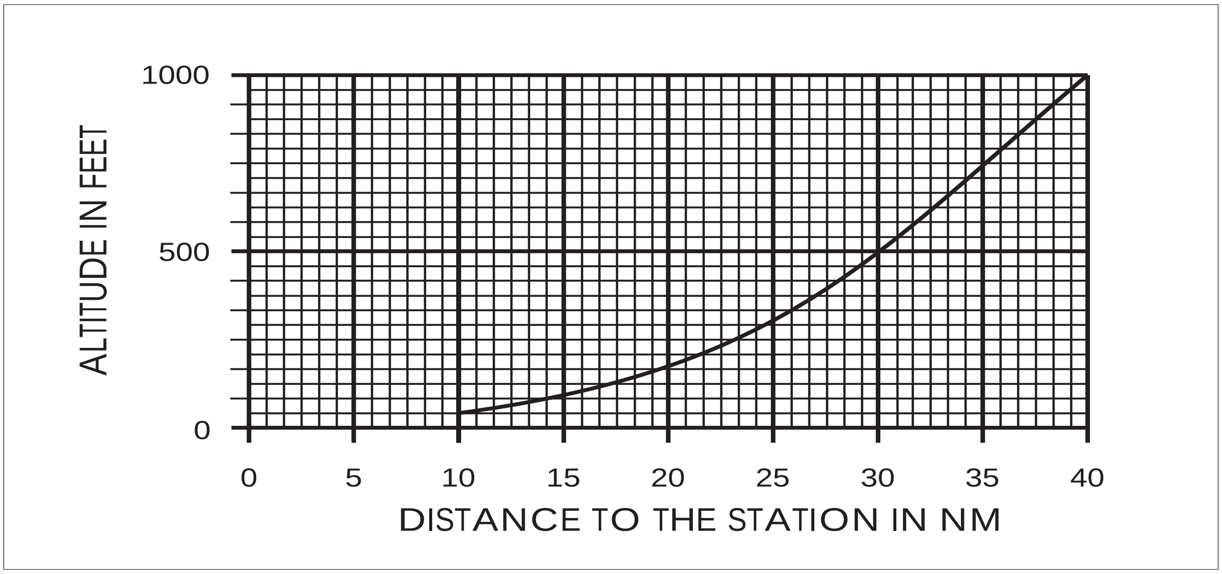


FIG GEN 3.4−5
Service Volume Lower Edge
Standard High and Low



3.1.5 NAVAIDs with Voice

3.1.5.1 Voice equipped en route radio navigational aids are under the operational control of either an FAA AFSS or an approach control facility. The voice communication is available on some facilities. The HIWAS broadcast capability on selected VOR sites is in the process of being implemented throughout the conterminous U.S. and does not provide voice communication. The availability of two−way voice communication and HIWAS is indicated in the Airport/Facility Directory and aeronautical charts.

3.1.5.2 Unless otherwise noted on the chart, all radio navigation aids operate continuously except during shutdowns for maintenance. Hours of operation of facilities not operating continuously are annotated on charts and in the Airport/Facility Directory.

3.2 Mobile Service

3.2.1 The aeronautical stations (Airport Traffic Control Towers, Air Route Traffic Control Centers, and Flight Service Stations) maintain a continuous watch on their assigned frequencies during the published hours of service unless otherwise notified. An aircraft should normally communicate with the air−ground control radio station which exercises control in the area in which it is flying. Aircraft should maintain continuous watch on the appropriate frequency of the control station and should not abandon watch, except in an emergency, without informing the control radio station.

3.2.2 Flight Service Stations (FSSs) are allocated frequencies for different functions. For Airport Advisory Service, the pilot should contact the FSS on 123.6 MHz. Individually assigned FSS frequencies are listed in Airport/Facility Directory under the FSS entry. If you are in doubt as to what frequency to use to contact an FSS, transmit on 122.1 MHz and advise the FSS of the frequency on which you are receiving.

3.3 Fixed Service

3.3.1 Messages to be transmitted over the Aeronautical Fixed Service are accepted only if they satisfy the requirements of:

3.3.1.1 ICAO Annex 10, Vol. II, Chapter 3, paragraph 3.3.

3.3.1.2 Are prepared in the form specified in Annex 10.

3.3.1.3 The text of an individual message does not exceed 200 groups.

3.3.2 General aircraft operating messages, Class B traffic, including reservation messages pertaining to flights scheduled to depart within 72 hours, shall not be acceptable for transmission over U.S. government operated telecommunications circuits except in those cases where it has been determined by the U.S. that adequate non−government facilities are not available.

3.4 Broadcast Service

3.4.1 The following meteorological broadcasts are available for the use of aircraft in flight:

3.4.1.1 LF Transcribed Weather Broadcast (TWEB).

3.4.1.2 Sub−Area Meteorological Broadcast (Volmet).

3.4.1.3 VHF RTF Meteorological Broadcasts.

3.4.2 Full details of broadcast service are given in GEN 3.5, Meteorological Services.

3.4.3 All broadcast services to aircraft are provided in the English language only.

4. Aeronautical Fixed Services

4.1 General

4.1.1 All U.S. ATC facilities have the ability to communicate with all other ATS facilities via either telephone or other domestic telecommunications systems. Circuit diagrams depicting these connections are not available for this publication due to the number of ATS facilities available in the U.S.

4.2 The Domestic Telecommunications Network

4.2.1 The U.S. Domestic telecommunications network is an automated system operating through the National Airspace Data Interchange Network (NADIN) in Atlanta, GA, and Salt Lake City, NV. All Flight Service Stations (FSS) and Air Route Traffic Control Centers (ARTCC) connect through the NATCOM. All FSS and ARTCC facilities have both transmit and receive capabilities.

4.2.2 Airport Air Traffic Control Towers (ATCT) and Approach Control (A/C) Facilities do not connect with this system. Messages originating from or destined to these facilities are relayed through the associated FSS. Associated FSSs for these facilities are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory.

4.2.3 Airport administrative offices, airport managers or airport administrative officials do not normally connect with the domestic telecommunications network. Urgent messages destined to these facilities must be forwarded to the associated FSS for relay or the message must be sent through commercial telegraphic systems.

4.3 The International Message Network (Aeronautical Fixed Telecommunications Network−AFTN)

4.3.1 AFTN messages originating from outside the U.S. domestic telecommunications system must be prepared in accordance with ICAO procedures. All incoming messages are received by NADIN and relayed to the addressed facility through automated procedures. The automated system will interpret the international address group and automatically forward the message via the domestic system to the addressee. For example, a message addressed KIKKYFYX will be accepted by AFTN and relayed to IKK (Kankakee FSS). The Kankakee FSS will manually relay this message to the intended recipient when necessary. Intended recipients are to be addressed in the first line of the message text.

4.3.2 All international flight plans entering the U.S. system must adhere to ICAO format. These flight plans are to be forwarded, via AFTN, to each affected, U.S. controlled, Flight Information Region (FIR) or Air Route Traffic Control Center (ARTCC) outside the continental U.S. (e.g., Miami FIR, San Juan, P.R. ARTCC) or the first FIR/ARTCC for flights entering the continental U.S. (e.g., New York FIR/ARTCC). If the flight plan content is acceptable, it is entered into the ARTCC system and is forwarded, automatically, via ARTCC computer, to all subsequently affected domestic ARTCCs. Flight plans which cannot be processed are rejected at the point of entry into the U.S. system and the originator is queried. Format adherence, once the flight plan is in the ARTCC system, is assured since each of the ARTCCs are automated facilities. Each subsequent ARTCC computer, however, will process incoming flight plans according to the requested routing. Flight plans can be rejected by any ARTCC due to errors in routing. Rejected flight plans, regardless of reason or point of rejection, are held in suspense until the needed clarification is received by the ARTCC facility.

4.4 Radio Communications Phraseology and Techniques

4.4.1 General

4.4.1.1 Radio communications are a critical link in the ATC system. The link can be a strong bond between pilot and controller − or it can be broken with surprising speed and disastrous results. Discussion herein provides basic procedures for new pilots and also highlights safe operating concepts for all pilots.

4.4.1.2 The single, most important thought in pilot−controller communications is understanding. It is essential, therefore, that pilots acknowledge each radio communication with ATC by using the appropriate aircraft call sign. Brevity is important, and contacts should be kept as brief as possible, but the controller must know what you want to do before he/she can properly carry out his/her control duties. And you, the pilot, must know exactly what he/she wants you to do. Since concise phraseology may not always be adequate, use whatever words are necessary to get your message across. Pilots are to maintain vigilance in monitoring air traffic control radio communications frequencies for potential traffic conflicts with their aircraft especially when operating on an active runway and/or when conducting a final approach to landing.

4.4.1.3 All pilots will find the Pilot/Controller Glossary very helpful in learning what certain words or phrases mean. Good phraseology enhances safety and is the mark of a professional pilot. Jargon, chatter and "CB" slang have no place in ATC communications. The Pilot/Controller Glossary is the same glossary used in the ATC controller's handbook. We recommend that it be studied and reviewed from time to time to sharpen your communication skills.

4.4.2 Radio Technique

4.4.2.1 Listen before you transmit. Many times you can get the information you want through ATIS or by monitoring the frequency. Except for a few situations where some frequency overlap occurs, if you hear someone else talking, the keying of your transmitter will be futile and you will probably jam their receivers causing them to repeat their call. If you have just changed frequency, pause for your receiver to tune, listen, and make sure the frequency is clear.

4.4.2.2 Think before keying your transmitter. Know what you want to say and if it is lengthy; e.g., a flight plan or IFR position report, jot it down. (But do not lock your head in the cockpit.)

4.4.2.3 The microphone should be very close to your lips and after pressing the mike button, a slight pause may be necessary to be sure the first word is transmitted. Speak in a normal conversational tone.

4.4.2.4 When you release the button, wait a few seconds before calling again. The controller or FSS specialist may be jotting down your number, looking for your flight plan, transmitting on a different frequency, or selecting his/her transmitter to your frequency.

4.4.2.5 Be alert to the sounds or lack of sounds in your receiver. Check your volume, recheck your frequency, and make sure that your microphone is not stuck in the transmit position. Frequency blockage can, and has, occurred for extended periods of time due to unintentional transmitter operation. This type of interference is commonly referred to as a "stuck mike,'' and controllers may refer to it in this manner when attempting to assign an alternate frequency. If the assigned frequency is completely blocked by this type of interference, use the procedures described in paragraph 12, Two−Way Radio Communications Failure.

4.4.2.6 Be sure that you are within the performance range of your radio equipment and the ground station equipment. Remote radio sites do not always transmit and receive on all of a facilities' available frequencies, particularly with regard to VOR sites where you can hear but not reach a ground station's receiver. Remember that higher altitude increases the range of VHF "line of sight" communications.

4.4.3 Aircraft Call Signs

4.4.3.1 Improper use of call signs can result in pilots executing a clearance intended for another aircraft. Call signs should never be abbreviated on an initial contact or at any time when other aircraft call signs have similar numbers/sounds or identical letters/numbers, (e.g., Cessna 6132F, Cessna 1622F, Baron 123F, Cherokee 7732F, etc.).

EXAMPLE−
As an example, assume that a controller issues an approach clearance to an aircraft at the bottom of a holding stack and an aircraft with a similar call sign (at the top of the stack) acknowledges the clearance with the last two or three numbers of his/her call sign. If the aircraft at the bottom of the stack did not hear the clearance and intervene, flight safety would be affected,

and there would be no reason for either the controller or pilot to suspect that anything is wrong. This kind of "human factors" error can strike swiftly and is extremely difficult to rectify.

4.4.3.2 Pilots, therefore, must be certain that aircraft identification is complete and clearly identified before taking action on an ATC clearance. ATC specialists will not abbreviate call signs of air carrier or other civil aircraft having authorized call signs. ATC specialists may initiate abbreviated call signs of other aircraft by using the prefix and the last three digits/letters of the aircraft identification after communications are established. The pilot may use the abbreviated call sign in subsequent contacts with the ATC specialist. When aware of similar/identical call signs, ATC specialists will take action to minimize errors by emphasizing certain numbers/letters, by repeating the entire call sign, repeating the prefix, or by asking pilots to use a different call sign temporarily. Pilots should use the phrase "Verify clearance for (your complete call sign)" if doubt exists concerning proper identity.

4.4.3.3 Civil aircraft pilots should state the aircraft type, model or manufacturer's name followed by the digits/letters of the registration number. When the aircraft manufacturer's name or model is stated, the prefix "N" is dropped.

EXAMPLE−
"Bonanza Six Five Five Golf," "Douglas One One Zero," "Breezy Six One Three Romeo Experimental" (Omit "Experimental" after initial contact).

4.4.3.4 Air taxi or other commercial operators not having FAA authorized call signs should prefix their normal identification with the phonetic word "Tango."

EXAMPLE−
"Tango Aztec Two Four Six Four Alpha."

4.4.3.5 Air carriers and commuter air carriers having FAA authorized call signs should identify themselves by stating the complete call sign, using group form for the numbers.

EXAMPLE−
"United Twenty−five, Midwest Commuter Seven Eleven."

4.4.3.6 Military aircraft use a variety of systems including serial numbers, word call signs and combinations of letters/numbers.

EXAMPLE−
"Army Copter 48931" "Air Force 61782" "REACH 31792" "Pat 157" "AirEvac 17652" "Navy Golf Alpha Kilo 21" "Marine 4 Charlie 36"

4.4.3.7 Air Ambulance Flights. Because of the priority afforded air ambulance flights in the ATC system, extreme discretion is necessary when using the term "LIFEGUARD." It is only intended for those missions of an urgent medical nature and to be utilized only for that portion of the flight requiring expeditious handling. When requested by the pilot, necessary notification to expedite ground handling of patients, etc., is provided by ATC; however, when possible, this information should be passed in advance through non−ATC communications systems.

a) Civilian air ambulance flights responding to medical emergencies (first call to an accident scene, carrying patients, organ donors, organs, or other urgently needed lifesaving medical material) will be expedited by ATC when necessary. When expeditious handling is necessary, add the word "LIFEGUARD" in the remarks section of the flight plan. In radio communications, use the call sign "LIFEGUARD" followed by the aircraft registration letters/numbers.

b) Similar provisions have been made for the use of "Air−Evac" and "Med−Evac" by military air ambulance flights, except that these military flights will receive priority only when specifically requested.

EXAMPLE−
"Lifeguard Two Six Four Six."

c) Air carrier and air taxi flights responding to medical emergencies will also be expedited by ATC when necessary. The nature of these medical emergency flights usually concerns the transportation of urgently needed lifesaving medical materials or vital organs. IT IS IMPERATIVE THAT THE COMPANY/PILOT DETERMINE, BY THE NATURE/URGENCY OF THE SPECIFIC MEDICAL CARGO, IF PRIORITY ATC ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED. Pilots shall ensure that the word "LIFEGUARD" is included in the remarks section of the flight plan and use the call sign "LIFEGUARD" followed by the company name and flight number, for all transmissions when expeditious handling is required. It is important for ATC to be aware of "LIFEGUARD" status, and it is the pilot's responsibility to ensure that this information is provided to ATC.

EXAMPLE−
"Lifeguard Delta Thirty−seven."

4.4.3.8 Student Pilots Radio Identification. The FAA desires to help the student pilot in acquiring sufficient practical experience in the environment in which he/she will be required to operate. To receive additional assistance while operating in areas of concentrated air traffic, a student pilot need only identify himself/herself as a student pilot during his/her initial call to an FAA radio facility. For instance, "Dayton Tower, this is Fleetwing 1234, Student Pilot." This special identification will alert FAA air traffic control personnel and enable them to provide the student pilot with such extra assistance and consideration as he/she may need. It is recommended that student pilots identify themselves as such, on initial contact with each clearance delivery prior to taxiing, ground control, tower, approach and departure control frequency, or FSS contact.

4.4.4 Description of Interchange or Leased Aircraft

4.4.4.1 Controllers issue traffic information based on familiarity with airline equipment and color/ markings. When an air carrier dispatches a flight using another company's equipment and the pilot does not advise the terminal ATC facility, the possible confusion in aircraft identification can compromise safety.

4.4.4.2 Pilots flying an "interchange" or "leased" aircraft not bearing the colors/markings of the company operating the aircraft should inform the terminal ATC facility on first contact the name of the operating company and trip number, followed by the company name as displayed on the aircraft, and aircraft type.

EXAMPLE−
AIR CAL 311, United (Interchange/Lease), Boeing 727.

4.4.5 Ground Station Call Signs

4.4.5.1 Pilots, when calling a ground station, should begin with the name of the facility being called followed by the type of the facility being called, as indicated in the following examples.

TBL GEN 3.4−3
Calling a Ground Station

Facility	Call Sign
Airport UNICOM	"Shannon UNICOM"
FAA Flight Service Station	"Chicago Radio"
FAA Flight Service Station (En Route Flight Advisory Service (Weather))	"Seattle Flight Watch"
Airport Traffic Control Tower	"Augusta Tower"
Clearance Delivery Position (IFR)	"Dallas Clearance Delivery"
Ground Control Position in Tower	"Miami Ground"
Radar or Nonradar Approach Control Position	"Oklahoma City Approach"
Radar Departure Control Position	"St. Louis Departure"
FAA Air Route Traffic Control Center	"Washington Center"

4.5 Radio Communications Phraseology

4.5.1 Phonetic Alphabet

4.5.1.1 The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) phonetic alphabet is used by FAA personnel when communications conditions are such that the information cannot be readily received without their use. Air traffic control facilities may also request pilots to use phonetic letter equivalents when aircraft with similar sounding identifications are receiving communications on the same frequency. Pilots should use the phonetic alphabet when identifying their aircraft during initial contact with air traffic control facilities. Additionally, use the phonetic equivalents for single letters and to spell out groups of letters or difficult words during adverse communications conditions.

TBL GEN 3.4-4

Character	Morse Code	Telephony	Phonic (Pronunciation)
A	×○	Alfa	(AL-FAH)
B	○ ×××	Bravo	(BRAH-VOH)
C	○ ×○ ×	Charlie	(CHAR-LEE) or (SHAR-LEE)
D	○ ××	Delta	(DELL-TAH)
E	×	Echo	(ECK-OH)
F	××○ ×	Foxtrot	(FOKS-TROT)
G	○ ○ ×	Golf	(GOLF)
H	××××	Hotel	(HOH-TEL)
I	××	India	(IN-DEE-AH)
J	×○ ○ ○	Juliett	(JEW-LEE-ETT)
K	○ ×○	Kilo	(KEY-LOH)
L	×○ ××	Lima	(LEE-MAH)
M	○ ○	Mike	(MIKE)
N	○ ×	November	(NO-VEM-BER)
O	○ ○ ○	Oscar	(OSS-CAH)
P	×○ ○ ×	Papa	(PAH-PAH)
Q	○ ○ ×○	Quebec	(KEH-BECK)
R	×○ ×	Romeo	(ROW-ME-OH)
S	×××	Sierra	(SEE-AIR-RAH)
T	○	Tango	(TANG-GO)
U	××○	Uniform	(YOU-NEE-FORM) or (OO-NEE-FORM)
V	×××○	Victor	(VIK-TAH)
W	×○ ○	Whiskey	(WISS-KEY)
X	○ ××○	Xray	(ECKS-RAY)
Y	○ ×○ ○	Yankee	(YANG-KEY)
Z	○ ○ ××	Zulu	(ZOO-LOO)
1	×○ ○ ○ ○	One	(WUN)
2	××○ ○ ○	Two	(TOO)
3	×××○ ○	Three	(TREE)
4	××××○	Four	(FOW-ER)
5	×××××	Five	(FIFE)
6	○ ××××	Six	(SIX)
7	○ ○ ×××	Seven	(SEV-EN)
8	○ ○ ○ ××	Eight	(AIT)
9	○ ○ ○ ○ ×	Nine	(NIN-ER)
0	○ ○ ○ ○ ○	Zero	(ZEE-RO)

4.5.2 Figures

4.5.2.1 Figures indicating hundreds and thousands in round numbers, as for ceiling heights, and upper wind levels up to 9,900, shall be spoken in accordance with the following:

EXAMPLE-
1. *500 . . . . five hundred*
2. *4,500 . . . . . . four thousand five hundred*

4.5.2.2 Numbers above 9,900 shall be spoken by separating the digits preceding the word "thousand."

EXAMPLE-
1. *10,000 . . . . . one zero thousand*
2. *13,500 . . . . . one three thousand five hundred*

4.5.2.3 Transmit airway or jet route numbers as follows:

EXAMPLE-
1. *V12 . . . . Victor Twelve*
2. *J533 . . . . J Five Thirty- Three*

4.5.2.4 All other numbers shall be transmitted by pronouncing each digit.

EXAMPLE-
10 . . . . one zero

4.5.2.5 When a radio frequency contains a decimal point, the decimal point is spoken as "Point."

EXAMPLE-
122.1 . . . . one two two point one

NOTE-
ICAO procedures require the decimal point be spoken as "decimal." The FAA will honor such usage by military aircraft and all other aircraft required to use ICAO procedures.

4.5.3 Altitudes and Flight Levels

4.5.3.1 Up to but not including 18,000 feet MSL, by stating the separate digits of the thousands, plus the hundreds.

EXAMPLE-
1. *12,000 . . . . . one two thousand*
2. *12,500 . . . . . one two thousand five hundred*

4.5.3.2 At and above 18,000' MSL (FL 180) by stating the words "flight level" followed by the separated digits of the flight level.

EXAMPLE-
1. *190 . . . . Flight Level One Niner Zero*
2. *275 . . . . Flight Level Two Seven Five*

4.5.4 Directions

4.5.4.1 The three digits of a magnetic course, bearing, heading or wind direction, should always be magnetic. The word "true" must be added when it applies.

EXAMPLE−
1. *(Magnetic course) 005 . . . zero zero five*
2. *(True course) 050 . . . . zero five zero true*
3. *(Magnetic bearing) 360 . . three six zero*
4. *(Magnetic heading) 100 . heading one zero zero*
5. *(Wind direction) 220 . . . . . wind two two zero*

4.5.5 Speeds

4.5.5.1 The separate digits of the speed are to be followed by the word "KNOTS" except that controllers may omit the word "KNOTS" when using speed adjustment procedures (e.g., "REDUCE/INCREASE SPEED TO TWO FIVE ZERO").

EXAMPLE−
1. *(Speed) 250 . . . . two five zero knots*
2. *(Speed) 190 . . . . one niner zero knots*

4.5.5.2 The separate digits of the Mach number are to be preceded by the word "Mach."

EXAMPLE−
1. *(Mach number) 1.5 . . . . . . Mach one point five*
2. *(Mach number) 0.64 . . . . . Mach point six four*
3. *(Mach number) 0.7 . . . . . . Mach point seven*

4.5.6 Time

4.5.6.1 FAA uses Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) for all operations. The word "local" or the time zone equivalent shall be used to denote local when local time is given during radio and telephone communications. The term "ZULU" may be used to denote UTC.

EXAMPLE−
0920 UTC . . . . zero niner two zero,
zero one two zero pacific or local,
or one twenty AM

4.5.6.2 To convert from Standard Time to UTC:

TBL GEN 3.4−5
Standard Time to Coordinated Universal Time

Eastern Standard Time Central	Add 5 hours
Standard Time	Add 6 hours
Mountain Standard Time	Add 7 hours
Pacific Standard Time Alaska	Add 8 hours
Standard Time	Add 9 hours
Hawaii Standard Time	Add 10 hours

NOTE−
For daylight time, subtract 1 hour.

4.5.6.3 A reference may be made to local daylight or standard time utilizing the 24−hour clock system. The hour is indicated by the first two figures and the minutes by the last two figures.

EXAMPLE−
1. *0000 . . . . zero zero zero zero*
2. *0920 . . . . zero niner two zero*

4.5.6.4 Time may be stated in minutes only (two figures) in radio telephone communications when no misunderstanding is likely to occur.

4.5.6.5 Current time in use at a station is stated in the nearest quarter minute in order that pilots may use this information for time checks. Fractions of a quarter minute or more, but less than eight seconds more, are stated as the preceding quarter minute; fractions of a quarter minute of eight seconds or more are stated as the succeeding quarter minute.

EXAMPLE−
0929:05 . . . . time, zero niner two niner
0929:10 . . . . time, zero niner two niner and one−quarter

4.5.7 Communications with Tower when Aircraft Transmitter/Receiver or Both are Inoperative

4.5.7.1 Arriving Aircraft

a) Receiver Inoperative. If you have reason to believe your receiver is inoperative, remain outside or above Class D airspace until the direction and flow of traffic has been determined; then, advise the tower of your type aircraft, position, altitude, intention to land, and request that you be controlled with light signals. When you are approximately 3 to 5 miles from the airport, advise the tower of your position and join the airport traffic pattern. From this point on, watch the tower for light signals. Thereafter, if a complete pattern is made, transmit your position when downwind and/or turning base leg.

b) Transmitter Inoperative. Remain outside or above Class D airspace until the direction and flow of traffic has been determined, then join the airport traffic pattern. Monitor the primary local control frequency as depicted on sectional charts for landing or traffic information, and look for a light signal which may be addressed to your aircraft. During hours of daylight, acknowledge tower transmissions or light signals by rocking your wings. At night, acknowledge by blinking the landing or navigational lights.

NOTE−
To acknowledge tower transmissions during daylight hours, hovering helicopters will turn in the direction of the controlling facility and flash the landing light. While in flight, helicopters should show their acknowledgment of receiving a transmission by making shallow banks in opposite directions. At night, helicopters will acknowledge receipt of transmissions by flashing either the landing or the search light.

c) Transmitter and Receiver Inoperative. Remain outside or above Class D airspace until the direction and flow of traffic has been determined, then join the airport traffic pattern and maintain visual contact with tower to receive light signals.

4.5.7.2 Departing Aircraft. If you experience radio failure prior to leaving the parking area, make every effort to have the equipment repaired. If you are unable to have the malfunction repaired, call the tower by telephone and request authorization to depart without two−way radio communications. If tower authorization is granted, you will be given departure information and requested to monitor the tower frequency or watch for light signals, as appropriate. During daylight hours, acknowledge tower transmissions or light signals by moving the ailerons or rudder. At night, acknowledge by blinking the landing or navigation lights. If radio malfunction occurs after departing the parking area, watch the tower for light signals or monitor tower frequency.

4.5.8 Contact Procedures

4.5.8.1 Initial Contact

a) The terms "initial contact" or "initial call up" mean the first radio call you make to a given facility, or the first call to a different controller/FSS specialist within a facility. Use the following format:

1) Name of facility being called.

2) Your full aircraft identification as filed in the flight plan or as discussed under aircraft call signs.

3) When operating on an airport surface, state your position.

4) The type of message to follow or your request if it is short; and

5) The word "Over," if required.

EXAMPLE−
1. *"New York Radio, Mooney Three One One Echo."*
2. *"Columbia Ground, Cessna Three One Six Zero Foxtrot, south ramp, I−F−R Memphis."*
3. *"Miami Center, Baron Five Six Three Hotel, request VFR traffic advisories."*

b) Many FSSs are equipped with remote communications outlets and can transmit on the same frequency at more than one location. The frequencies available at specific locations are indicated on charts above FSS communications boxes. To enable the specialist to utilize the correct transmitter, advise the location and frequency on which you expect a reply.

EXAMPLE−
St. Louis FSS can transmit on frequency 122.3 at either Farmington, MO, or Decatur, IL. If you are in the vicinity of Decatur, your callup should be "Saint Louis radio, Piper Six Niner Six Yankee, receiving Decatur One Two Two Point Three."

c) If radio reception is reasonably assured, inclusion of your request, your position or altitude, the phrase "Have numbers" or "Information Charlie received" (for ATIS) in the initial contact helps decrease radio frequency congestion. Use discretion and do not overload the controller with information he/she does not need. When you do not get a response from the ground station, recheck your radios or use another transmitter and keep the next contact short.

EXAMPLE−
"Atlanta Center, Duke Four One Romeo, request VFR traffic advisories, Twenty Northwest Rome, Seven Thousand Five Hundred, over."

4.5.9 Initial Contact when your Transmitting and Receiving Frequencies are Different

4.5.9.1 If you are attempting to establish contact with a ground station and you are receiving on a different frequency than that transmitted, indicate the VOR name or the frequency on which you expect a reply. Most FSSs and control facilities can transmit on several VOR stations in the area. Use the appropriate FSS call sign as indicated on charts.

EXAMPLE−
New York FSS transmits on the Kennedy, Deer Park and Calverton VORTACs. If you are in the Calverton area, your callup should be "New York Radio, Cessna Three One Six Zero Foxtrot, receiving Riverhead VOR, over."

4.5.9.2 If the chart indicates FSS frequencies above the VORTAC or in FSS communications boxes, transmit or receive on those frequencies nearest your location.

4.5.9.3 When unable to establish contact and you wish to call any ground station, use the phrase "any radio (tower) (station), give Cessna Three One Six Zero Foxtrot a call on (frequency) or (VOR)." If an emergency exists or you need assistance, so state.

4.5.10 Subsequent Contacts and Responses to Call Up from a Ground Facility. Use the same format as used for initial contact except you should state your message or request with the call up in one transmission. The ground station name and the word "Over" may be omitted if the message requires an obvious reply and there is no possibility for misunderstandings. You should acknowledge all callups or clearances unless the controller of FSS specialist advises otherwise. There are some occasions when the controller must issue time−critical instructions to other aircraft and he/she may be in a position to observe your response, either visually or on radar. If the situation demands your response, take appropriate action or immediately advise the facility of any problem. Acknowledge with your aircraft identification, either at the beginning or at the end of your transmission, and one of the words "Wilco, Roger, Affirmative, Negative" or other appropriate remarks; e.g., "Piper Two One Four Lima, Roger." If you have been receiving services such as VFR traffic advisories and you are leaving the area or changing frequencies, advise the ATC facility and terminate contact.

4.6 Acknowledgement of Frequency Changes

4.6.1 When advised by ATC to change frequencies, acknowledge the instruction. If you select the new frequency without an acknowledgement, the controller's workload is increased because he/she has no way of knowing whether you received the instruction or have had radio communications failure.

4.6.2 At times, a controller/specialist may be working a sector with multiple frequency assignments. In order to eliminate unnecessary verbiage and to free the controller/specialist for higher priority transmissions, the controller/specialist may request the pilot "(Identification), change to my frequency 123.4." This phrase should alert the pilot that he/she is only changing frequencies, not controller/specialist, and that initial call−up phraseology may be abbreviated.

EXAMPLE−
"United Two Twenty−two on One Two Three Point Four" or "One Two Three Point Four, United Two Twenty−two."

4.6.3 Compliance with Frequency Changes. When instructed by ATC to change frequencies, select the new frequency as soon as possible unless instructed to make the change at a specific time, fix, or altitude. A delay in making the change could result in an untimely receipt of important information. If you are instructed to make the frequency change at a specific time, fix, or altitude, monitor the frequency you are on until reaching the specified time, fix, or altitudes unless instructed otherwise by ATC.

5. Communications for VFR Flights

5.1 FSSs are allocated frequencies for different functions; for example, 122.0 MHz is assigned as the En Route Flight Advisory Service frequency at selected FSSs. In addition, certain FSSs provide Local Airport Advisory on 123.6 MHz. Frequencies are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory. If you are in doubt as to what frequency to use, 122.2 MHz is assigned to the majority of FSSs as a common en route simplex frequency.

NOTE−
In order to expedite communications, state the frequency being used and the aircraft location during initial call−up.

EXAMPLE−
"Dayton Radio, this is N12345 on 122.2 MHz over Springfield VOR, over."

5.1.1 Certain VOR voice channels are being utilized for recorded broadcasts; i.e., ATIS, HIWAS, etc. These services and appropriate frequencies are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory. On VFR flights, pilots are urged to monitor these frequencies. When in contact with a control facility, notify the controller if you plan to leave the frequency to monitor these broadcasts.

5.2 Hazardous Area Reporting Service

5.2.1 Selected FSSs provide flight monitoring where regularly traveled VFR routes cross large bodies of water, swamps, and mountains, for the purpose of expeditiously alerting Search and Rescue facilities when required.

5.2.1.1 When requesting the service either in person, by telephone or by radio, pilots should be prepared to give the following information: type of aircraft, altitude, indicated airspeed, present position, route of flight, heading.

5.2.1.2 Radio contacts are desired at least every 10 minutes. If contact is lost for more than 15 minutes, Search and Rescue will be alerted. Pilots are responsible for cancelling their request for service when they are outside the service area boundary. Pilots experiencing two−way radio failure are expected to land as soon as practicable and cancel their request for the service. FIG GEN 3.4−6, Hazardous Area Reporting Service, includes the areas and the FSS facilities involved in this program.

5.2.2 Long Island Sound Reporting Service (LIRS)

5.2.2.1 The New York and Bridgeport AFSSs provide Long Island Sound Reporting service on request for aircraft traversing Long Island Sound.

5.2.2.2 When requesting the service, pilots should ask for SOUND REPORTING SERVICE and should be prepared to provide the following appropriate information:

a) Type and color of aircraft.

b) The specific route and altitude across the sound including the shore crossing point.

c) The overwater crossing time.

d) Number of persons on board.

e) True air speed.

5.2.2.3 Radio contacts are desired at least every 10 minutes; however, for flights of shorter duration, a midsound report is requested. If contact is lost for more than 15 minutes, Search and Rescue will be alerted. Pilots are responsible for cancelling their request for the Long Island Sound Reporting Service when outside the service area boundary. Aircraft experiencing radio failure will be expected to land as soon as practicable and cancel their request for the service.

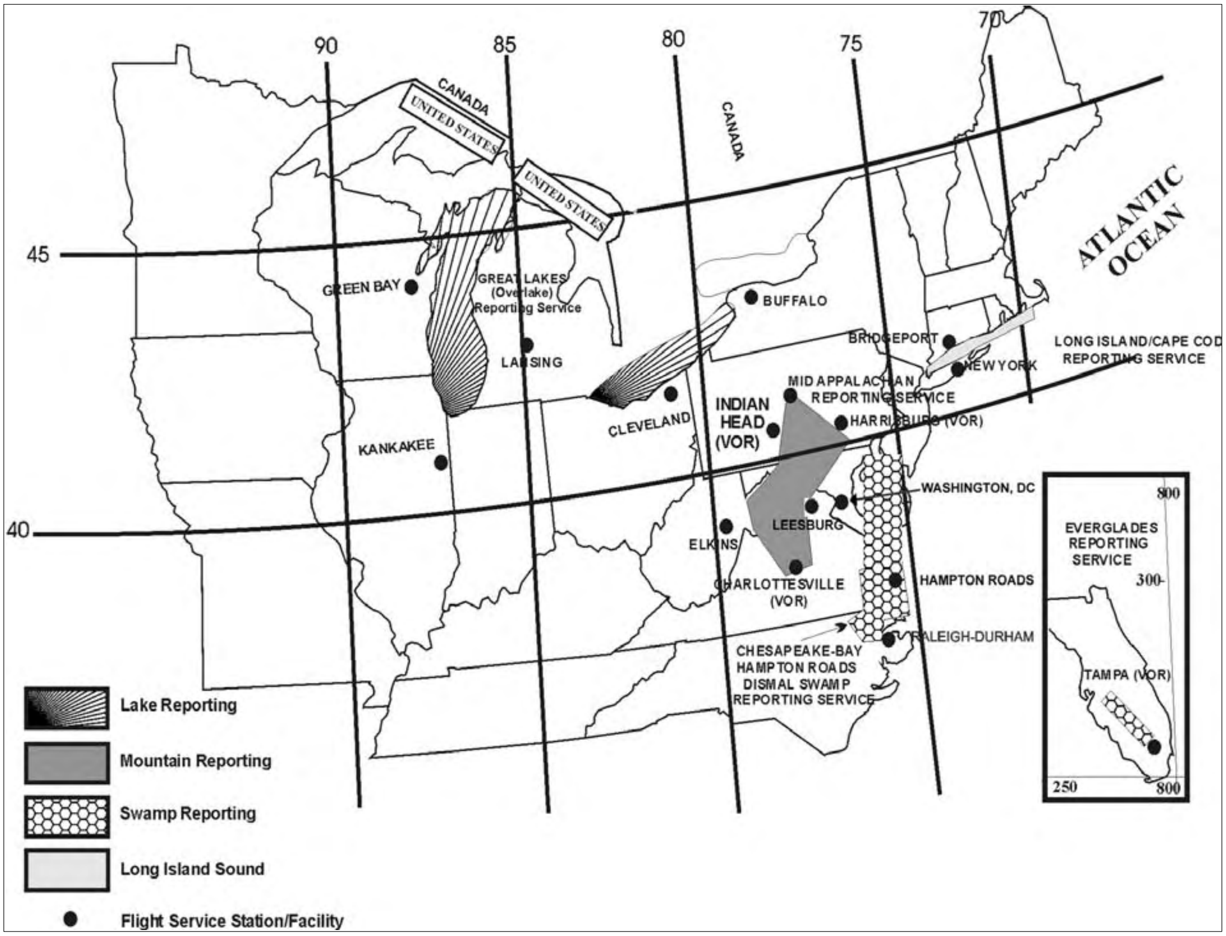
5.2.2.4 Communications. Primary communications − pilot transmits 122.1 MHz and listens on the VOR frequency.

TBL GEN 3.4−6

New York AFSS		
	Transmits	**Receives**
Hampton RCO	122.6 MHz	122.6 MHz
Calverton VORTAC	117.2 MHz	Standard FSS frequencies
Kennedy VORTAC	115.9 MHz	122.1 MHz
Bridgeport AFSS		
	Transmits	**Receives**
Madison VORTAC	110.4 MHz	122.15 MHz
Groton VOR	110.85 MHz	122.15 MHz
Bridgeport VOR	108.8 MHz	122.1 MHz

FIG GEN 3.4−6

Hazardous Area Reporting Service



5.2.3 Block Island Reporting Service (BIRS)

5.2.3.1 Within the Long Island Reporting Service, the New York FSS/IFSS also provides an additional service for aircraft operating between Montauk Point and Block Island. When requesting this service, pilots should ask for BLOCK ISLAND REPORTING SERVICE and should be prepared to provide the same flight information as that required for the Long Island Sound Reporting Service.

5.2.3.2 A minimum of three position reports are mandatory for this service. These are:

a) Report leaving Montauk Point or Block Island.

b) Midway report.

c) Report when over Montauk Point or Block Island at which time the pilot cancels the overwater service.

5.2.3.3 Communications. Pilots are to transmit and receive on 122.6 MHz.

5.2.3.4 Pilots are advised that 122.6 MHz is a remote receiver located at the Hampton VORTAC site and designed to provide radio coverage between Hampton and Block Island. Flights proceeding beyond Block Island may contact the Bridgeport AFSS by transmitting on 122.1 MHz and listening on Groton VOR (TMU) frequency 111.8 MHz.

5.2.4 Cape Cod and Islands Radar Overwater Flight Following

5.2.4.1 In addition to normal VFR radar advisory service, traffic permitting, Otis Approach Control provides a radar overwater flight following service for aircraft traversing the Cape Code and adjacent island area. Pilots desiring this service may contact Cape RAPCON on 118.2 MHz.

5.2.4.2 Pilots requesting this service should be prepared to give the following information:

a) Type and color of aircraft.

b) Altitude.

c) Position and heading.

d) Route of flight.

e) True airspeed.

5.2.4.3 For best radar coverage, pilots are encouraged to fly at 1,500 feet MSL or above.

5.2.4.4 Pilots are responsible for cancelling their request for overwater flight following when they are over the mainland and/or outside the service area boundary.

5.2.5 Lake Reporting Service

5.2.5.1 Cleveland and Lansing AFSSs provide Lake Reporting Service on request for aircraft traversing the western half of Lake Erie. Green Bay, Kankakee, Lansing, and Terre Haute AFSSs provide Lake Reporting Service on request for aircraft traversing Lake Michigan.

a) When requesting the service, pilots should ask for LAKE REPORTING SERVICE.

b) Pilots not on a VFR flight plan should be prepared to provide all information that is normally provided for a complete VFR flight plan.

c) Pilots already on a VFR flight plan should be prepared to provide the following information:

1) Aircraft or flight identification.

2) Type of aircraft.

3) Near−shore crossing point or last fix before crossing.

4) Proposed time over near−shore crossing point or last fix before crossing.

5) Proposed altitude.

6) Proposed route of flight.

7) Estimated time over water.

8) Next landing point.

9) AFSS/FSS having complete VFR flight plan information.

d) Radio contacts must not exceed 10 minutes when pilots fly at an altitude that affords continuous communications. If radio contact is lost for more than 15 minutes (5 minutes after a scheduled reporting time), Search and Rescue (SAR) will be alerted.

5.2.5.2 The estimated time for crossing the far shore will be the scheduled reporting time for aircraft that fly at an altitude that does not afford continuous communication coverage while crossing the lake. If radio contact is not established within 5 minutes of that time, SAR will be alerted.

5.2.5.3 Pilots are responsible for canceling their request for Lake Reporting Service when outside the service area boundary. Aircraft experiencing radio failure will be expected to land as soon as practicable and cancel their Lake Reporting Service flight plan.

5.2.5.4 Communications. Primary communications − Pilots should communicate with the following facilities on the indicated frequencies:

a) Cleveland AFSS Controls:

1) Cleveland RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.35 or 122.55 MHz).

2) Sandusky VOR (FSS transmits on 109.2 and receives on 122.1 MHz).

b) Green Bay AFSS Controls:

1) Escanaba VORTAC (FSS transmits on 110.8 and receives on 122.1 MHz).

2) Green Bay RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.55 MHz).

3) Manistique RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.25 MHz).

4) Manitowoc VOR (FSS transmits on 111.0 and receives on 122.1 MHz).

5) Menominee VOR (FSS transmits on 109.6 and receives on 122.1 MHz).

6) Milwaukee RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.65 MHz).

7) Falls VOR (FSS transmits on 110.0 and receives on 122.1 MHz).

c) Kankakee AFSS Controls:

1) Chicago Heights VORTAC (FSS transmits on 114.2 and receives on 122.1 MHz).

2) Meigs RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.15 MHz).

3) Waukegan RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.55 MHz).

d) Lansing AFSS Controls:

1) Lake Erie. Detroit City RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.55 MHz).

2) Lake Michigan:

(a) Keeler VORTAC (FSS transmits on 116.6 and receives on 122.1 MHz).

(b) Ludington RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.45 MHz).

(c) Manistee VORTAC (FSS transmits on 111.4 and receives on 122.1 MHz).

(d) Muskegon RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.5 MHz).

(e) Pellston RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.3 MHz).

(f) Pullman VORTAC (FSS transmits on 112.1 and receives on 122.1 MHz).

(g) Traverse City RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.65 MHz).

e) Terre Haute AFSS Controls. South Bend RCO (FSS transmits and receives on 122.6 MHz).

5.2.5.5 Florida Everglades Reporting Service. This service is offered by Miami Automated International Flight Service Station (MIA AIFSS), in extreme southern Florida. The service is provided to aircraft crossing the Florida Everglades, between Lee County (Ft. Myers, FL) VORTAC (RSW) on the northwest side, and Dolphin (Miami, FL) VOR (DHP) on the southeast side.

a) The pilot must request the service from Miami AIFSS.

b) MIA AIFSS frequency information, 122.2, 122.3, and 122.65.

c) The pilot must file a VFR flight plan with the remark: ERS.

d) The pilot must maintain 2000 feet of altitude.

e) The pilot must make position reports every ten (10) minutes. SAR begins fifteen (15) minutes after position report is not made on time.

f) The pilot is expected to land as soon as is practical, in the event of two−way radio failure, and advise MIA AIFSS that the service is terminated.

g) The pilot must notify Miami AIFSS when the flight plan is cancelled or the service is suspended.

6. Over−water Flights Radio Procedure

6.1 Pilots should remember that there is a need to continuously guard the VHF emergency frequency 121.5 MHz when on long over−water flights, except when communications on other VHF channels, equipment limitations, or cockpit duties prevent simultaneous guarding of two channels. Guarding of 121.5 MHz is particularly critical when operating in proximity to flight information region (FIR) boundaries; for example, operations on Route R220 between Anchorage and Tokyo, since it serves to facilitate communications with regard to aircraft which may experience in−flight emergencies, communications, or navigational difficulties. (Reference ICAO Annex 10, Vol II Paras. 5.2.2.1.1.1 and 5.2.2.1.1.2.)

7. Radio Communications and Navigation Facilities

7.1 A complete listing of air traffic radio communications facilities and frequencies and radio navigation facilities and frequencies is contained in the Airport/Facility Directory. Similar information for the Pacific and Alaskan areas is contained in the Pacific and Alaskan Supplements (See GEN 3.2, Aeronautical Charts).

8. U.S. Aeronautical Telecommunications Services

8.1 The following services are available for aircraft engaged in international or overseas flight.

8.2 The aeronautical voice communication stations listed are available to and utilized by the U.S. Federal Aviation Administration Air Traffic Control Centers for air traffic control purposes.

8.3 The frequencies in use will depend upon the time of day or night and conditions which affect radio wave propagation. Voice communications handled on a single channel simplex basis (i.e., with the aircraft and the ground station using the same frequency for transmission and reception) unless otherwise noted in remarks.

8.4 The stations will remain on continuous watch for aircraft within their communications areas and, when practicable, will transfer this watch to another station when the aircraft reaches the limit of the communications area.

8.5 Stations listed below which are designated "FAA" are operated by the U.S. Federal Aviation Administration. Stations designated "ARINC" are operated by Aeronautical Radio, Incorporated, 2551 Riva Road, Annapolis, MD 21401. Contact the Air Traffic Communications Support Section at 410−266−4430, E:Mail AGOPS@arinc.com or cable HDQXGXA. (See TBL GEN 3.4−7.)

8.6 All users of the North Atlantic HF MWARA services should consult International NOTAMS and ICAO Regional Supplementary Procedures, Document 7030, for current procedures concerning the operational use of the North Atlantic HF families. At present, procedures for the distribution of HF communications traffic in the North Atlantic are:

8.6.1 All aircraft registered in the hemisphere west of 30W should use family alpha on the southern routes and family bravo on the central and northern routes. (Southern routes are those which enter the New York, San Juan and Santa Maria FIRs. The central and northern routes comprise all others).

8.6.2 All aircraft registered in the hemisphere east of 30W should use family alpha on the southern routes and family charlie on the central and northern routes.

8.6.3 All aircraft should use family alpha on the southern route and family delta on the central and northern routes while outside the organized track system (OTS).

8.6.4 Aircraft registered in Australia will use families designated to aircraft registered east of 30W.

8.7 Aircraft operating in the Anchorage Arctic CTA/FIR beyond line of sight range of remote control VHF air/ground facilities operated from the Anchorage ACC, shall maintain communications with Cambridge Bay radio and a listening or SELCAL watch on HF frequencies of the North Atlantic D (NAT D) network (2971 kHz, 4675 kHz, 8891 kHz and 11279 kHz). Additionally, and in view of reported marginal reception of the Honolulu Pacific Volmet broadcasts in that and adjacent Canadian airspace, Cambridge Bay radio can provide Anchorage and Fairbanks surface observations and terminal forecasts to flight crews on request.

TBL GEN 3.4−7

Station and Operating Agency	Radio Call	Transmitting Frequencies	Remarks
HONOLULU (FAA)	Honolulu Radio	122.6 122.2 #121.5 MHz	#Emergency. Frequency 122.1 also available for receiving only.
	Volmet	2863 6679 8828 13282 kHz	Broadcasts at H+00−05 and H+30−35; Aerodrome Forecasts, Honolulu, Hilo, Agana, Honolulu. SIGMET. Hourly Report, Honolulu, Hilo, Kahului, Agana, Honolulu.
			Broadcasts at H+05−10 and H+35−40; Hourly Reports, San Francisco, Los Angeles, Seattle, Portland, Sacramento, Ontario, Las Vegas. SIGMET. Aerodrome Forecasts, San Francisco, Seattle, Los Angeles.
			Broadcasts at H+25−30 and H+55−60; Hourly Reports, Anchorage, Elmendorf, Fairbanks, Cold Bay, King Salmon, Vancouver. SIGMET. Aerodrome Forecasts, Anchorage, Fairbanks, Cold Bay, Vancouver.
MIAMI (FAA)	Miami Radio	126.7 118.4 126.9 122.2 122.4 122.75 123.65 127.9 MHz	Local and Short Range.
		#121.5 MHz	#Emergency.
NEW YORK (FAA)	New York Radio (Volmet)	3485* 6604 10051 13270* kHz	*3485 Volmet broadcasts from 1 hour after sunset to 1 hour before sunrise.
			*13270 Volmet broadcasts from 1 hour before sunrise to 1 hour after sunset.
			Broadcasts at H+00−05; Aerodrome Forecasts, Detroit, Chicago, Cleveland. Hourly Reports, Detroit, Chicago, Cleveland, Niagara Falls, Milwaukee, Indianapolis.
			Broadcasts at H+05−10; SIGMET, (Oceanic−New York). Aerodrome Forecasts, Bangor, Pittsburgh, Charlotte. Hourly Reports, Bangor, Pittsburgh, Windsor Locks, St. Louis, Charlotte, Minneapolis.
			Broadcasts at H+10−15; Aerodrome Forecasts, New York, Newark, Boston. Hourly reports, New York, Newark, Boston, Baltimore, Philadelphia, Washington.
			Broadcasts at H+15−20; SIGMET (Oceanic−Miami/San Juan). Aerodrome Forecasts, Bermuda, Miami, Atlanta. Hourly Reports, Bermuda, Miami, Nassau, Freeport, Tampa, West Palm Beach, Atlanta.
			Broadcasts at H+30−35; Aerodrome Forecasts, Niagara Falls, Milwaukee, Indianapolis. Hourly Reports Detroit, Chicago, Cleveland, Niagara Falls, Milwaukee, Indianapolis.
			Broadcasts at H+35−40; SIGMET (Oceanic−New York). Aerodrome Forecasts, Windsor Locks, St. Louis. Hourly Reports, Bangor, Pittsburgh, Windsor Locks, St. Louis, Charlotte, Minneapolis.
			Broadcasts at H+40−45; Aerodrome Forecasts, Baltimore, Philadelphia, Washington. Hourly Reports, New York, Newark, Boston, Baltimore, Philadelphia, Washington.
			Broadcasts at H+45−50; SIGMET (Oceanic−Miami/San Juan). Aerodrome Forecasts, Nassau, Freeport. Hourly Reports, Bermuda, Miami, Nassau, Freeport, Tampa, West Palm Beach, Atlanta.

Station and Operating Agency	Radio Call	Transmitting Frequencies	Remarks
NEW YORK (ARINC)	New York	3016 5598 8906 13306 17946 kHz	North Atlantic Family A Network.
		2962 6628 8825 11309 13354 kHz	North Atlantic Family E Network.
		2887 5550 6577 8918 11396 13297 kHz	Caribbean Family A Network.
		3455 5520 6586 8846 11330 17907 kHz	Caribbean Family B Network.
		3494 6640 8933 11342 13330 17925 kHz	Long Distance Operations Control (LDOC) Service (phone−patch). Communications are limited to operational control matters only. Public correspondence (personal messages) to/from crew or passengers cannot be accepted.
		129.90 MHz	Extended range VHF. Coverage area includes Canadian Maritime Provinces, and oceanic routes to Bermuda and the Caribbean, from Boston, New York and Washington areas to approximately 250 nautical miles from the east coast.
		130.7 MHz	Extended range VHF. Full period service is provided within most of the Gulf of Mexico. Also on routes between Miami and San Juan to a distance of approximately 250 nautical miles from the Florida coast and within approximately 250 nautical miles of San Juan.
			Note: Due to the distances involved, signal levels received by aircraft communicating with New York ARINC in the Gulf of Mexico on frequency 130.700 MHz will be weaker than normally encountered in VHF communications. Most aircraft usually have the squelch setup to communicate where signal levels are much higher and to totally eliminate background noise for the flight crew. In order to increase the range and maximize the coverage area, aircraft are asked to utilize the following squelch settings on their VHF radios while monitoring or communicating with New York ARINC. On aircraft with an OPEN/CLOSE squelch switch, the squelch should be set to the OPEN position while communicating or after being SELCAL'ed. Aircraft with an adjustable system should first set their squelch to fully open position and then adjust to where the noise is reduced or just closed. This will allow the weakest signals to be heard. Utilizing this procedure will increase the background noise heard by the flight crew but will allow communications at a much greater range.
	New York ARINC	436623* 631−244−2492	Aircraft operating within the New York Oceanic FIR.
			*Note: This satellite Voice Air/Ground calling number is available to call ARINC and will be recognized and converted by all Ground Earth Station (GES) service providers to the appropriate Public Service Telephone Network (PTSN) or direct dial number for this communications center.

Station and Operating Agency	Radio Call	Transmitting Frequencies	Remarks
SAN FRANCISCO (ARINC)	San Francisco	3413 3452 5574 6673 8843 10057 13354 kHz	Central East Pacific One Network.
		2869 5547 11282 13288 kHz	Central East Pacific Two Network.
		2998 4666 6532 8903 11384 13300 17904 21985 kHz	Central West Pacific Network.
		3467 5643 8867 13261 17904 kHz	South Pacific Network.
		2932 5628 5667 6655 8915 8951 10048 11330 13273 13339 17946 21925 kHz	North Pacific Network
		3013 6640 11342 13348 17925 21964	Long Distance Operations Control (LDOC) Service (phone−patch). Communications are limited to operational control matters only. Public correspondence (personal messages) to/from crew or passengers cannot be accepted.
		131.95 MHz	Extended range VHF. Coverage area includes area surrounding the Hawaiian Islands and along the tracks from HNL to the mainland. Coverage extends out approximately 250 NM from Hawaii and from the West coast.
		129.40 MHz	For en route communications for aircraft operating on Seattle/Anchorage/Routes.
	San Francisco ARINC	436625* 925−371−3920	Aircraft operating within the Oakland and Anchorage Oceanic FIRs.
			*Note: This satellite Voice Air/Ground calling number is available to call ARINC and will be recognized and converted by all Ground Earth Station (GES) service providers to the appropriate Public Service Telephone Network (PTSN) or direct dial number for this communications center.
OAKLAND (FAA)	Oakland Radio	122.5 122.2 #121.5 MHz	#Emergency.
SAN JUAN P.R. (FAA)	San Juan Radio	#121.5 122.2 126.7 123.65 #243.0 255.4 114.0 113.5 108.2 108.6 109.0 110.6 MHz	Unscheduled broadcasts H+00, H+15, H+30 and H+45 as appropriate, for Weather and Military Activity Advisories, on 110.6, 109.0, 108.6, 108.2, 113.5, and 114.0 MHz. #Emergency. For frequencies 114.0, 113.5, 108.2 and 109.0 MHz use 122.1 MHz for transmissions to San Juan Radio. For frequency 108.6 use 123.6 MHz.

9. Selective Calling System (SELCAL) Facilities Available

9.1 The SELCAL is a communication system which permits the selective calling of individual aircraft over radio−telephone channels from the ground station to properly equipped aircraft, so as to eliminate the need for the flight crew to constantly monitor the frequency in use.

TBL GEN 3.4−8

Location	Operator	HF	VHF
New York	ARINC	X	X
San Francisco	ARINC	X	X

10. Special North Atlantic, Caribbean, and Pacific Area Communications

10.1 VHF air−to−air frequencies enable aircraft engaged on flights over remote and oceanic areas out of range of VHF ground stations to exchange necessary operational information and to facilitate the resolution of operational problems.

10.2 Frequencies have been designated as follows:

TBL GEN 3.4−9

Area	Frequency
North Atlantic	123.45 MHz
Caribbean	123.45 MHz
Pacific	123.45 MHz

11. Distress and Urgency Communications

11.1 A pilot who encounters a distress or urgency condition can obtain assistance simply by contacting the air traffic facility or other agency in whose area of responsibility the aircraft is operating, stating the nature of the difficulty, pilot's intentions, and assistance desired. Distress and urgency communications procedures are prescribed by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), however, and have decided advantages over the informal procedure described above.

11.2 Distress and urgency communications procedures discussed in the following paragraphs relate to the use of air ground voice communications.

11.3 The initial communication, and if considered necessary, any subsequent transmissions by an aircraft in distress should begin with the signal MAYDAY, preferably repeated three times. The signal PAN−PAN should be used in the same manner for an urgency condition.

11.4 Distress communications have absolute priority over all other communications, and the word MAYDAY commands radio silence on the frequency in use. Urgency communications have priority over all other communications except distress, and the word PAN−PAN warns other stations not to interfere with urgency transmissions.

11.5 Normally, the station addressed will be the air traffic facility or other agency providing air traffic services, on the frequency in use at the time. If the pilot is not communicating and receiving services, the station to be called will normally be the air traffic facility or other agency in whose area of responsibility the aircraft is operating, on the appropriate assigned frequency. If the station addressed does not respond, or if time or the situation dictates, the distress or urgency message may be broadcast, or a collect call may be used, addressing "Any Station (Tower) (Radio) (Radar)."

11.6 The station addressed should immediately acknowledge a distress or urgency message, provide assistance, coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities, and alert the appropriate Search and Rescue coordinator if warranted. Responsibility will be transferred to another station only if better handling will result.

11.7 All other stations, aircraft and ground, will continue to listen until it is evident that assistance is being provided. If any station becomes aware that the station being called either has not received a distress or urgency message, or cannot communicate with the aircraft in difficulty, it will attempt to contact the aircraft and provide assistance.

11.8 Although the frequency in use or other frequencies assigned by ATC are preferable, the following emergency frequencies can be used for distress or urgency communications, if necessary or desirable:

11.8.1 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz. Both have a range generally limited to line of sight. 121.5 MHz is guarded by direction finding stations and some military and civil aircraft. 243.0 MHz is guarded by military aircraft. Both 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz are guarded by military towers, most civil towers, flight service stations, and radar facilities. Normally ARTCC emergency frequency capability does not extend to radar coverage limits. If an ARTCC does not respond when called on 121.5 MHz or 243.0 MHz, call the nearest tower or flight service station.

11.8.2 2182 kHz. The range is generally less than 300 miles for the average aircraft installation. It can be used to request assistance from stations in the maritime service. 2182 kHz is guarded by major radio stations serving Coast Guard Rescue Coordination Centers and Coast Guard units along the sea coasts of the U.S. and shores of the Great Lakes. The call "Coast Guard" will alert all Coast Guard Radio Stations within range. 2182 kHz is also guarded by most commercial coast stations and some ships and boats.

12. Two−Way Radio Communications Failure

12.1 It is virtually impossible to provide regulations and procedures applicable to all possible situations associated with two−way radio communications failure. During two−way radio communications failure when confronted by a situation not covered in the regulation, pilots are expected to exercise good judgment in whatever action they elect to take. Should the situation so dictate, they should not be reluctant to use the emergency action contained in 14 CFR Section 91.3(b).

12.2 Whether two−way communications failure constitutes an emergency depends on the circumstances, and in any event is a determination made by the pilot. 14 CFR Section 91.3 authorizes a pilot to deviate from any rule to the extent required to meet an emergency.

12.3 In the event of two−way radio communications failure, ATC service will be provided on the basis that the pilot is operating in accordance with 14 CFR Section 91.185. A pilot experiencing two−way communications failure should (unless emergency authority is exercised) comply with 14 CFR Section 91.185 as indicated below.

12.4 Unless otherwise authorized by ATC, each pilot who has two−way radio communications failure when operating under IFR shall comply with the following conditions:

12.4.1 If the failure occurs in VFR conditions, or if VFR conditions are encountered after the failure, each pilot shall continue the flight under VFR and land as soon as practicable.

NOTE−
This procedure also applies when two-way radio failure occurs while operating in Class A airspace. The primary objective of this provision in 14 CFR Section 91.185 is to preclude extended IFR operation by these aircraft within the ATC system. Pilots should recognize that operation under these conditions may unnecessarily as well as adversely affect other users of the airspace, since ATC may be required to reroute or delay other users in order to protect the failure aircraft. However, it is not intended that the requirement to "land as soon as practicable" be construed to mean "as soon as possible." Pilots retain the prerogative of exercising their best judgment and are not required to land at an unauthorized airport, at an airport unsuitable for the type of aircraft flown, or to land only minutes short of their intended destination.

12.4.2 If the failure occurs in IFR conditions, or if VFR conditions cannot be complied with, each pilot shall continue the flight according to the following requirements.

12.5 Route requirements:

12.5.1 By the route assigned in the last ATC clearance received.

12.5.2 If being radar vectored, by the direct route from the point of radio failure to the fix, route, or airway specified in the vector clearance.

12.5.3 In the absence of an assigned route, by the route that ATC has advised may be expected in a further clearance.

12.5.4 In the absence of an assigned route or a route that ATC has advised may be expected in a further clearance, by the route filed in the flight plan.

12.6 Altitude requirements. At the HIGHEST of the following altitudes or flight levels FOR THE ROUTE SEGMENT BEING FLOWN:

12.7.1 The altitude or flight level assigned in the last ATC clearance received.

12.7.2 The minimum altitude (converted, if appropriate, to minimum flight level as prescribed in 14 CFR Section 91.121(c)) for IFR operations.

12.7.3 The altitude or flight level ATC has advised may be expected in a further clearance.

NOTE−
The intent of the rule is that a pilot who has experienced two−way radio failure should select the appropriate altitude for the particular route segment being flown and make the necessary altitude adjustments for subsequent route segments. If the pilot received an "expect further clearance" containing a higher altitude to expect at a specified time or fix, he/she should maintain the highest of the following altitudes until that time/fix: (1) his/her last assigned altitude, or (2) the minimum altitude/flight level for IFR operations.

Upon reaching the time/fix specified, the pilot should commence his/her climb to the altitude he/she was advised to expect. If the radio failure occurs after the time/fix specified, the altitude to be expected is not applicable and the pilot should maintain an altitude consistent with 1 or 2 above.

If the pilot receives an "expect further clearance" containing a lower altitude, the pilot should maintain the highest of 1 or 2 above until that time/fix specified in paragraph 12.7, Leave Clearance Limit.

EXAMPLE−
1. *A pilot experiencing two−way radio failure at an assigned altitude of 7,000 feet is cleared along a direct route which will require a climb to a minimum IFR altitude of 9,000 feet, should climb to reach 9,000 feet at the time or place where it becomes necessary (see 14 CFR Section 91.177(b)). Later while proceeding along an airway with an MEA of 5,000 feet, the pilot would descend to 7,000 feet (the last assigned altitude), because that altitude is higher than the MEA.*

2. *A pilot experiencing two−way radio failure while being progressively descended to lower altitudes to begin an approach is assigned 2,700 feet until crossing the VOR and then cleared for the approach. The MOCA along the airway is 2,700 feet and MEA is 4,000 feet. The aircraft is within 22 NM of the VOR. The pilot should remain at 2,700 feet until crossing the VOR because that altitude is the minimum IFR altitude for the route segment being flown.*

3. *The MEA between a and b − 5,000 feet. The MEA between b and c −5,000 feet. The MEA between c and d −11,000 feet. The MEA between d and e − 7,000 feet. A pilot had been cleared via a, b, c, d, to e. While flying between a and b the assigned altitude was 6,000 feet and the pilot was told to expect a clearance to 8,000 feet at b. Prior to receiving the higher altitude assignment, the pilot experienced two−way failure. The pilot would maintain 6,000 to b, then climb to 8,000 feet (the altitude the pilot was advised to expect.) The pilot would maintain 8,000 feet, then climb to 11,000 at c, or prior to c if necessary to comply with an MCA at c. (14 CFR Section 91.177(b).) Upon reaching d, the pilot would descend to 8,000 feet (even though the MEA was 7,000 feet), as 8,000 was the highest of the altitude situations stated in the rule 14 CFR Section 91.185.*

12.7 Leave Clearance Limit

12.7.1 When the clearance limit is a fix from which an approach begins, commence descent or descent and approach as close as possible to the expect further clearance time if one has been received, or if one has not been received, as close as possible to the estimated time of arrival as calculated from the filed or amended (with ATC) estimated time en route.

12.7.2 If the clearance limit is not a fix from which an approach begins, leave the clearance limit at the expect further clearance time if one has been received, or if none has been received, upon arrival over the clearance limit, and proceed to a fix from which an approach begins and commence descent or descent and approach as close as possible to the estimated time of arrival as calculated from the filed or amended (with ATC) estimated time en route.

13. Transponder Operation During Two−Way Communications Failure

13.1 If an aircraft with a coded radar beacon transponder experiences a loss of two−way radio capability, the pilot should adjust the transponder to reply on Mode 3/A, Code 7600.

13.2 The pilot should understand that the aircraft may not be in an area of radar coverage.

14. Reestablishing Radio Contact

14.1 In addition to monitoring the NAVAID voice feature, the pilot should attempt to reestablish communications by attempting contact:

14.1.1 On the previously assigned frequency.

14.1.2 With an FSS or ARINC.

14.2 If communications are established with an FSS or ARINC, the pilot should advise the aircraft's position, altitude, and last assigned frequency; then request further clearance from the controlling facility. The preceding does not preclude the use of 121.5 MHz. There is no priority on which action should be attempted first. If the capability exists, do all at the same time.

NOTE−
Aeronautical Radio Incorporated (ARINC) is a commercial communications corporation which designs, constructs, operates, leases or otherwise engages in radio activities serving the aviation community. ARINC has the capability of relaying information to/from ATC facilities throughout the country.

GEN 3.5 Meteorological Services

1. Meteorological Authority

1.1 The meteorological services for civil aviation are prepared by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) of the U.S. Department of Commerce.

Postal Address:
National Weather Service
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Department of Commerce
1325 East West Highway
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910
Telephone: 301−713−1726
Telex: None
Commercial Telegraphic Address:
METEO WASHINGTON DC

1.2 Meteorological Offices

1.2.1 FAA Flight Service Stations

1.2.1.1 A complete listing of FAA Flight Service Stations and their telephone numbers is contained in the Airport/Facility Directory. Additionally, communications data and en route services provided by FAA Flight Service Stations are contained in the same publication. Similar information for the Pacific and Alaskan areas is contained in the Pacific and Alaskan Supplements. (See GEN 3.2, Aeronautical Charts.)

1.3 Climatological Summaries

1.3.1 Requests for copies of climatological summaries are made available through the:

National Climatic Data Center
Department of Commerce
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
Environmental Data Services Branch
Federal Building
Asheville, North Carolina 28801

2. Area of Responsibility

2.1 The National Weather Service (NWS) is responsible for providing meteorological services for the 50 states of the U.S., its external territories, and possessions.

2.2 International Flight Documentation Sites. Airports listed below are designated as international flight documentation sites.

TBL GEN 3.5−1

Location	Airport Name	Indicator
Anchorage, AK	Anchorage International	PANC
Atlanta, GA	William B. Hartsfield International	KATL
Baltimore, MD	Baltimore−Washington International	KBWI
Boston, MA	General Edward Lawrence Logan International	KBOS
Charlotte, NC	Charlotte/Douglas International	KCLT
Chicago, IL	O'Hare International	KORD
Cincinnati, OH	Cincinnati/Northern Kentucky International	KCVG
Dallas−Ft. Worth, TX	Dallas−Ft. Worth International	KDFW
Detroit, MI	Detroit Metropolitan Wayne County	KDTW
Fairbanks, AK	Fairbanks International	PAFA
Guam	Guam/Agana Naval Air Station	NOCD AGANA
Hartford, CT	Bradley International	KBDL
Houston, TX	George Bush Intercontinental/Houston	KIAH
Kahului, HI	Kahului	PHOG
Las Vegas, NV	McCarran International	KLAS
Los Angeles, CA	Los Angeles International	KLAX
Miami, FL	Miami International	KMIA
Minneapolis, MN	Minneapolis−St. Paul International (Wold−Chamberlain)	KMSP
New Orleans, LA	New Orleans International (Moisant Field)	KMSY
New York, NY	John F. Kennedy International	KJFK
Newark, NJ	Newark International	KEWR
Orlando, FL	Orlando International	KMCO
Pago Pago, American Samoa	Pago Pago International	NSTU
Philadelphia, PA	Philadelphia International	KPHL
Pittsburgh, PA	Pittsburgh International	KPIT
Portland, OR	Portland International	KPDX
Raleigh−Durham, NC	Raleigh−Durham International	KRDU
San Francisco, CA	San Francisco International	KSFO
San Juan, PR	Luis Munoz Marin International	TJSJ
Seattle, WA	Seattle−Tacoma International	KSEA
Tampa, FL	Tampa International	KTPA
Washington, DC	Washington Dulles International	KIAD

2.2.1 Climatological information, basically in the form of climatological summaries, is available at all designated international airports in the U.S.

2.2.2 Flight documentation is provided in the form of copies of facsimile charts, copies of teletype−writer forecasts, and airport forecast decode sheets. Flight documentation materials are available at all destination regular airport meteorological stations. English is the language used for all U.S. flight documentation. Briefings can be provided either in person or received by telephone at all airport meteorological offices.

2.2.3 All airport forecasts (TAF) prepared for U.S. international airports cover the following validity periods: 00−24 UTC, 06−06 UTC, 12−12 UTC, and 18−18 UTC. At the present time, specific landing forecasts are not made for any U.S. airport. The portion of the airport's TAF valid closest to the time of landing is used in lieu of a landing forecast.

2.2.4 Supplementary information available at U.S. meteorological airport offices includes extended weather and severe weather outlooks, pilot reports, runway braking action reports (during the winter), relative humidity, times of sunrise and sunset, surface and upper air analyses, radar echo charts, and forecasts of maximum and minimum surface temperatures.

2.2.5 All meteorological offices shown as taking routine aviation observations also take unscheduled special aviation observations when meteorological conditions warrant.

3. Types of Service Provided

3.1 Area Forecast Charts (Facsimile Form)

3.1.1 The U.S. has one Area Forecast Center, the National Center for Environmental Predictions (NCEP), located in Suitland, Maryland. The NCEP prepares current weather, significant weather, forecast weather, constant pressure, and tropopause−vertical wind shear charts for the U.S., the Caribbean and Northern South America, the North Atlantic, and the North Pacific areas. The NCEP also prepares a constant pressure and tropopause−vertical wind shear chart for Canada.

3.2 Local and Regional Aviation Forecasts (Printed Form)

3.2.1 Numerous forecasts and weather advisories are prepared which serve local and regional areas of the U.S. These forecasts are generally prepared by the NWS on a scheduled basis or, as in the case of severe weather advisories, as needed. These forecasts are Area Forecast (FA), Airport Forecast (TAF), Severe Weather Forecast (WW), Hurricane Advisories (WT), Winds and Temperature Aloft Forecast (FD), Simplified Surface Analyses (AS), 12− and 24−Hour Prognoses (FS), and flight advisory notices, such as SIGMETs (WS), AIRMETs (WA), Center Weather Advisories (CWA), and Radar Weather Reports (SD).

3.3 Preflight Briefing Services

3.3.1 Preflight briefing services and flight documentation are provided through the FAA's Automated Flight Service Stations (AFSS).

3.4 National Weather Service Aviation Products

3.4.1 Weather service to aviation is a joint effort of the NWS, the FAA, the military weather services, and other aviation oriented groups and individuals. The NWS maintains an extensive surface, upper air, and radar weather observing program and a nationwide aviation weather forecasting service. The majority of pilot weather briefings are provided by FAA personnel at Flight Service Stations (AFSS/FSS). Surface weather observations are taken by the NWS and NWS−certified FAA, contract, and supplemental observers and by automated observing systems. (See paragraph 7, Weather Observing Programs.)

3.4.2 Weather element values may be expressed by using different measurement systems depending on several factors including the user of the weather products; i.e., the general public, aviation interests, international services, or a combination of these users. FIG GEN 3.5−1, Weather Elements Conversion Tables, provides conversion tables for the weather elements that will be most often encountered by pilots.

FIG GEN 3.5−1

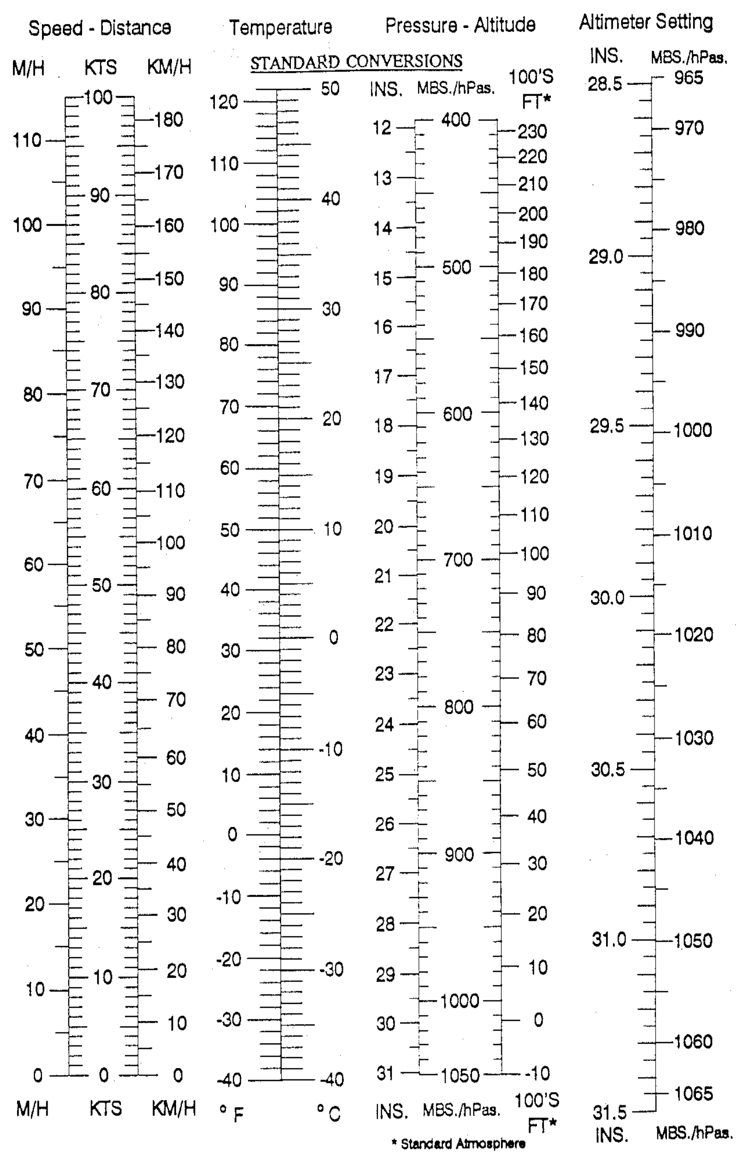
Weather Elements Conversion Tables

TIME

STANDARD TO UTC

Eastern	+ 5 hr = UTC
Central	+ 6 hr = UTC
Mountain	+ 7 hr = UTC
Pacific	+ 8 hr = UTC
Alaskan	+ 9 hr = UTC
Hawaii & Aleutian Islands	+ 10 hr = UTC

Subtract one hour for Daylight Time



WINDSPEED

MPH	KNOTS
1-2	1-2
3-8	3-7
9-14	8-12
15-20	13-17
21-25	18-22
26-31	23-27
32-37	28-32
38-43	33-37
44-49	38-42
50-54	43-47
55-60	48-52
61-66	53-57
67-71	58-62
72-77	63-57
78-83	68-72
84-89	73-77
119-123	103-107

Knots x 1.15 = Miles Per Hour
Miles Per Hour x 0.869 = Knots

3.5 FAA Weather Services

3.5.1 The FAA maintains a nationwide network of AFSSs/FSSs to serve the weather needs of pilots. In addition, NWS meteorologists are assigned to all Air Route Traffic Control Centers (ARTCCs) as part the Center Weather Service Unit (CWSU). They provide advisory service and short−term forecasts (nowcasts) to support the needs of the FAA and other users of the national airspace system.

3.5.2 The primary source of preflight weather briefings is an individual briefing obtained from a briefer at the AFSS/FSS. These briefings, which are tailored to your specific flight, are available 24 hours a day through the use of toll free lines (INWATS). Numbers for these services can be found in the Airport/Facility Directory under the "FAA and NWS Telephone Numbers" section. They are also listed in the U.S. Government section of your local telephone directory under Department of Transportation, Federal Aviation Administration or Department of Commerce, National Weather Service. See paragraph 3.7, Preflight Briefing, for the types of preflight briefings available and the types of information contained in each.

3.5.3 Other Sources of Weather Information

3.5.3.1 Continuously updated recorded weather information for short or local flights is available through the Transcribed Weather Broadcast (TWEB), telephone access to the TWEB (TEL−TWEB), and the Telephone Information Briefing Service (TIBS). Separate paragraphs in this section give additional information about these services.

3.5.3.2 Weather and aeronautical information is also available from numerous private industry sources on an individual or contract pay basis. Information on how to obtain this service should be available from local pilot organizations.

3.5.3.3 The Direct User Access System (DUATS) can be accessed by U.S. certified pilots with a current medical certificate toll−free via personal computer. Pilots can receive alpha−numeric preflight weather data and file domestic VFR and IFR flight plans. The following are the contract DUATS vendors:

GTE Information Federal Systems
15000 Conference Center Drive
Chantilly, VA 22021−3808
Computer Modem Access Number:
For filing flight plans and obtaining weather briefings: 1−800−767−9989
For customer service: 1−800−345−3828

Data Transformation Corporation
108−D Greentree Road
Turnersville, NJ 08012
Computer Modem Access Number:
For filing flight plans and obtaining weather briefings: 1−800−245−3828
For customer service: 1−800−243−3828

3.5.4 Inflight weather information is available from any AFSS/FSS within radio range. The common frequency for all AFSSs is 122.2. Discrete frequencies for individual stations are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory. See paragraph 6 for information on broadcasts. En Route Flight Advisory Service (EFAS) is provided to serve the non−routine weather needs of pilots in flight. See paragraph 3.8, En Route Flight Advisory Service (EFAS), for details on this service.

3.6 Use of Aviation Weather Products

3.6.1 Air carriers and operators certificated under the provisions of 14 CFR Part 119 are required to use the aeronautical weather information systems defined in the Operations Specifications issued to that certificate holder by the FAA. These systems may utilize basic FAA/National Weather Service (NWS) weather services, contractor− or operator−proprietary weather services and/or Enhanced Weather Information System (EWINS) when approved in the Operations Specifications. As an integral part of this system approval, the procedures for collecting, producing and disseminating aeronautical weather information, as well as the crew member and dispatcher training to support the use of system weather products, must be accepted or approved.

3.6.2 Operators not certificated under the provisions of 14 CFR Part 119 are encouraged to use FAA/NWS products through Flight Service Stations, Direct User Access Terminal System (DUATS), and/or Flight Information Services Data Link (FISDL).

3.6.3 The suite of available aviation weather product types is expanding, with the development of new sensor systems, algorithms and forecast models. The FAA and NWS, supported by the National Center for Atmospheric Research and the Forecast Systems Laboratory, develop and implement new aviation weather product types through a comprehensive process known as the Aviation Weather Technology Transfer process. This process ensures that user needs, and technical and operational readiness requirements are met as experimental product types mature to operational application.

3.6.4 The development of new weather products coupled with increased access to these products via the public Internet, created confusion within the aviation community regarding the relationship between regulatory requirements and new weather products. Consequently, FAA differentiates between those weather products that may be utilized to comply with regulatory requirements and those that may only be used to improve situational awareness. To clarify the proper use of aviation weather products to meet the requirements of 14 CFR, FAA defines weather products as follows:

3.6.4.1 Primary Weather Product. An aviation weather product that meets all the regulatory requirements and safety needs for use in making flight related, aviation weather decisions.

3.6.4.2 Supplementary Weather Product. An aviation weather product that may be used for enhanced situational awareness. If utilized, a supplementary weather product must only be used in conjunction with one or more primary weather product. In addition, the FAA may further restrict the use of supplementary aviation weather products through limitations described in the product label.

NOTE−
An aviation weather product produced by the Federal Government is a primary product unless designated as a supplementary product by FAA.

3.6.5 In developing the definitions of primary and supplementary weather products, it is not the intent of FAA to change or increase the regulatory burden. Rather, the definitions are meant to eliminate confusion by differentiating between weather products that may be utilized to meet regulatory requirements and other weather products that may only be used to improve situational awareness.

3.6.6 All flight−related, aviation weather decisions must be based on primary weather products. Supplementary weather products augment the primary products by providing additional weather information but may not be used as stand−alone weather products to meet aviation weather regulatory requirements or without the relevant primary products. When discrepancies exist between primary and supplementary weather products describing the same weather phenomena, users must base flight−related decisions on the primary weather product. Furthermore, multiple primary products may be necessary to meet all aviation weather regulatory requirements.

3.6.7 The development of enhanced communications capabilities, most notably the Internet, has allowed pilots access to an ever−increasing range of weather service providers and proprietary products. The FAA has identified three distinct types of weather information available to pilots and operators.

3.6.7.1 Observations. Raw weather data collected by some type of sensor suite including surface and airborne observations, radar, lightning, satellite imagery, and profilers.

3.6.7.2 Analysis. Enhanced depiction and/or interpretation of observed weather data.

3.6.7.3 Forecasts. Predictions of the development and/or movement of weather phenomena based on meteorological observations and various mathematical models.

3.6.8 Not all sources of aviation weather information are able to provide all three types of weather information. The FAA has determined that operators and pilots may utilize the following approved sources of aviation weather information:

3.6.8.1 Federal Government. The FAA and NWS collect raw weather data, analyze the observations, and produce forecasts. The FAA and NWS disseminate meteorological observations, analyses, and forecasts through a variety of systems. In addition, the Federal Government is the only approval authority for sources of weather observations; for example, contract towers and airport operators may be approved by the Federal Government to provide weather observations.

3.6.8.2 Enhanced Weather Information System (EWINS). An EWINS is an FAA approved, proprietary system for tracking, evaluating, reporting, and forecasting the presence or lack of adverse weather phenomena. An EWINS is authorized to produce flight movement forecasts, adverse weather phenomena forecasts, and other meteorological advisories.

3.6.8.3 Commercial Weather Information Providers. In general, commercial providers produce proprietary weather products based on NWS/FAA products with formatting and layout modifications but no material changes to the weather information itself. This is also referred to as "repackaging." In addition, commercial providers may produce analyses, forecasts, and other proprietary weather products that substantially alter the information contained in government−produced products. However, those proprietary weather products that substantially alter government−produced weather products or information, may only be approved for use by Part 121 and Part 135 certificate holders if the commercial provider is EWINS qualified.

NOTE−
Commercial weather information providers contracted by FAA to provide weather observations, analyses, and forecasts (e.g., contract towers) are included in the Federal Government category of approved sources by virtue of maintaining required technical and quality assurance standards under Federal Government oversight.

3.6.9 Pilots and operators should be aware that weather services provided by entities other than FAA, NWS or their contractors (such as the DUATS and FISDL providers) may not meet FAA/NWS quality control standards. Hence, operators and pilots contemplating using such services should request and/or review an appropriate description of services and provider disclosure. This should include, but is not limited to, the type of weather product (e.g., current weather or forecast weather), the currency of the product (i.e., product issue and valid times), and the relevance of the product. Pilots and operators should be cautious when using unfamiliar products, or products not supported by FAA/NWS technical specifications.

NOTE−
When in doubt, consult with a FAA Flight Service Station Specialist.

3.6.10 As a point of clarification, Advisory Circular 00−62, Internet Communications of Aviation Weather and NOTAMS, describes the process for a weather information provider to become a Qualified Internet Communications Provider (QICP) and only applies to 14 CFR Part 121 and Part 135 certificate holders. Therefore, pilots conducting operations under 14 CFR Part 91 may access weather products via DUATS and the public Internet.

3.7 Preflight Briefing

3.7.1 Flight Service Stations are the primary source of obtaining preflight briefings and inflight weather information. Flight Service Specialists are qualified and certificated by the NWS as Pilot Weather Briefers. They are not authorized to make original forecasts, but are authorized to translate and interpret available forecasts (TAF) and reports (METAR/ SPECI) directly into terms describing the weather conditions which you can expect along your flight route and at your destination. Available aviation weather reports and forecasts are displayed at each AFSS/FSS. Some of the larger AFSSs/FSSs provide a separate display for pilot use. Pilots should feel free to use these self−briefing displays where available, or to ask for a briefing or for assistance from the specialist on duty. Three basic types of preflight briefings are available: Standard Briefing, Abbreviated Briefing, and Outlook Briefing. You should specify to the briefer the type of briefing you want, along with appropriate background information. This will enable the briefer to tailor the information to your intended flight. The following paragraphs describe the types of briefings available and the information provided in each.

3.7.2 Standard Briefing. You should request a Standard Briefing any time you are planning a flight and you have not received a previous briefing or have not received preliminary information through mass dissemination media such as TWEB. The briefer will automatically provide the following information in the sequence listed, except as noted, when it is applicable to your proposed flight.

3.7.2.1 Adverse Conditions. Significant meteorological and aeronautical information that might influence the pilot to alter the proposed flight; e.g., hazardous weather conditions, runway closures, NAVAID outages.

3.7.2.2 VFR Flight Not Recommended. When VFR flight is proposed and sky conditions or visibilities are present or forecast, surface or aloft, that in the briefer's judgment would make flight under visual flight rules doubtful, the briefer will describe the conditions, affected locations, and use the phrase "VFR flight not recommended." This recommendation is advisory in nature. The final decision as to whether the flight can be conducted safely rests solely with the pilot.

3.7.2.3 Synopsis. A brief statement describing the type, location, and movement of weather systems and/or air masses which might affect the proposed flight.

NOTE−
The first 3 elements of a standard briefing may be combined in any order when the briefer believes it will help to describe conditions more clearly.

3.7.2.4 Current Conditions. Reported weather conditions applicable to the flight will be summarized from all available sources; e.g., METARs, PIREPs, RAREPs. This element may be omitted if the proposed time of departure is beyond two hours, unless the information is specifically requested by the pilot.

3.7.2.5 En Route Forecast. En route conditions forecast for the proposed route are summarized in logical order; i.e., departure−climbout, en route, and descent.

3.7.2.6 Destination Forecast. The destination forecast (TAF) for the planned estimated time of arrival (ETA). Any significant changes within 1 hour before and after the planned arrival are included.

3.7.2.7 Winds Aloft. Forecast winds aloft for the proposed route will be provided using degrees of the compass. The briefer will interpolate wind directions and speeds between levels and stations as necessary to provide expected conditions at planned altitudes.

3.7.2.8 Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs)

a) Available NOTAM (D) information pertinent to the proposed flight.

b) Available NOTAM (L) information pertinent to the departure and/or local area, and pertinent FDC NOTAMs.

c) FSS briefers do not provide FDC NOTAM information for special instrument approach procedures unless specifically asked. Pilots authorized by the FAA to use special instrument approach procedures must specifically request FDC NOTAM information for these procedures.

NOTE−
NOTAM information may be combined with current conditions when the briefer believes it is logical to do so.

NOTE−
NOTAM (D) information and Flight Data Center NOTAMs which have been published in the Notices to Airmen Publication are not included in pilot briefings unless a review of this publication is specifically requested by the pilot. For complete flight information you are urged to review both the Notices to Airmen Publication and the Airport/Facility Directory in addition to obtaining a briefing.

3.7.2.9 Air Traffic Control (ATC) Delays. Any known ATC delays and flow control advisories which might affect the proposed flight.

3.7.2.10 Pilots may obtain the following from Flight Service Station briefers upon request:

a) Information on military training routes (MTR) and military operations area (MOA) activity within the flight plan area and a 100 NM extension around the flight plan area.

NOTE−
Pilots are encouraged to request updated information from en route FSSs.

b) A review of the Notices to Airmen publication for pertinent NOTAMs and Special Notices.

c) Approximate density altitude data.

d) Information regarding such items as air traffic services and rules, customs/immigration procedures, ADIZ rules, and search and rescue.

e) LORAN−C NOTAMs, available military NOTAMs, runway friction measurement value NOTAMs.

f) GPS RAIM availability for 1 hour before to 1 hour after ETA, or a time specified by the pilot.

g) Other assistance as required.

3.7.3 Abbreviated Briefing. Request an Abbreviated Briefing when you need information to supplement mass disseminated data, to update a previous briefing, or when you need only one or two specific items. Provide the briefer with appropriate background information, the time you received the previous information, and/or the specific items needed. You should indicate the source of the information already received so that the briefer can limit the briefing to the information that you have not received, and/or appreciable changes in meteorological/aeronautical conditions since your previous briefing. To the extent possible, the briefer will provide the information in the sequence shown for a Standard Briefing. If you request only one or two specific items, the briefer will advise you if adverse conditions are present or forecast. Adverse conditions contain both meteorological and aeronautical information. Details on these conditions will be provided at your request.

3.7.4 Outlook Briefing. You should request an Outlook Briefing whenever your proposed time of departure is 6 or more hours from the time of the briefing. The briefer will provide available forecast data applicable to the proposed flight. This type of briefing is provided for planning purposes only. You should obtain a Standard or Abbreviated Briefing prior to departure in order to obtain such items as adverse conditions, current conditions, updated forecasts, winds aloft, and NOTAMs.

3.7.5 Inflight Briefing. You are encouraged to obtain your preflight briefing by telephone or in person before departure. In those cases where you need to obtain a preflight briefing or an update to a previous briefing by radio, you should contact the nearest AFSS/FSS to obtain this information. After communications have been established, advise the specialist of the type briefing you require and provide appropriate background information. You will be provided information as specified in the above paragraphs, depending upon the type briefing requested. In addition, the specialist will recommend shifting to the flight watch frequency when conditions along the intended route indicate that it would be advantageous for you to do so.

3.7.6 Following any briefing, feel free to ask for any information that you or the briefer may have missed. It helps to save your questions until the briefing has been completed. This way the briefer is able to present the information in a logical sequence and lessens the chance of important items being overlooked.

3.8 En Route Flight Advisory Service (EFAS)

3.8.1 EFAS is a service specifically designed to provide en route aircraft with timely and meaningful weather advisories pertinent to the type of flight intended, route of flight, and altitude. In conjunction with this service, EFAS is also a central collection and distribution point for pilot−reported weather information. EFAS is provided by specially trained specialists in selected AFSSs/FSSs controlling multiple remote communications outlets covering a large geographical area and is normally available throughout the conterminous U.S. and Puerto Rico from 6 a.m. to 10 p.m. EFAS provides communications capabilities for aircraft flying at 5,000 feet AGL to 17,500 feet MSL on a common frequency of 122.0 MHz. Discrete EFAS frequencies have been established to ensure communications coverage from 18,000 through 45,000 MSL serving in each specific ARTCC area. These discrete frequencies may be used below 18,000 feet when coverage permits reliable communication.

NOTE−
When an EFAS outlet is located in a time zone different from the zone in which the flight watch control station is located, the availability of service may be plus or minus 1 hour from the normal operating hours.

3.8.2 Contact flight watch by using the name of the ARTCC facility serving the area of your location, followed by your aircraft identification and the name of the nearest VOR to your position. The specialist needs to know this approximate location to select the most appropriate outlet for communications coverage.

EXAMPLE−
Cleveland flight watch, Cessna One Three Four Two Kilo, Mansfield V−O−R, over.

3.8.3 Charts depicting the location of the flight watch control stations (parent facility) and the outlets they use are contained in the Airport/Facility Directory. If you do not know in which flight watch area you are flying, initiate contact by using the words "FLIGHT WATCH," your aircraft identification, and the name of the nearest VOR. The facility will respond using the name of the flight watch facility.

EXAMPLE−
Flight watch, Cessna One Two Three Four Kilo, Mansfield V−O−R,over.

3.8.4 The AFSSs/FSSs which have implemented En Route Flight Advisory Service are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory.

3.8.5 EFAS is not intended to be used for filing or closing flight plans, position reporting, getting complete preflight briefings, or obtaining random weather reports and forecasts. En route flight advisories are tailored to the phase of flight that begins after climb−out and ends with descent to land. Immediate destination weather and terminal airport forecasts will be provided on request. Pilots requesting information not within the scope of flight watch will be advised of the appropriate AFSS/FSS frequency to contact to obtain the information. Pilot participation is essential to the success of EFAS by providing a continuous exchange of information on weather, winds, turbulence, flight visibility, icing or other hazardous conditions between pilots and flight watch specialists. Pilots are encouraged to report good weather as well as bad, and to confirm both expected conditions and unexpected conditions to EFAS facilities.

3.9 Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories

3.9.1 Background

3.9.1.1 Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories are forecasts to advise en route aircraft of development of potentially hazardous weather. All inflight aviation weather advisories in the conterminous U.S. are issued by the Aviation Weather Center (AWC) in Kansas City, Missouri. The Weather Forecast Office (WFO) in Honolulu issues advisories for the Hawaiian Islands. In Alaska, the Alaska Aviation Weather Unit (AAWU) issues inflight aviation weather advisories. All heights are referenced MSL, except in the case of ceilings (CIG) which indicate AGL.

3.9.1.2 There are three types of inflight aviation weather advisories: the Significant Meteorological Information (SIGMET), the Convective SIGMET and the Airmen's Meteorological Information (AIRMET). All of these advisories use the same location identifiers (either VORs, airports, or well−known geographic areas) to describe the hazardous weather areas. See FIG GEN 3.5−2 and FIG GEN 3.5−3. Graphics with improved clarity can be found in Advisory Circular AC 00−45E, Aviation Weather Services, which is available on the following web site: http://www.faa.gov/avr/afs/afs400.

3.9.1.3 Two other weather products supplement these Inflight Aviation Weather Advisories:

a) The Severe Weather Watch Bulletins (WWs), (with associated Alert Messages) (AWW), and

b) The Center Weather Advisories (CWAs).

3.9.2 SIGMET (WS)/AIRMET (WA)

SIGMETs/AIRMETs are issued corresponding to the Area Forecast (FA) areas described in FIG GEN 3.5−4, FIG GEN 3.5−5 and FIG GEN 3.5−6. The maximum forecast period is 4 hours for SIGMETs and 6 hours for AIRMETs. Both advisories are considered "widespread" because they must be either affecting or be forecasted to affect an area of at least 3,000 square miles at any one time. However, if the total area to be affected during the forecast period is very large, it could be that in actuality only a small portion of this total area would be affected at any one time.

FIG GEN 3.5−2

Inflight Advisory Plotting Chart

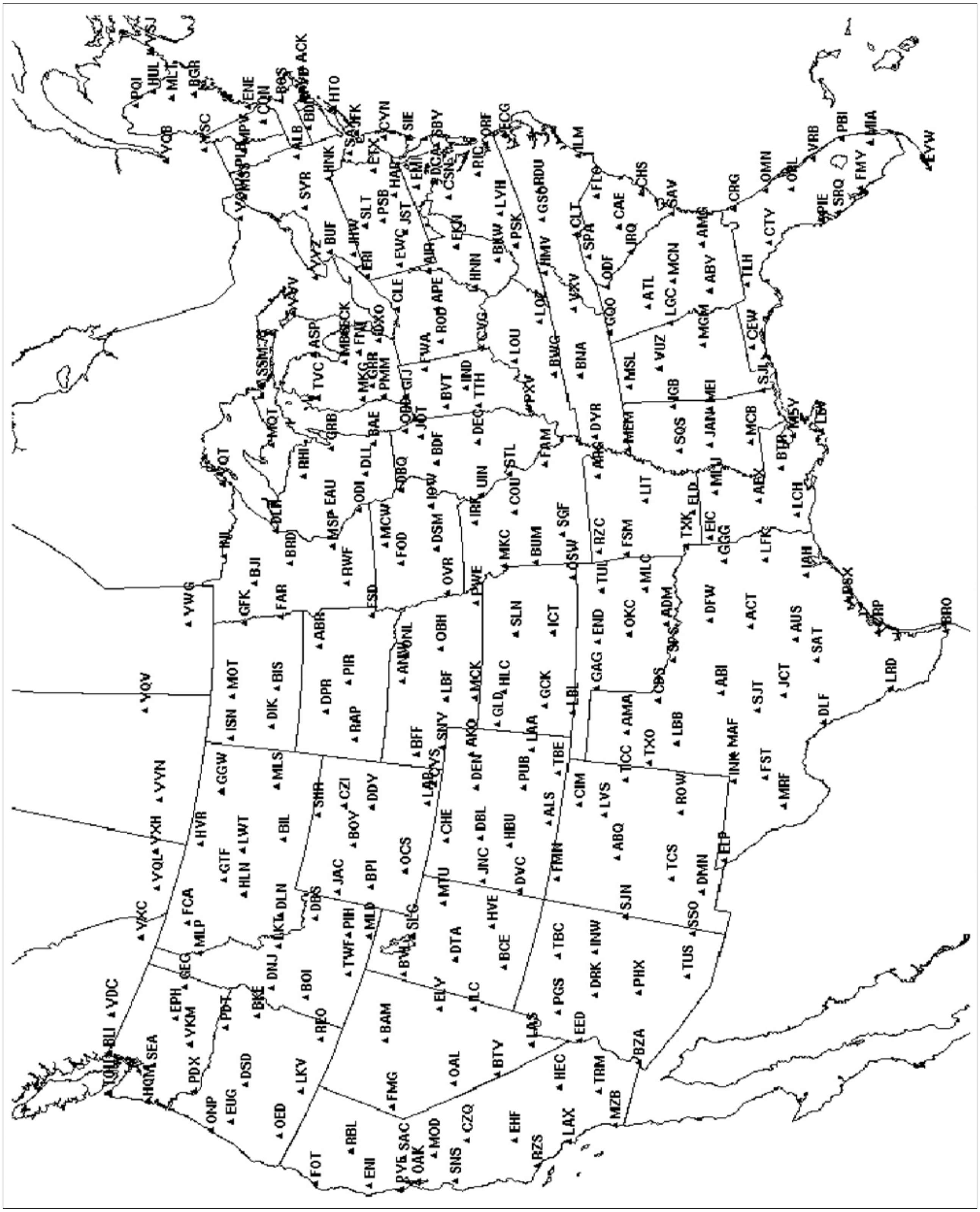


FIG GEN 3.5−3
Geographical Areas and Terrain Features

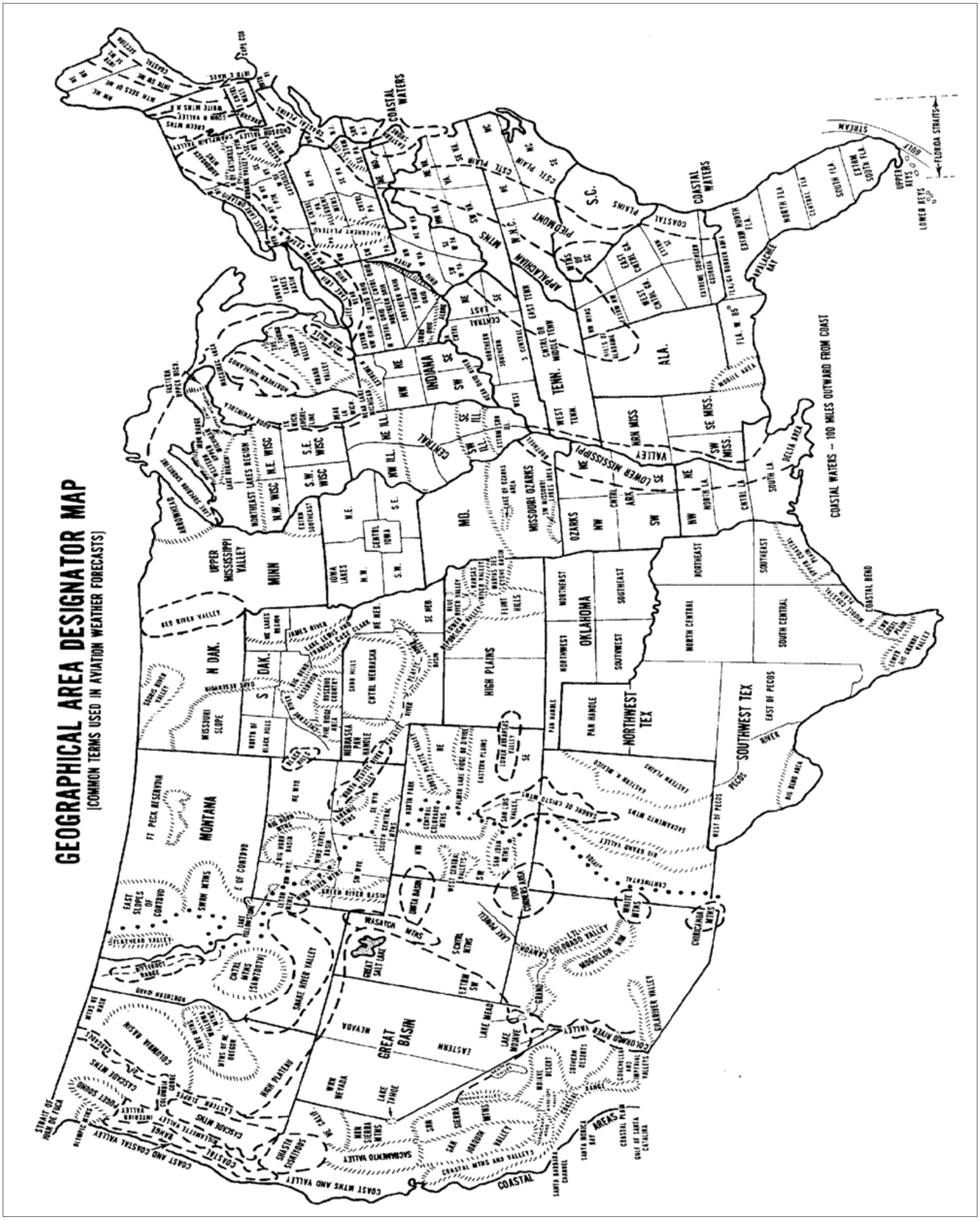


FIG GEN 3.5−4

Aviation Area Forecasts
FA Locations − Contiguous United States

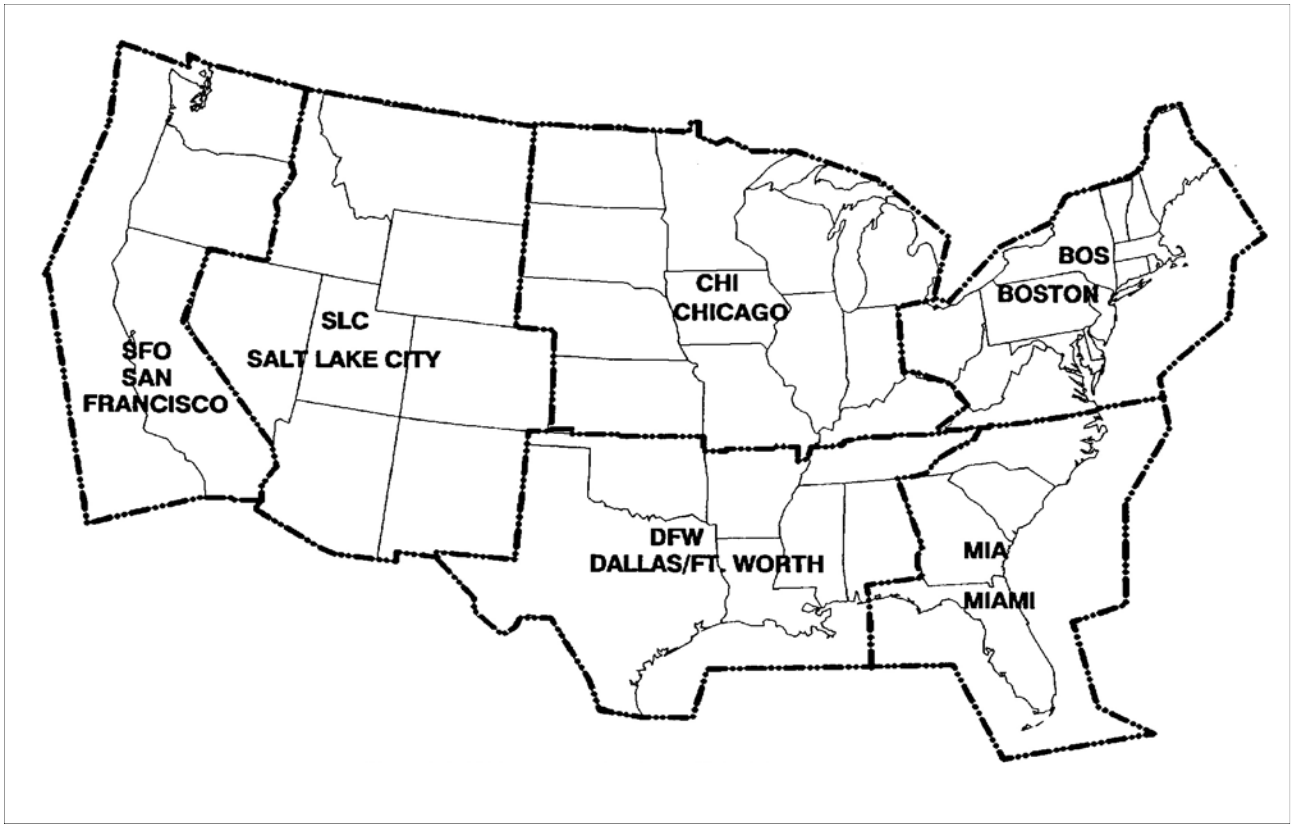


FIG GEN 3.5−5

Alaska Area Forecast Sectors

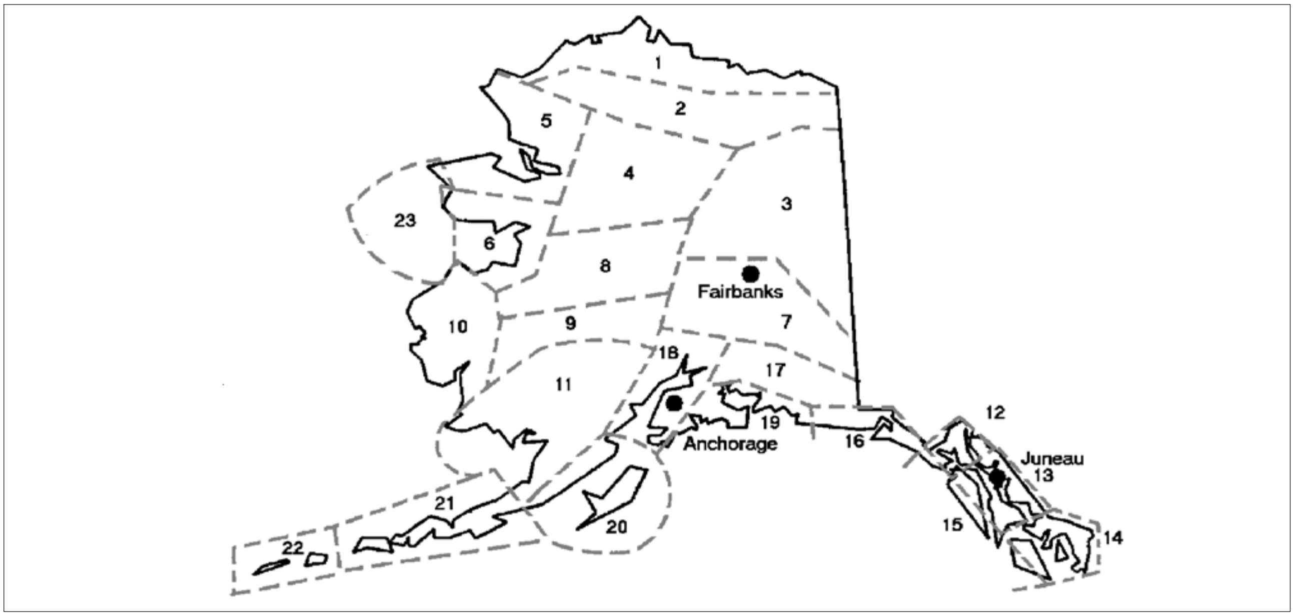
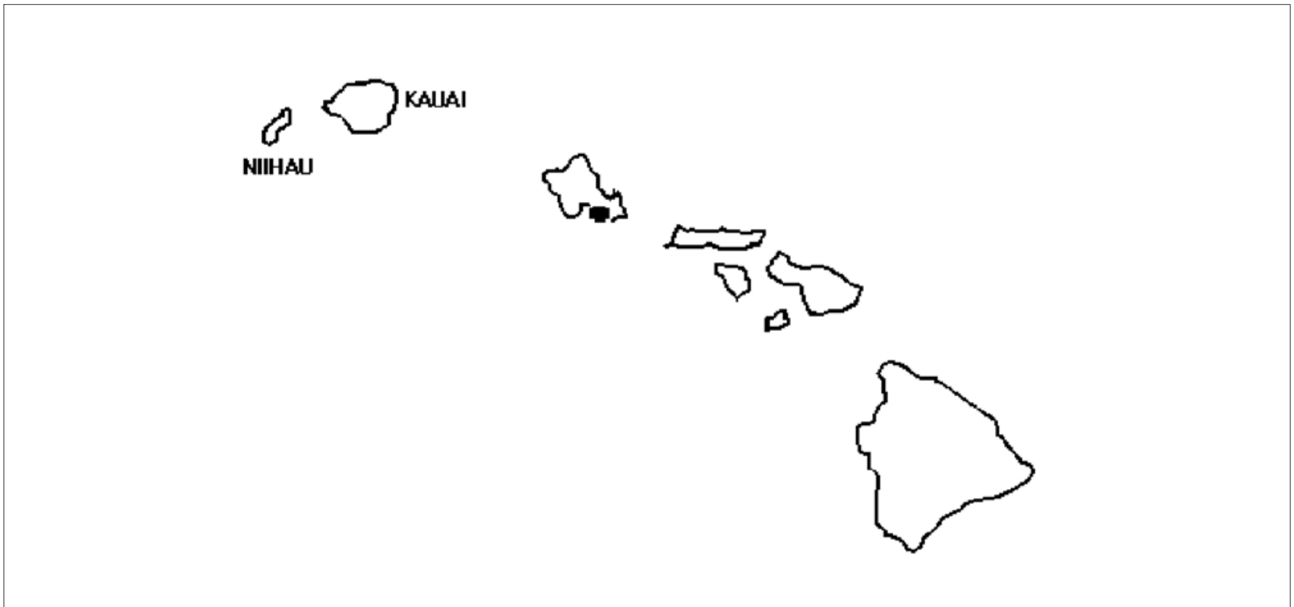


FIG GEN 3.5−6

Hawaii Area Forecast Locations



3.9.3 SIGMET (WS)

3.9.3.1 A SIGMET advises of nonconvective weather that is potentially hazardous to all aircraft. SIGMETs are unscheduled products that are valid for 4 hours. However, conditions that are associated with hurricanes are valid for 6 hours. Unscheduled updates and corrections are issued as necessary. In the conterminous U.S., SIGMETs are issued when the following phenomena occur or are expected to occur:

a) Severe icing not associated with thunderstorms.

b) Severe or extreme turbulence or clear air turbulence (CAT) not associated with thunderstorms.

c) Dust storms or sandstorms lowering surface or inflight visibilities to below 3 miles.

d) Volcanic ash.

3.9.3.2 In Alaska and Hawaii, SIGMETs are also issued for:

a) Tornadoes.

b) Lines of thunderstorms.

c) Embedded thunderstorms.

d) Hail greater than or equal to $^3/_4$ inch in diameter.

3.9.3.3 SIGMETs are identified by an alphabetic designator from November through Yankee excluding Sierra and Tango. (Sierra, Tango, and Zulu are reserved for AIRMETs.) The first issuance of a SIGMET will be labeled as UWS (Urgent Weather SIGMET). Subsequent issuances are at the forecasters discretion. Issuance for the same phenomenon will be sequentially numbered, using the original designator until the phenomenon ends. For example, the first issuance in the Chicago (CHI) FA area for phenomenon moving from the Salt Lake City (SLC) FA area will be SIGMET Papa 3, if the previous two issuances, Papa 1 and Papa 2, had been in the SLC FA area. Note that no two different phenomena across the country can have the same alphabetic designator at the same time.

EXAMPLE−
Example of a SIGMET:
BOSR WS 050600
SIGMET ROMEO 2 VALID UNTIL 051000
ME NH VT
FROM CAR TO YSJ TO CON TO MPV TO CAR
MOD TO OCNL SEV TURB BLW 080 EXP DUE TO STG NWLY FLOW. CONDS CONTG BYD
1000Z.

3.9.3.4 Convective SIGMET (WST)

a) Convective SIGMETs are issued in the conterminous U.S. for any of the following:

1) Severe thunderstorm due to:

(a) Surface winds greater than or equal to 50 knots.

(b) Hail at the surface greater than or equal to $^3/_4$ inches in diameter.

(c) Tornadoes.

2) Embedded thunderstorms.

3) A line of thunderstorms.

4) Thunderstorms producing precipitation greater than or equal to heavy precipitation affecting 40 percent or more of an area at least 3,000 square miles.

b) Any convective SIGMET implies severe or greater turbulence, severe icing, and low−level wind shear. A convective SIGMET may be issued for any convective situation that the forecaster feels is hazardous to all categories of aircraft.

c) Convective SIGMET bulletins are issued for the western (W), central (C), and eastern (E) United States. (Convective SIGMETs are not issued for Alaska or Hawaii.) The areas are separated at 87 and 107 degrees west longitude with sufficient overlap to cover most cases when the phenomenon crosses the boundaries. Bulletins are issued hourly at H+55. Special bulletins are issued at any time as required and updated at H+55. If no criteria meeting convective SIGMET requirements are observed or forecasted, the message "CONVECTIVE SIGMET... NONE" will be issued for each area at H+55. Individual convective SIGMETs for each area (W, C, E) are numbered sequentially from number one each day, beginning at 00Z. A convective SIGMET for a continuing phenomenon will be reissued every hour at H+55 with a new number. The text of the bulletin consists of either an observation and a forecast or just a forecast. The forecast is valid for up to 2 hours.

EXAMPLE−
Example of a Convective SIGMET:
MKCC WST 251655
CONVECTIVE SIGMET 54C
VALID UNTIL 1855Z
WI IL
FROM 30E MSN−40ESE DBQ
DMSHG LINE TS 15 NM WIDE MOV FROM 30025KT. TOPS TO FL450. WIND GUSTS TO 50 KT POSS.

CONVECTIVE SIGMET 55C
VALID UNTIL 1855Z
WI IA
FROM 30NNW MSN−30SSE MCW
DVLPG LINE TS 10 NM WIDE MOV FROM 30015KT. TOPS TO FL300.

CONVECTIVE SIGMET 56C
VALID UNTIL 1855Z
MT ND SD MN IA MI
LINE TS 15 NM WIDE MOV FROM 27020KT. TOPS TO FL380.
OUTLOOK VALID 151855−252255
FROM 60NW ISN−INL−TVC−SBN−BRL−FSD−BIL−60N W ISN

IR STLT IMGRY SHOWS CNVTV CLD TOP TEMPS OVER SRN WI HAVE BEEN WARMING STEADILY INDCG A WKNG TREND. THIS ALSO REFLECTED BY LTST RADAR AND LTNG DATA. WKNG TREND OF PRESENT LN MAY CONT...HWVR NEW DVLPMT IS PSBL ALG OUTFLOW BDRY AND/OR OVR NE IA/SW WI BHD CURRENT ACT.
A SCND TS IS CONTG TO MOV EWD THRU ERN MT WITH NEW DVLPMT OCRG OVR CNTRL ND. MT ACT IS MOVG TWD MORE FVRBL AMS OVR THE WRN DAKS WHERE DWPTS ARE IN THE UPR 60S WITH LIFTED INDEX VALUES TO MS 6. TS EXPD TO INCR IN COVERAGE AND INTSTY DURG AFTN HRS.
WST ISSUANCES EXPD TO BE RQRD THRUT AFTN HRS WITH INCRG PTNTL FOR STGR CELLS TO CONTAIN LRG HAIL AND PSBLY DMGG SFC WNDS.

3.9.3.5 International SIGMET

a) Some NWS offices have been designated by the ICAO as Meteorological Watch Offices (MWOs). These offices are responsible for issuing International SIGMETs for designated areas that include Alaska, Hawaii, portions of the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, and the Gulf of Mexico.

b) The offices which issue International SIGMETs are:

1) The AWC in Kansas City, Missouri.

2) The AAWU in Anchorage, Alaska.

3) The WFO in Honolulu, Hawaii.

4) The WFO on Guam Island in the Pacific Ocean.

c) These SIGMETs are considered "widespread" because they must be either affecting or be forecasted to affect an area of at least 3,000 square miles at any one time. The International SIGMET is issued for 12 hours for volcanic ash events, 6 hours for hurricanes and tropical storms, and 4 hours for all other events. Like the domestic SIGMETs, International SIGMETs are also identified by an alphabetic designator from Alpha through Mike and are numbered sequentially until that weather phenomenon ends. The criteria for an International SIGMET are:

1) Thunderstorms occurring in lines, embedded in clouds, or in large areas producing tornadoes or large hail.

2) Tropical cyclones.

3) Severe icing.

4) Severe or extreme turbulence.

5) Dust storms and sandstorms lowering visibilities to less than 3 miles.

6) Volcanic ash.

EXAMPLE−
Example of an International SIGMET:
WSNT06 KKCI 022014
SIGA0F
KZMA KZNY TJZS SIGMET FOXTROT 3 VALID 022015/030015 KKCI− MIAMI OCEANIC FIR NEW YORK OCEANIC FIR SAN JUAN FIR FRQ TS WI AREA BOUNDED BY 2711N6807W 2156N6654W 2220N7040W 2602N7208W 2711N6807W. TOPS TO FL470. MOV NE 15KT. WKN. BASED ON SAT AND LTG OBS.
MOSHER

3.9.3.6 AIRMET (WA)

a) AIRMETs (WAs) are advisories of significant weather phenomena but describe conditions at intensities lower than those which require the issuance of SIGMETs. AIRMETs are intended for dissemination to all pilots in the preflight and en route phase of flight to enhance safety. AIRMET Bulletins are issued on a scheduled basis every 6 hours beginning at 0145 UTC during Central Daylight Time and at 0245 UTC during Central Standard Time. Unscheduled updates and corrections are issued as necessary. Each AIRMET Bulletin contains any current AIRMETs in effect and an outlook for conditions expected after the AIRMET valid period. AIRMETs contain details about IFR, extensive mountain obscuration, turbulence, strong surface winds, icing, and freezing levels.

b) There are three AIRMETs: Sierra, Tango, and Zulu. After the first issuance each day, scheduled or unscheduled bulletins are numbered sequentially for easier identification.

1) AIRMET Sierra describes IFR conditions and/or extensive mountain obscurations.

2) AIRMET Tango describes moderate turbulence, sustained surface winds of 30 knots or greater, and/or nonconvective low−level wind shear.

3) AIRMET Zulu describes moderate icing and provides freezing level heights.

EXAMPLE−
Example of AIRMET Sierra issued for the Chicago FA area:
CHIS WA 121345
AIRMET SIERRA UPDT 3 FOR IFR AND MTN OBSCN VALID UNTIL 122000.
AIRMET IFR...SD NE MN IA MO WI LM MI IL IN KY
FROM 70NW RAP TO 50W RWF TO 50W MSN TO GRB TO MBS TO FWA TO CVG TO HNN TO TRI TO ARG TO 40SSW BRL TO OMA TO BFF TO 70NW RAP
OCNL CIG BLW 010/VIS BLW 3SM FG/BR. CONDS ENDG 15Z−17Z.

AIRMET MTN OBSCN...KY TN
FROM HNN TO TRI TO CHA TO LOZ TO HNN
MTNS OCNL OBSC CLDS/PCPN/BR. CONDS ENDG TN PTN AREA 18Z− 20Z..CONTG KY BYD 20Z..ENDG 02Z.

EXAMPLE−
Example of AIRMET Tango issued for the Salt Lake City FA area:
SLCT WA 121345
AIRMET TANGO UPDT 2 FOR TURB VALID UNTIL 122000.
AIRMET TURB...NV UT CO AZ NM
FROM LKV TO CHE TO ELP TO 60S TUS TO YUM TO EED TO RNO TO LKV OCNL MOD TURB BLW FL180 DUE TO MOD SWLY/WLY WNDS. CONDS CONTG BYD 20Z THRU 02Z.

AIRMET TURB...NV WA OR CA CSTL WTRS
FROM BLI TO REO TO BTY TO DAG TO SBA TO 120W FOT TO 120W TOU TO BLI
OCNL MOD TURB BTWN FL180 AND FL400 DUE TO WNDSHR ASSOCD WITH JTSTR. CONDS CONTG BYD 20Z THRU 02Z.

EXAMPLE−
Example of AIRMET Zulu issued for the San Francisco FA area:
SFOZ WA 121345
AIRMET ZULU UPDT 2 FOR ICE AND FRZLVL VALID UNTIL 122000.
AIRMET ICE...WA OR ID MT NV UT
FROM YQL TO SLC TO WMC TO LKV TO PDT TO YDC TO YQL
LGT OCNL MOD RIME/MXD ICGICIP BTWN FRZLVL AND FL220. FRZLVL 080−120. CONDS CONTG BYD 20Z THRU 02Z.

AIRMET ICE...WA OR
FROM YDC TO PDT TO LKV TO 80W MFR TO ONP TO TOU TO YDC
LGT OCNL MOD RIME/MXD ICGICIP BTWN FRZLVL AND FL180. FRZLVL 060−080. CONDS CONTG BYD

20Z THRU 02Z.

*FRZLVL...WA...060 CSTLN SLPG 100 XTRM E.
OR...060−070 CASCDS WWD. 070−095 RMNDR.
NRN CA...060−100 N OF A 30N FOT−40N RNO LN SLPG 100−110 RMNDR.*

3.9.3.7 Severe Weather Watch Bulletins (WWs) and Alert Messages (AWWs)

a) WWs define areas of possible severe thunderstorms or tornado activity. The bulletins are issued by the Storm Prediction Center (SPC) in Norman, OK. WWs are unscheduled and are issued as required.

b) A severe thunderstorm watch describes areas of expected severe thunderstorms. (Severe thunderstorm criteria are $^{3}/_{4}$−inch hail or larger and/or wind gusts of 50 knots [58 mph] or greater.)

c) A tornado watch describes areas where the threat of tornadoes exists.

d) In order to alert the WFOs, CWSUs, FSSs, and other users, a preliminary notification of a watch called the Alert Severe Weather Watch bulletin (AWW) is sent before the WW. (WFOs know this product as a SAW).

EXAMPLE−
Example of an AWW:
*MKC AWW 011734
WW 75 TORNADO TX OK AR 011800Z−020000Z
AXIS..80 STATUTE MILES EAST AND WEST OF A LINE..60ESE DAL/DALLAS TX/ − 30 NW ARG/ WALNUT RIDGE AR/
..AVIATION COORDS.. 70NM E/W /58W GGG − 25NW ARG/
HAIL SURFACE AND ALOFT..1 $^{3}/_{4}$ INCHES. WIND GUSTS..70 KNOTS. MAX TOPS TO 450. MEAN WIND VECTOR 24045.*

e) Soon after the AWW goes out, the actual watch bulletin itself is issued. A WW is in the following format:

1) Type of severe weather watch, watch area, valid time period, type of severe weather possible, watch axis, meaning of a watch, and a statement that persons should be on the lookout for severe weather.

2) Other watch information; i.e., references to previous watches.

3) Phenomena, intensities, hail size, wind speed (knots), maximum cumulonimbus (CB) tops, and estimated cell movement (mean wind vector).

4) Cause of severe weather.

5) Information on updating Convective Outlook (CA) products.

EXAMPLE−
Example of a WW:
*BULLETIN − IMMEDIATE BROADCAST REQUESTED
TORNADO WATCH NUMBER 381
STORM PREDICTION CENTER NORMAN OK
556 PM CDT MON JUN 2 1997
THE STORM PREDICTON CENTER HAS ISSUED A TORNADO WATCH FOR PORTIONS OF NORTHEAST NEW MEXICO TEXAS PANHANDLE
EFFECTIVE THIS MONDAY NIGHT AND TUESDAY MORNING FROM 630 PM UNTIL MIDNIGHT CDT.
TORNADOES...HAIL TO 2 $^{3}/_{4}$ INCHES IN DIAMETER...THUNDERSTORM WIND GUSTS TO 80 MPH...AND DANGEROUS LIGHTNING ARE POSSIBLE IN THESE AREAS.
THE TORNADO WATCH AREA IS ALONG AND 60 STATUTE MILES NORTH AND SOUTH OF A LINE FROM 50 MILES SOUTHWEST OF RATON NEW MEXICO TO 50 MILES EAST OF AMARILLO TEXAS.
REMEMBER...A TORNADO WATCH MEANS CONDITIONS ARE FAVORABLE FOR TORNADOES AND SEVERE THUNDERSTORMS IN AND CLOSE TO THE WATCH AREA. PERSONS IN THESE AREAS SHOULD BE ON THE LOOKOUT FOR THREATENING WEATHER CONDITIONS AND LISTEN FOR LATER STATEMENTS AND POSSIBLE WARNINGS.
OTHER WATCH INFORMATION...CONTINUE... WW 378...WW 379...WW 380
DISCUSSION...THUNDERSTORMS ARE INCREASING OVER NE NM IN MOIST SOUTHEASTERLY UPSLOPE FLOW. OUTFLOW BOUNDARY EXTENDS EASTWARD INTO THE TEXAS PANHANDLE AND EXPECT STORMS TO MOVE ESE ALONG AND NORTH OF THE BOUNDARY ON THE N EDGE OF THE CAP. VEERING WINDS WITH HEIGHT ALONG WITH INCREASGING MID LVL FLOW INDICATE A THREAT FOR SUPERCELLS.*

AVIATION...TORNADOES AND A FEW SEVERE THUNDERSTORMS WITH HAIL SURFACE AND ALOFT TO 2 $^{3}/_{4}$ INCHES. EXTREME TURBULENCE AND SURFACE WIND GUSTS TO 70 KNOTS. A FEW CUMULONIMBI WITH MAXIMUM TOPS TO 550. MEAN STORM MOTION VECTOR 28025.

f) Status reports are issued as needed to show progress of storms and to delineate areas no longer under the threat of severe storm activity. Cancellation bulletins are issued when it becomes evident that no severe weather will develop or that storms have subsided and are no longer severe.

g) When tornadoes or severe thunderstorms have developed, the local WFO office will issue the warnings covering those areas.

3.9.3.8 Center Weather Advisories (CWAs)

a) CWAs are unscheduled inflight, flow control, air traffic, and air crew advisory. By nature of its short lead time, the CWA is not a flight planning product. It is generally a nowcast for conditions beginning within the next two hours. CWAs will be issued:

1) As a supplement to an existing SIGMET, Convective SIGMET or AIRMET.

2) When an Inflight Advisory has not been issued but observed or expected weather conditions meet SIGMET/AIRMET criteria based on current pilot reports and reinforced by other sources of information about existing meteorological conditions.

3) When observed or developing weather conditions do not meet SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, or AIRMET criteria; e.g., in terms of intensity or area coverage, but current pilot reports or other weather information sources indicate that existing or anticipated meteorological phenomena will adversely affect the safe flow of air traffic within the ARTCC area of responsibility.

b) The following example is a CWA issued from the Kansas City, Missouri, ARTCC. The "3" after ZKC in the first line denotes this CWA has been issued for the third weather phenomena to occur for the day. The "301" in the second line denotes the phenomena number again (3) and the issuance number (01) for this phenomena. The CWA was issued at 2140Z and is valid until 2340Z.

EXAMPLE−
ZKC3 CWA 032140
ZKC CWA 301 VALID UNTIL 032340
ISOLD SVR TSTM over KCOU MOVG SWWD 10 KTS ETC.

4. Categorical Outlooks

4.1 Categorical outlook terms describing general ceiling and visibility conditions for advance planning purposes are used only in area forecasts. They are defined as follows:

4.1.1 LIFR (Low IFR) **−** Ceiling less than 500 feet and/or visibility less than 1 mile.

4.1.2 IFR **−** Ceiling 500 to less than 1,000 feet and/or visibility 1 to less than 3 miles.

4.1.3 MVFR (Marginal VFR) **−** Ceiling 1,000 or 3,000 feet and/or visibility 3 to 5 miles inclusive.

4.1.4 VFR **−** Ceiling greater than 3,000 feet and visibility greater than 5 miles; includes sky clear.

4.2 The cause of LIFR, IFR, or MVFR is indicated by either ceiling or visibility restrictions or both. The contraction "CIG" and/or weather and obstruction to vision symbols are used. If winds or gusts of 25 knots or greater are forecast for the outlook period, the word "WIND" is also included for all categories, including VFR.

EXAMPLE−
LIFR CIG−low IFR due to low ceiling.

IFR FG−IFR due to visibility restricted by fog.

MVFR CIG HZ FU−marginal VFR due both to ceiling and to visibility restricted by haze and smoke.

IFR CIG RA WIND−IFR due both to low ceiling and to visibility restricted by rain; wind expected to be 25 knots or greater.

5. Telephone Information Briefing Service (TIBS)

5.1 TIBS, provided by automated flight service stations (AFSSs), is a continuous recording of meteorological and aeronautical information, available by telephone. Each AFSS provides at least four route and/or area briefings. In addition, airspace procedures and special announcements (if applicable) concerning aviation interests are also available. Depending upon user demand, other items may be provided; i.e., METAR observations, terminal airport forecasts, winds aloft, and temperatures aloft forecasts.

6. Inflight Weather Broadcasts

6.1 Weather Advisory Broadcasts. ARTCCs' broadcast a Severe Weather Forecast Alert (AWW), Convective SIGMET, or CWA alert once on all frequencies, except emergency, when any part of the area described is within 150 miles of the airspace under their jurisdiction. These broadcasts contain SIGMET or CWA identification and a brief description of the weather activity and general area affected.

EXAMPLE−
Attention all aircraft, SIGMET Delta Three, from Myton to Tuba City to Milford, severe turbulence and severe clear icing below one zero thousand feet. Expected to continue beyond zero three zero zero zulu.

EXAMPLE−
Attention all aircraft, Convective SIGMET Two Seven Eastern. From the vicinity of Elmira to Phillipsburg. Scattered embedded thunderstorms moving east at one zero knots. A few intense level five cells, maximum tops four five zero.

EXAMPLE−
Attention all aircraft, Kansas City Center weather advisory one zero three. Numerous reports of moderate to severe icing from eight to niner thousand feet in a three zero mile radius of St. Louis. Light or negative icing reported from four thousand to one two thousand feet remainder of Kansas City Center area.

NOTE−
Terminal control facilities have the option to limit the AWW, Convective SIGMET, SIGMET, or CWA broadcast as follows: local control and approach control positions may opt to broadcast SIGMET or CWA alerts only when any part of the area described is within 50 miles of the airspace under their jurisdiction.

6.2 Hazardous Inflight Weather Advisory Service (HIWAS). This is a continuous broadcast of inflight weather advisories including summarized AWWs, SIGMETs, Convective SIGMETs, CWAs, AIRMETs, and urgent PIREPs. HIWAS has been adopted as a national program and will be implemented throughout the conterminous U.S. as resources permit. In those areas where HIWAS is commissioned, ARTCC, Terminal ATC, and AFSS/FSS facilities have discontinued the broadcast of inflight advisories. HIWAS is an additional source of hazardous weather information which makes these data available on a continuous basis. It is not, however, a replacement for preflight or inflight briefings or real−time weather updates from Flight Watch (EFAS). As HIWAS is implemented in individual center areas, the commissioning will be advertised in the Notices to Airmen publication.

6.2.1 Where HIWAS has been implemented, a HIWAS alert will be broadcast on all except emergency frequencies once upon receipt by ARTCC and terminal facilities which will include an alert announcement, frequency instruction, number, and type of advisory updated; e.g., AWW, SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, or CWA.

EXAMPLE−
Attention all aircraft. Hazardous weather information (SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, AIRMET, urgent pilot weather report (UUA), or Center Weather Advisory (CWA)), (number or numbers) for (geographical area) available on HIWAS, flight watch, or flight service frequencies.

6.2.2 In HIWAS ARTCC areas, AFSSs/FSSs will broadcast a HIWAS update announcement once on all except emergency frequencies upon completion of recording an update to the HIWAS broadcast. Included in the broadcast will be the type of advisory update; e.g., AWW, SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, or CWA.

EXAMPLE−
Attention all aircraft. Hazardous weather information for (geographical area) available from flight watch or flight service.

6.2.3 HIWAS availability is shown on IFR En Route Low Altitude Charts and VFR Sectional Charts. The symbol depiction is identified in the chart legend.

7. Weather Observing Programs

7.1 Manual Observations. Aviation Routine Weather Reports (METAR) are taken at more than 600 locations in the U.S. With only a few exceptions, these stations are located at airport sites and most are staffed by FAA or NWS personnel who manually observe, perform calculations, and enter the observation into the distribution system. The format and coding of these observations are contained in FIG GEN 3.5−24.

7.2 Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS)

7.2.1 Automated weather reporting systems are increasingly being installed at airports. These systems consist of various sensors, a processor, a computer−generated voice subsystem, and a transmitter to broadcast local, minute−by−minute weather data directly to the pilot.

NOTE−
When the barometric pressure exceeds 31.00 inches Hg., see Section ENR 1.7, Altimeter Setting Procedures.

7.2.2 The AWOS observations will include the prefix "AUTO" to indicate that the data are derived from an automated system. Some AWOS locations will be augmented by certified observers who will provide weather and obstruction to vision information in the remarks of the report when the reported visibility is less than 3 miles. These sites, along with the hours of augmentation, are published in the Airport/Facility Directory. Augmentation is identified in the observation as “OBSERVER WEATHER.” The AWOS wind speed, direction and gusts, temperature, dew point, and altimeter setting are exactly the same as for manual observations. The AWOS will also report density altitude when it exceeds the field elevation by more than 1,000 feet. The reported visibility is derived from a sensor near the touchdown of the primary instrument runway. The visibility sensor output is converted to a visibility value using a 10−minute harmonic average. The reported sky condition/ceiling is derived from the ceilometer located next to the visibility sensor. The AWOS algorithm integrates the last 30 minutes of ceilometer data to derive cloud layers and heights. This output may also differ from the observer sky condition in that the AWOS is totally dependent upon the cloud advection over the sensor site.

7.2.3 Referred to as AWOS, these real−time systems are operationally classified into four basic levels:

7.2.3.1 AWOS−A: only reports altimeter setting.

7.2.3.2 AWOS−l: usually reports altimeter setting, wind data, temperature, dew point, and density altitude.

7.2.3.3 AWOS−2 provides the information provided by AWOS−l, plus visibility.

7.2.3.4 AWOS−3 provides the information provided by AWOS−2, plus cloud/ceiling data.

7.2.4 The information is transmitted over a discrete VHF radio frequency or the voice portion of a local NAVAID. AWOS transmissions on a discrete VHF radio frequency are engineered to be receivable to a maximum of 25 NM from the AWOS site and a maximum altitude of 10,000 feet AGL. At many locations, AWOS signals may be received on the surface of the airport, but local conditions may limit the maximum AWOS reception distance and/or altitude. The system transmits a 20− to 30−second weather message updated each minute. Pilots should monitor the designated frequency for the automated weather broadcast. A description of the broadcast is contained in paragraph 7.3, Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS) Broadcasts. There is no two−way communication capability. Most AWOS sites also have a dial−up capability so that the minute−by−minute weather messages can be accessed via telephone.

7.2.5 AWOS information (system level, frequency, phone number) concerning specific locations is published, as the systems become operational, in the Airport/Facility Directory and, where applicable, on published Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) charts. Selected individual systems may be incorporated into nationwide data collection and dissemination networks in the future.

7.3 Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS) Broadcasts. Computer−generated voice is used in AWOS to automate the broadcast of the minute−by−minute weather observations. In addition, some systems are configured to permit the addition of an operator−generated voice message; e.g., weather remarks, following the automated parameters. The phraseology used generally follows that used for other weather broadcasts. Following are explanations and examples of the exceptions.

7.3.1 Location and Time. The location/name and the phrase “AUTOMATED WEATHER OBSERVATION” followed by the time are announced.

7.3.1.1 If the airport’s specific location is included in the airport’s name, the airport’s name is announced.

EXAMPLE−
“Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation one four five six zulu.”

“Ravenswood Jackson County Airport automated weather observation one four five six zulu.”

7.3.1.2 If the airport’s specific location is not included in the airport’s name, the location is announced followed by the airport’s name.

EXAMPLE−
“Sault Ste. Marie, Chippewa County International Airport automated weather observation.”

“Sandusky, Cowley Field automated weather observation.”

7.3.1.3 The word “TEST” is added following “OBSERVATION” when the system is not in commissioned status.

EXAMPLE−
“Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation test one four five six zulu.”

7.3.1.4 The phrase “TEMPORARILY INOPERATIVE” is added when the system is inoperative.

EXAMPLE−
“Bremerton National Airport automated weather observing system temporarily inoperative.”

7.3.2 Ceiling and Sky Cover

7.3.2.1 Ceiling is announced as either “CEILING” or “INDEFINITE CEILING.” The phrases “MEASURED CEILING” and “ESTIMATED CEILING“ are not used. With the exception of indefinite ceilings, all automated ceiling heights are measured.

EXAMPLE−
“Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation one four five six zulu, ceiling two thousand overcast.”

“Bremerton National Airport automated weather observation one four five six zulu, indefinite ceiling two hundred.”

7.3.2.2 The word “CLEAR” is not used in AWOS due to limitations in the height ranges of the sensors. No clouds detected is announced as, “No clouds below XXX”” or, in newer systems as, “Clear below XXX” (where XXX is the range limit of the sensor).

EXAMPLE−
“No clouds below one two thousand.”

“Clear below one two thousand.”

7.3.2.3 A sensor for determining ceiling and sky cover is not included in some AWOS. In these systems, ceiling and sky cover are not announced. “SKY CONDITION MISSING” is announced only if the system is configured with a ceilometer, and the ceiling and sky cover information is not available.

7.3.3 Visibility

7.3.3.1 The lowest reportable visibility value in AWOS is “less than $^1/_4$.” It is announced as “VISIBILITY LESS THAN ONE QUARTER.”

7.3.3.2 A sensor for determining visibility is not included in some AWOSs. In these systems, visibility is not announced. “VISIBILITY MISSING” is announced only if the system is configured with a visibility sensor and visibility information is not available.

7.3.4 Weather. In the future, some AWOSs are to be configured to determine the occurrence of precipitation. However, the type and intensity may not always be determined. In these systems, the word “PRECIPITATION” will be announced if precipitation is occurring, but the type and intensity are not determined.

7.3.5 Remarks. If remarks are included in the observation, the word “REMARKS” is announced following the altimeter setting. Remarks are announced in the following order of priority:

7.3.5.1 Automated “remarks.”

a) Variable visibility.

b) Density altitude.

7.3.5.2 Manual input remarks. Manual input remarks are prefaced with the phrase “OBSERVER WEATHER.” As a general rule the manual remarks are limited to:

a) Type and intensity of precipitation.

b) Thunderstorms, intensity (if applicable), and direction.

c) Obstructions to vision when the visibility is less than 7 miles.

EXAMPLE−
“Remarks...density altitude, two thousand five hundred...visibility variable between one and two...wind direction variable between two four zero and three one zero...observed weather...thunderstorm moderate rain showers and mist...thunderstorm overhead.”

7.3.5.3 If an automated parameter is “missing” and no manual input for that parameter is available, the parameter is announced as “MISSING.” For example, a report with the dew point “missing,” and no manual input available, would be announced as follows:

EXAMPLE−
“Ceiling one thousand overcast, visibility three, precipitation, temperature three zero, dew point missing, wind calm, altimeter three zero zero one.”

7.3.5.4 “REMARKS” are announced in the following order of priority:

a) Automated “REMARKS”:

1) Variable visibility.

2) Density altitude.

b) Manual Input “REMARKS.” As a general rule, the remarks are announced in the same order as the parameters appear in the basic text of the observation.

EXAMPLE−
"Remarks, density altitude, two thousand five hundred, visibility variable between one and two, wind direction variable between two four zero and three one zero, observer ceiling estimated two thousand broken, observer temperature two, dew point minus five."

7.4 Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS)

7.4.1 The ASOS is the primary surface weather observing system of the U.S. The program to install and operate up to 1,700 systems throughout the U.S. is a joint effort of the NWS, the FAA, and the Department of Defense. ASOS is designed to support aviation operations and weather forecast activities. The ASOS will provide continuous minute−by−minute observations and perform the basic observing functions necessary to generate a METAR and other aviation weather information. The information is transmitted over a discrete VHF radio frequency or the voice portion of a local NAVAID. ASOS transmissions on a discrete VHF radio frequency are engineered to be receivable to a maximum of 25 NM from the ASOS site and a maximum altitude of 10,000 feet AGL. At many locations, ASOS signals may be received on the surface of the airport, but local conditions may limit the maximum reception distance and/or altitude. While the automated system and the human may differ in their methods of data collection and interpretation, both produce an observation quite similar in form and content. For the "objective" elements such as pressure, ambient temperature, dew point temperature, wind, and precipitation accumulation, both the automated system and the observer use a fixed location and time−averaging technique. The quantitative differences between the observer and the automated observation of these elements are negligible. For the "subjective" elements, however, observers use a fixed−time, spatial−averaging technique to describe the visual elements (sky condition, visibility, and present weather), while the automated systems use a fixed−location, time−averaging technique. Although this is a fundamental change, the manual and automated techniques yield remarkably similar results within the limits of their respective capabilities. (See FIG GEN 3.5−26 and FIG GEN 3.5−27, Key to Decode an ASOS (METAR) Observation.

7.4.2 System Description

7.4.2.1 The ASOS at each airport location consists of four main components:

a) Individual weather sensors.

b) Data collection package(s) (DCP).

c) The acquisition control unit.

d) Peripherals and displays.

7.4.2.2 The ASOS sensors perform the basic function of data acquisition. They continuously sample and measure the ambient environment, derive raw sensor data, and make them available to the collocated DCP.

7.4.3 Every ASOS will contain the following basic set of sensors.

7.4.3.1 Cloud height indicator (one or possibly three).

7.4.3.2 Visibility sensor (one or possibly three).

7.4.3.3 Precipitation identification sensor.

7.4.3.4 Freezing rain sensor.

7.4.3.5 Pressure sensors (two sensors at small airports; three sensors at large airports).

7.4.3.6 Ambient temperature/dew point temperature sensor.

7.4.3.7 Anemometer (wind direction and speed sensor).

7.4.3.8 Rainfall accumulation sensor.

7.4.4 The ASOS data outlets include:

7.4.4.1 Those necessary for on−site airport users.

7.4.4.2 National communications networks.

7.4.4.3 Computer−generated voice (available through FAA radio broadcast to pilots and dial−in telephone line).

NOTE−
Wind direction broadcast over FAA radios is in reference to magnetic north.

7.5 A comparison of weather observing programs and the elements observed by each are in TBL GEN 3.5−2, Weather Observing Programs.

TBL GEN 3.5−2

Weather Observing Programs

Element Reported	AWOS−A	AWOS−1	AWOS−2	AWOS−3	ASOS	MANUAL
Altimeter	X	X	X	X	X	X
Wind		X	X	X	X	X
Temperature/Dew point		X	X	X	X	X
Density altitude		X	X	X	X	
Visibility			X	X	X	X
Clouds/Ceiling				X	X	X
Precipitation					X	X
Remarks					X	X

7.6 Service Standards. During 1995, a government/industry team worked to comprehensively reassess the requirements for surface observations at the nation's airports. That work resulted in agreement on a set of service standards and the FAA and NWS ASOS sites to which the standards would apply. The term "Service Standards" refers to the level of detail in the weather observation. The service standards consist of four different levels of service (A, B, C, and D) as described below. Specific observational elements included in each service level are listed in TBL GEN 3.5−3, Weather Observation Service Standards.

7.6.1 Service Level D defines the minimum acceptable level of service. It is a completely automated service in which the ASOS observation will constitute the entire observation; i.e., no additional weather information is added by a human observer. This service is referred to as a stand alone D site.

7.6.2 Service Level C is a service in which the human observer, usually an air traffic controller, augments or adds information to the automated observation. Service Level C also includes backup of ASOS elements in the event of an ASOS malfunction or an unrepresentative ASOS report.

7.6.3 In backup, the human observer inserts the correct or missing value for the automated ASOS elements. This service is provided by air traffic controllers under the Limited Aviation Weather Reporting Station (LAWRS) process, FSS and NWS observers, and, at selected sites, Non−Federal Observation Program observers.

Two categories of airports require detail beyond Service Level C in order to enhance air traffic control efficiency and increase system capacity. Services at these airports are typically provided by contract weather observers, NWS observers, and, at some locations, FSS observers.

7.6.4 Service Level B is a service in which weather observations consist of all elements provided under Service Level C, plus augmentation of additional data beyond the capability of the ASOS. This category of airports includes smaller hubs or airports special in other ways that have worse than average bad weather operations for thunderstorms and/or freezing/frozen precipitation, and/or that are remote airports.

7.6.5 Service Level A, the highest and most demanding category, includes all the data reported in Service Standard B, plus additional requirements as specified. Service Level A covers major aviation hubs and/or high volume traffic airports with average or worse weather.

TBL GEN 3.5−3

Weather Observation Service Standards

SERVICE LEVEL A	
Service Level A consists of all the elements of Service Levels B, C and D plus the elements listed to the right, if observed.	10 minute longline RVR at precedented sites or additional visibility increments of 1/8, 1/16 and 0 Sector visibility Variable sky condition Cloud layers above 12,000 feet and cloud types Widespread dust, sand and other obscurations Volcanic eruptions
SERVICE LEVEL B	
Service Level B consists of all the elements of Service Levels C and D plus the elements listed to the right, if observed.	Longline RVR at precedented sites (may be instantaneous readout) Freezing drizzle versus freezing rain Ice pellets Snow depth & snow increasing rapidly remarks Thunderstorm and lightning location remarks Observed significant weather not at the station remarks
SERVICE LEVEL C	
Service Level C consists of all the elements of Service Level D plus augmentation and backup by a human observer or an air traffic control specialist on location nearby. Backup consists of inserting the correct value if the system malfunctions or is unrepresentative. Augmentation consists of adding the elements listed to the right, if observed. During hours that the observing facility is closed, the site reverts to Service Level D.	Thunderstorms Tornadoes Hail Virga Volcanic ash Tower visibility Operationally significant remarks as deemed appropriate by the observer
SERVICE LEVEL D	
This level of service consists of an ASOS continually measuring the atmosphere at a point near the runway. The ASOS senses and measures the weather parameters listed to the right.	Wind Visibility Precipitation/Obstruction to vision Cloud height Sky cover Temperature Dew point Altimeter

8. Weather Radar Services

8.1 The National Weather Service operates a network of radar sites for detecting coverage, intensity, and movement of precipitation. The network is supplemented by FAA and DOD radar sites in the western sections of the country. Local warning radars augment the network by operating on an as needed basis to support warning and forecast programs.

8.2 Scheduled radar observations are taken hourly and transmitted in alpha−numeric format on weather telecommunications circuits for flight planning purposes. Under certain conditions special radar reports are issued in addition to the hourly transmittals. Data contained in the reports is also collected by the National Meteorological Center and used to prepare hourly national radar summary charts for dissemination on facsimile circuits.

8.3 All En route Flight Advisory Service facilities and many Automated Flight Service Stations have equipment to directly access the radar displays from the individual weather radar sites. Specialists at these locations are trained to interpret the display for pilot briefing and inflight advisory services. The Center Weather Service Units located in the ARTCCs also have access to weather radar displays and provide support to all air traffic facilities within their center's area.

8.4 A clear radar display (no echoes) does not mean that there is no significant weather within the coverage of the radar site. Clouds and fog are not detected by the radar. However, when echoes are present, turbulence can be implied by the intensity of the precipitation, and icing is implied by the presence of the precipitation at temperatures at or below zero degrees Celsius. Used in conjunction with other weather products, radar provides invaluable information for weather avoidance and flight planning.

8.5 Additional information on weather radar products and services can be found in FAA Advisory Circular 00−45, "Aviation Weather Services." Also, see Pilot/Controller Glossary, Radar Weather Echo Intensity Levels, and paragraph 26, Thunderstorms. (See Airport/Facility Directory charts, NWS Upper Air Observing Stations and Weather Network for the location of specific radar sites.)

9. National Convective Weather Forecast (NCWF)

9.1 Description

9.1.1 The NCWF is an automatically generated depiction of: (1) current convection and (2) extrapolated significant current convection. It is a supplement to, but does NOT substitute for, the report and forecast information contained in Convective SIGMETs (see paragraph 3.9.3.4). Convection, particularly significant convection, is typically associated with thunderstorm activity.

9.1.2 The National Weather Service Aviation Weather Center (AWC) updates the NCWF based on input from the Next Generation Weather Radar (NEXRAD) and cloud−to−ground lightning data.

9.1.3 The NCWF is most accurate for long−lived mature multi−storm systems such as organized line storms. NCWF does not forecast initiation, growth or decay of thunderstorms. Therefore, NCWF tends to under−warn on new and growing storms and over−warn on dying storms. Forecast positions of small, isolated or weaker thunderstorms are not displayed.

9.1.4 The NCWF area of coverage is limited to the 48 contiguous states.

9.2 Attributes

9.2.1 The NCWF is updated frequently (every 5 minutes) using the most current available data.

9.2.2 The NCWF is able to detect the existence of convective storm locations that agree very well with concurrent radar and lightning observations.

9.2.3 The NCWF is a high−resolution forecast impacting a relatively small volume of airspace rather than covering large boxed areas. The location, speeds and directions of movement of multiple convective storms are depicted individually.

9.2.4 The NCWF extrapolation forecasts are more accurate when predicting the location and size of well organized, unchanging convective storms moving at uniform speeds. The NCWF does not work well with sporadic, explosive cells developing and dissipating in minutes.

9.2.5 In displaying forecast cell locations, the NCWF does NOT distinguish among level 3 through level 6 on the NCWF hazard scale (see TBL GEN 3.5−4).

9.2.6 The NCWF may not detect or forecast:

9.2.6.1 Some embedded convection.

9.2.6.2 Low−topped convection containing little or no cloud−to−ground lightning (such as may occur in cool air masses).

9.2.6.3 Rapidly evolving convection.

9.2.7 The NCWF cannot provide information on specific storm hazards such as hail, high winds or tornadoes.

9.3 Availability and Use

9.3.1 The NCWF is available primarily via the Internet from the AWC Aviation Digital Data Service (ADDS) at **http://adds.aviationweather. noaa.gov**. Used in conjunction with other weather products such as Convective SIGMETs, the NCWF provides additional information for convective weather avoidance and flight planning.

9.3.2 The NCWF access by Automated Flight Service Stations and their associated En Route Flight Advisory Service Facilities, Air Route Traffic Control Centers (ARTCCs) or Terminal Radar Approach Controls is planned but NOT currently available.

NOTE−
See paragraph 10, ATC Inflight Weather Avoidance Assistance, for further information.

9.4 Display Summary

9.4.1 Existing convective hazards (based on NEXRAD and lightning data) are depicted using the color−coded 6−level NCWF hazard scale shown in TBL GEN 3.5−4. In displaying forecast cell locations, the NCWF does NOT distinguish among level 3 through level 6.

TBL GEN 3.5−4

NCWF Hazard Scale

Level	Color	Effect
5−6	Red	Thunderstorms may contain any or all of the following: severe turbulence, severe icing, hail, frequent lightning, tornadoes and low−level wind shear. The risk of hazardous weather generally increases with levels on the NCWF hazard scale.
3−4	Yellow Orange	
1−2	Green	

NOTE−
Although similar, the NCWF hazard scale levels are NOT identical to VIP levels.

REFERENCE−
Pilot/Controller Glossary Term− Radar Weather Echo Intensity Levels.

9.4.2 One−hour forecast locations of signification convection (NCWF hazard scale levels of 3 or greater) are depicted with blue polygons. Their directions of movement and storm tops are also shown.

9.4.3 The Java display permits some degree of customization. Other means of viewing the NCWF may not offer these display options. Java display options include the following (see FIG GEN 3.5−7):

9.4.3.1 "Current Convective Interest Grid."

9.4.3.2 "One−Hour Extrapolation Polygons."

9.4.3.3 "Previous Performance Polygons."

9.4.3.4 Storm speed and altitude of tops.

9.4.3.5 Overlays of:

a) Airport locations.

b) County boundaries.

c) ARTCC boundaries.

9.4.3.6 Routine Weather Reports (METARs).

9.4.3.7 Unlimited customized zooms (by holding down the left mouse button and dragging to select the rectangle of coverage desired).

FIG GEN 3.5−7

Example NCWF Java Display

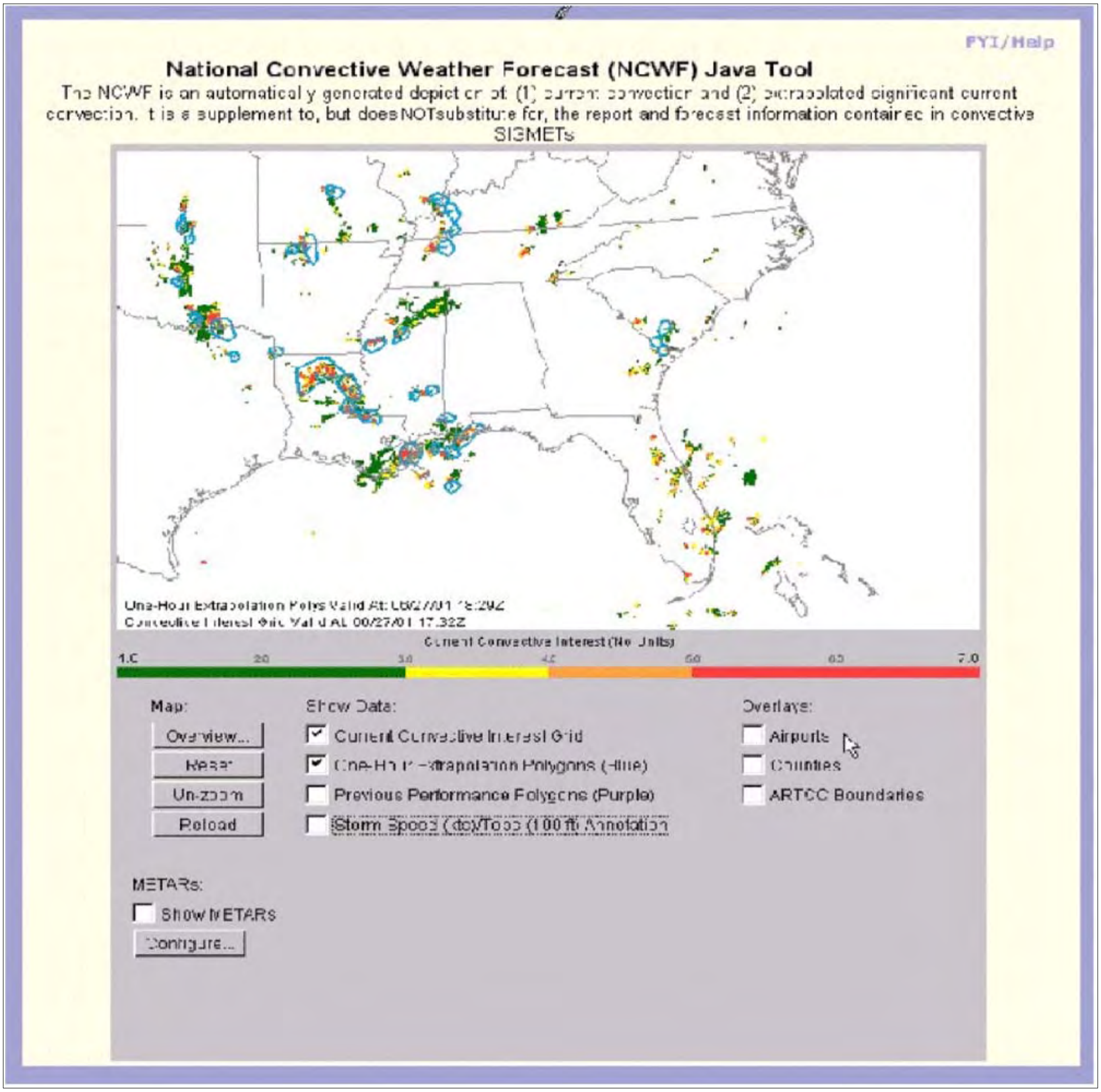
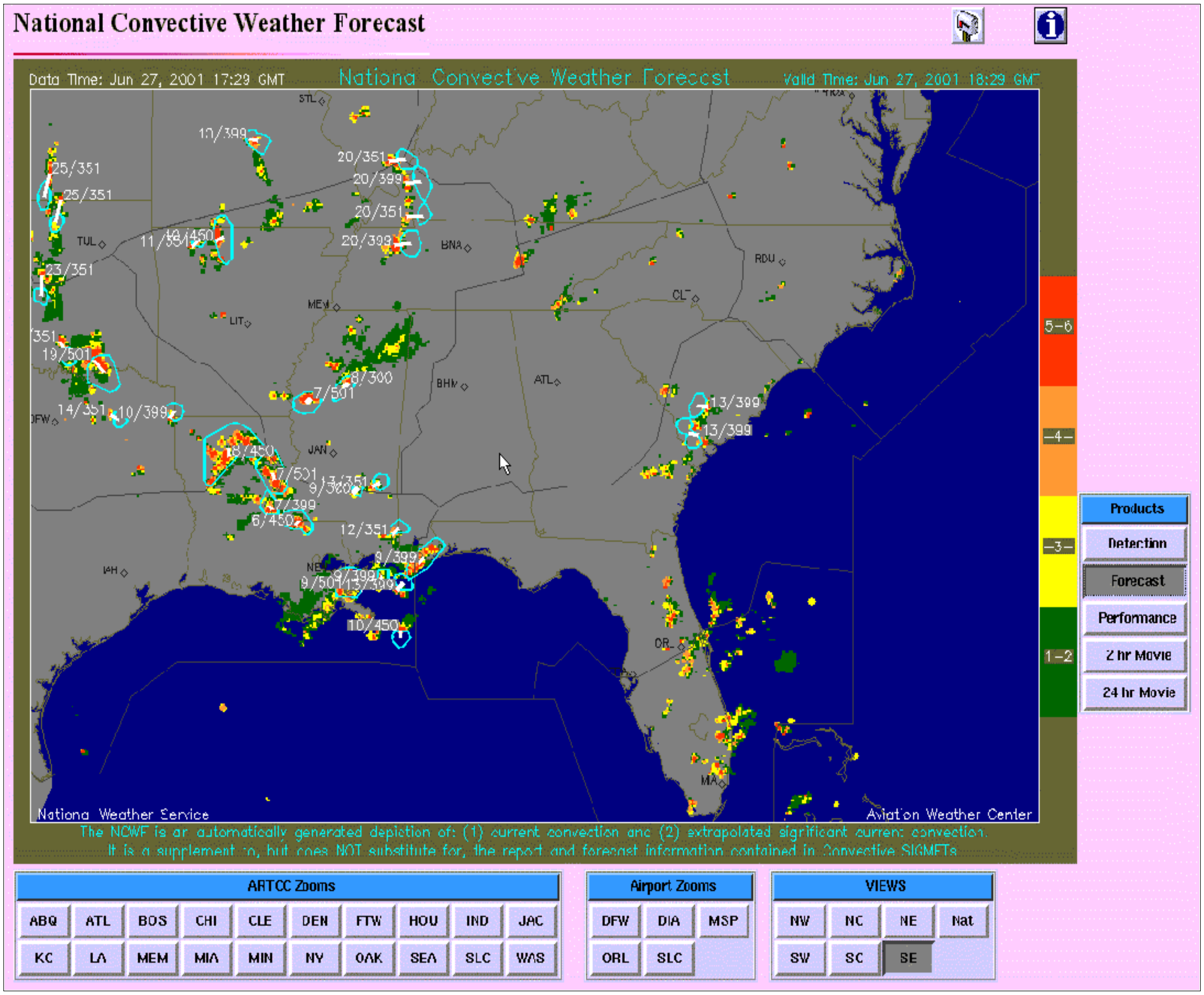


FIG GEN 3.5−8
Example NCWF JavaScript Display



9.4.4 The JavaScript display options include the following (see FIG GEN 3.5−8):

9.4.4.1 Current convective hazard "Detection" field.

9.4.4.2 1−hour extrapolation "Forecast" polygons.

9.4.4.3 Previous hour "Performance" polygons.

9.4.4.4 "2 hr Movie" loops of convective hazard detection fields (with forecast polygons included on the last frame).

9.4.4.5 "24 hr Movie" loops of convective hazard detection fields.

9.4.4.6 Zoomed views of:

a) ARTCC boundaries.

b) Certain major airports.

c) Seven geographical regions: Northwest, North Central, Northeast, Southwest, South Central, Southwest, the 48 contiguous states.

9.4.5 Additional information is available via the "FYI/Help" or "i" links on the Java and JavaScript displays, respectively.

10. ATC Inflight Weather Avoidance Assistance

10.1 ATC Radar Weather Display

10.1.1 Areas of weather clutter are radar echoes from rain or moisture. Radars cannot detect turbulence. The determination of the intensity of the weather displayed is based on its precipitation density. Generally, the turbulence associated with a very heavy rate of rainfall will normally be significantly more severe than any associated with a very light rainfall rate.

10.1.2 ARTCCs use narrowband radar which provides the controller with two distinct levels of weather intensity by assigning radar display symbols for specific precipitation densities measured by the narrowband system.

10.2 Weather Avoidance Assistance

10.2.1 To the extent possible, controllers will issue pertinent information of weather or chaff areas and assist pilots in avoiding such areas if requested. Pilots should respond to a weather advisory by either acknowledging the advisory or by acknowledging the advisory and requesting an alternative course of action as follows:

10.2.1.1 Request to deviate off course by stating the number of miles and the direction of the requested deviation. In this case, when the requested deviation is approved the pilot is expected to provide his/her own navigation, to maintain the altitude assigned by ATC, and to remain within the specified mileage of his/her original course.

10.2.1.2 Request a new route to avoid the affected area.

10.2.1.3 Request a change of altitude.

10.2.1.4 Request radar vectors around the affected areas.

10.2.2 For obvious reasons of safety, an IFR pilot must not deviate from the course or altitude/flight level without a proper ATC clearance. When weather conditions encountered are so severe that an immediate deviation is determined to be necessary and time will not permit approval by ATC, the pilot's emergency authority may be exercised.

10.2.3 When the pilot requests clearance for a route deviation or for an ATC radar vector, the controller must evaluate the air traffic picture in the affected area and coordinate with other controllers (if ATC jurisdictional boundaries may be crossed) before replying to the request.

10.2.4 It should be remembered that the controller's primary function is to provide safe separation between aircraft. Any additional service, such as weather avoidance assistance, can only be provided to the extent that it does not derogate the primary function. It is also worth noting that the separation workload is generally greater than normal when weather disrupts the usual flow of traffic. ATC radar limitations and frequency congestion may also be factors in limiting the controller's capability to provide additional service.

10.2.5 It is very important that the request for deviation or radar vector be forwarded to ATC as far in advance as possible. Delay in submitting it may delay or even preclude ATC approval or require that additional restrictions be placed on the clearance. Insofar as possible, the following information should be furnished to ATC when requesting clearance to detour around weather activity:

10.2.5.1 Proposed point where detour will commence.

10.2.5.2 Proposed route and extent of detour (direction and distance).

10.2.5.3 Point where original route will be resumed.

10.2.5.4 Flight conditions (IFR or VFR).

10.2.5.5 Any further deviation that may become necessary as the flight progresses.

10.2.5.6 Advise if the aircraft is equipped with functioning airborne radar.

10.2.6 To a large degree, the assistance that might be rendered by ATC will depend upon the weather information available to controllers. Due to the extremely transitory nature of severe weather situations, the controller's weather information may be of only limited value if based on weather observed on radar only. Frequent updates by pilots giving specific information as to the area affected, altitudes, intensity, and nature of the severe weather can be of considerable value. Such reports are relayed by radio or phone to other pilots and controllers, and they also receive widespread teletypewriter dissemination.

10.2.7 Obtaining IFR clearance or an ATC radar vector to circumnavigate severe weather can often be accommodated more readily in the en route areas away from terminals because there is usually less congestion and, therefore, greater freedom of action. In terminal areas, the problem is more acute because of traffic density, ATC coordination requirements, complex departure and arrival routes, and adjacent airports. As a consequence, controllers are less likely to be able to accommodate all requests for weather detours in a terminal area or be in a position to volunteer such routes to the pilot. Nevertheless, pilots should not hesitate to advise controllers of any observed severe weather and should specifically advise controllers if they desire circumnavigation of observed weather.

10.3 ATC Severe Weather Avoidance Plans

10.3.1 Air Route Traffic Control Centers and some Terminal Radar Control facilities utilize plans for severe weather avoidance within their control areas. Aviation−oriented meteorologists provide weather information. Preplanned alternate route packages developed by the facilities are used in conjunction with flow restrictions to ensure a more orderly flow of traffic during periods of severe or adverse weather conditions.

10.3.2 During these periods, pilots may expect to receive alternative route clearances. These routes are predicated upon the forecasts of the meteorologist and coordination between the Air Traffic Control System Command Center and the other centers. The routes are utilized as necessary in order to allow as many aircraft as possible to operate in any given area, and frequently they will deviate from the normal preferred routes. With user cooperation, this plan may significantly reduce delays.

10.4 Procedures for Weather Deviations and Other Contingencies in Oceanic Controlled Airspace

10.4.1 When the pilot initiates communications with ATC, rapid response may be obtained by stating "WEATHER DEVIATION REQUIRED" to indicate priority is desired on the frequency and for ATC response.

10.4.2 The pilot still retains the option of initiating the communications using the urgency call "PAN−PAN" three times to alert all listening parties of a special handling condition which will receive ATC priority for issuance of a clearance or assistance.

10.4.3 ATC will:

10.4.3.1 Approve the deviation, or

10.4.3.2 Provide vertical separation and then approve the deviation, or

10.4.3.3 If ATC is unable to establish vertical separation, ATC shall advise the pilot that standard separation cannot be applied; provide essential traffic information for all affected aircraft, to the extent practicable; and if possible, suggest a course of action. ATC may suggest that the pilot climb or descend to a contingency altitude (1,000 feet above or below that assigned if operating above FL 290; 500 feet above or below that assigned if operating at or below FL 290).

PHRASEOLOGY−
STANDARD SEPARATION NOT AVAILABLE; DEVIATE AT PILOT'S DISCRETION; SUGGEST CLIMB (or descent) TO (appropriate altitude); TRAFFIC (position and altitude); REPORT DEVIATION COMPLETE.

10.4.4 The pilot will follow the ATC advisory altitude when approximately 10 NM from track as well as execute the procedures detailed in paragraph 10.4.5.

10.4.5 If contact cannot be established or a revised ATC clearance or advisory is not available and deviation from track is required, the pilot shall take the following actions:

10.4.5.1 If possible, deviate away from an organized track or route system.

10.4.5.2 Broadcast aircraft position and intentions on the frequency in use, as well as on frequency 121.5 MHz at suitable intervals stating: flight identification (operator call sign), flight level, track code or ATS route designator, and extent of deviation expected.

10.4.5.3 Watch for conflicting traffic both visually and by reference to the Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System (TCAS), if equipped.

10.4.5.4 Turn on aircraft exterior lights.

10.4.5.5 Deviations of less than 10 NM or operations within COMPOSITE (NOPAC and CEPAC) Airspace, should REMAIN at ASSIGNED altitude. Otherwise, when the aircraft is approximately 10 NM from track, initiate an altitude change based upon the following criteria:

TBL GEN 3.5−5

Route Centerline/Track	Deviations >10 NM	Altitude Change
East 000 − 179●M	Left Right	Descend 500 Feet Climb 500 Feet
West 180−359●M	Left Right	Climb 500 Feet Descend 500 Feet
Pilot Memory Slogan: "***East right up,*** ***West right down.***"		

10.4.5.6 When returning to track, be at the assigned flight level when the aircraft is within approximately 10 NM of centerline.

10.4.5.7 If contact was not established prior to deviating, continue to attempt to contact ATC to obtain a clearance. If contact was established, continue to keep ATC advised of intentions and obtain essential traffic information.

11. Notifications Required From Operators

11.1 Preflight briefing and flight documentation services provided by AFSSs do not require prior notification.

11.2 Preflight briefing and flight documentation services provided by a National Weather Service Office (or contract office) are available upon request for long−range international flights for which meteorological data packages are prepared for the pilot−in−command. Briefing times should be coordinated between the local representative and the local meteorological office.

11.3 Flight Service Stations do not normally have the capability to prepare meteorological data packages for a preflight briefing.

12. Weather Observing Systems and Operating Procedures

For surface wind readings, most meteorological reporting stations have a direct reading, 3−cup anemometer wind system for which a 1−minute mean wind speed and direction (based on true north) is taken. Some stations also have a continuous wind speed recorder which is used in determining the gustiness of the wind.

13. Runway Visual Range (RVR)

There are currently two configurations of the RVR, commonly identified as Taskers and New Generation RVR. The Taskers use transmissometer technology. The New Generation RVRs use forward scatter technology and are currently being deployed to replace the existing Taskers.

13.1 RVR values are measured by transmissometers mounted on 14−foot towers along the runway. A full RVR system consists of:

13.1.1 A transmissometer projector and related items.

13.1.2 A transmissometer receiver (detector) and related items.

13.1.3 An analogue recorder.

13.1.4 A signal data converter and related items.

13.1.5 A remote digital or remote display programmer.

13.2 The transmissometer projector and receiver are mounted on towers 250 feet apart. A known intensity of light is emitted from the projector and is measured by the receiver. Any obscuring matter, such as rain, snow, dust, fog, haze, or smoke, reduces the light intensity arriving at the receiver. The resultant intensity measurement is then converted to an RVR value by the signal data converter. These values are displayed by readout equipment in the associated air traffic facility and updated approximately once every minute for controller issuance to pilots.

13.3 The signal data converter receives information on the high−intensity runway edge light setting in use (step 3, 4, or 5), transmission values from the transmissometer, and the sensing of day or night conditions. From the three data sources, the system will compute appropriate RVR values.

13.4 An RVR transmissometer established on a 250−foot baseline provides digital readouts to a minimum of 600 feet, which are displayed in 200−foot increments to 3,000 feet, and in 500−foot increments from 3,000 feet to a maximum value of 6,000 feet.

13.5 RVR values for Category IIIa operations extend down to 700−foot RVR; however, only 600 and 800 feet are reportable RVR increments. The 800 RVR reportable value covers a range of 701 feet to 900 feet and is therefore a valid minimum indication of Category IIIa operations.

13.6 Approach categories with the corresponding minimum RVR values are listed in TBL GEN 3.5−6.

TBL GEN 3.5−6

Approach Category/Minimum RVR Table

Category	Visibility (RVR)
Nonprecision	2,400 feet
Category I	1,800 feet
Category II	1,200 feet
Category IIIa	700 feet
Category IIIb	150 feet
Category IIIc	0 feet

13.7 Ten−minute maximum and minimum RVR values for the designated RVR runway are reported in the body of the aviation weather report when the prevailing visibility is less than 1 mile and/or the RVR is 6,000 feet or less. ATCTs report RVR when the prevailing visibility is 1 mile or less and/or the RVR is 6,000 feet or less.

13.8 Details on the requirements for the operational use of RVR are contained in FAA Advisory Circular 97−1, "Runway Visual Range (RVR)." Pilots are responsible for compliance with minimums prescribed for their class of operations in appropriate Federal Aviation Regulations and/or operations specifications.

13.8.1 RVR values are also measured by forward scatter meters mounted on 14−foot frangible fiberglass poles. A full RVR system consists of:

13.8.1.1 Forward scatter meter with a transmitter, receiver and associated items.

13.8.1.2 A runway light intensity monitor (RLIM).

13.8.1.3 An ambient light sensor (ALS).

13.8.1.4 A data processor unit (DPU).

13.8.1.5 A controller display (CD).

13.8.2 The forward scatter meter is mounted on a 14−foot frangible pole. Infrared light is emitted from the transmitter and received by the receiver. Any obscuring matter such as rain, snow, dust, fog, haze, or smoke increases the amount of scattered light reaching the receiver. The resulting measurement along with inputs from the runway light intensity monitor and the ambient light sensor are forwarded to the DPU which calculates the proper RVR value. The RVR values are displayed locally and remotely on controller displays.

13.8.3 The runway light intensity monitors both the runway edge and centerline light step settings (steps 1 through 5). Centerline light step settings are used for CAT IIIb operations. Edge light step settings are used for CAT I, II, and IIIa operations.

13.8.4 New Generation RVRs can measure and display RVR values down to the lowest limits of Category IIIb operations (150 foot RVR). RVR values are displayed in 100−foot increments and are reported as follows:

13.8.4.1 100−foot increments for products below 800 feet.

13.8.4.2 200−foot increments for products between 800 feet and 3,000 feet.

13.8.4.3 500−foot increments for products between 3,000 feet and 6,500 feet.

13.8.4.4 25−meter increments for products below 150 meters.

13.8.4.5 50−meter increments for products between 150 meters and 800 meters.

13.8.4.6 100−meter increments for products between 800 meters and 1,200 meters.

13.8.4.7 200−meter increments for products between 1,200 meters and 2,000 meters.

14. Reporting of Cloud Heights

14.1 Ceiling, by definition in Federal Aviation Regulations, and as used in Aviation Weather Reports and Forecasts, is the height above ground (or water) level of the lowest layer of clouds or obscuring phenomenon that is reported as "broken," "overcast," or "the vertical visibility into an obscuration." For example, an aerodrome forecast which reads "BKN030" refers to heights above ground level (AGL). An area forecast which reads "BKN030" states that the height is above mean sea level (MSL). See FIG GEN 3.5−25 for the Key to Routine Aviation Weather Reports and Forecasts for the definition of "broken," "overcast," and "obscuration."

14.2 Information on cloud base height is obtained by use of ceilometers (rotating or fixed beam), ceiling lights, ceiling balloons, pilot reports, and observer estimations. The systems in use by most reporting stations are either the observer estimation or the rotating beam ceilometer.

14.3 Pilots usually report height values above mean sea level, since they determine heights by the altimeter. This is taken into account when disseminating and otherwise applying information received from pilots. ("Ceiling" heights are always above ground level.) In reports disseminated as pilot reports, height references are given the same as received from pilots; that is, above mean sea level.

14.4 In area forecasts or inflight Advisories, ceilings are denoted by the contraction "CIG" when used with sky cover symbols as in "LWRG TO CIG OVC005," or the contraction "AGL" after the forecast cloud height value. When the cloud base is given in height above mean sea level, it is so indicated by the contraction "MSL" or "ASL" following the height value. The heights of cloud tops, freezing level, icing, and turbulence are always given in heights above mean sea level (ASL or MSL).

15. Reporting Prevailing Visibility

15.1 Surface (horizontal) visibility is reported in METAR reports in terms of statute miles and increments thereof; e.g., $^1/_{16}$, $^1/_8$, $^3/_{16}$, $^1/_4$, $^5/_{16}$, $^3/_8$, $^1/_2$, $^5/_8$, $^3/_4$, $^7/_8$, 1, 1 $^1/_8$, etc. (Visibility reported by an unaugmented automated site is reported differently than in a manual report; i.e., ASOS: 0, $^1/_{16}$, $^1/_8$, $^1/_4$, $^1/_2$, $^3/_4$, 1, 1 $^1/_4$, 1 $^1/_2$, 1 $^3/_4$, 2, 2 $^1/_2$, 3, 4, 5, etc., AWOS: M$^1/_4$, $^1/_4$, $^1/_2$, $^3/_4$, 1, 1 $^1/_4$, 1 $^1/_2$, 1 $^3/_4$, 2, 2 $^1/_2$, 3, 4, 5, etc.) Visibility is determined through the ability to see and identify preselected and prominent objects at a known distance from the usual point of observation. Visibilities which are determined to be less than 7 miles, identify the obscuring atmospheric condition; e.g., fog, haze, smoke, etc., or combinations thereof.

15.2 Prevailing visibility is the greatest visibility equalled or exceeded throughout at least one−half the horizon circle, not necessarily contiguous. Segments of the horizon circle which may have a significantly different visibility may be reported in the remarks section of the weather report; i.e., the southeastern quadrant of the horizon circle may be determined to be 2 miles in mist while the remaining quadrants are determined to be 3 miles in mist.

15.3 When the prevailing visibility at the usual point of observation, or at the tower level, is less than 4 miles, certificated tower personnel will take visibility observations in addition to those taken at the usual point of observation. The lower of these two values will be used as the prevailing visibility for aircraft operations.

16. Estimating Intensity of Rain and Ice Pellets

16.1 Rain

16.1.1 Light. From scattered drops that, regardless of duration, do not completely wet an exposed surface up to a condition where individual drops are easily seen.

16.1.2 Moderate. Individual drops are not clearly identifiable; spray is observable just above pavements and other hard surfaces.

16.1.3 Heavy. Rain seemingly falls in sheets; individual drops are not identifiable; heavy spray to a height of several inches is observed over hard surfaces.

16.2 Ice Pellets

16.2.1 Light. Scattered pellets that do not completely cover an exposed surface regardless of duration. Visibility is not affected.

16.2.2 Moderate. Slow accumulation on the ground. Visibility is reduced by ice pellets to less than 7 statute miles.

16.2.3 Heavy. Rapid accumulation on the ground. Visibility is reduced by ice pellets to less than 3 statute miles.

17. Estimating the Intensity of Snow or Drizzle (Based on Visibility)

17.1 Light. Visibility more than $^1/_2$ statute mile.

17.2 Moderate. Visibility from more than $^1/_4$ statute mile to $^1/_2$ statute mile.

17.3 Heavy. Visibility $^1/_4$ statute mile or less.

18. Pilot Weather Reports (PIREPs)

18.1 FAA air traffic facilities are required to solicit PIREPs when the following conditions are reported or forecast: ceilings at or below 5,000 feet, visibility at or below 5 miles (surface or aloft), thunderstorms and related phenomena, icing of a light degree or greater, turbulence of a moderate degree or greater, wind shear, and reported or forecast volcanic ash clouds.

18.2 Pilots are urged to cooperate and promptly volunteer reports of these conditions and other atmospheric data, such as cloud bases, tops and layers, flight visibility, precipitation, visibility restrictions (haze, smoke, and dust), wind at altitude, and temperature aloft.

18.3 PIREPs should be given to the ground facility with which communications are established; i.e., EFAS, AFSS/FSS, ARTCC, or terminal ATC. Radio call "FLIGHT WATCH," which serves as a collection point for the exchange of PIREPs with en route aircraft, is one of the primary duties of EFAS facilities.

18.4 If pilots do not make PIREPs by radio, it is helpful if, upon landing, they report to the nearest AFSS/FSS or Weather Forecast Office the inflight conditions which they encountered. Some of the uses made of the reports are:

18.4.1 The ATCT uses the reports to expedite the flow of air traffic in the vicinity of the field and for hazardous weather avoidance procedures.

18.4.2 The AFSS/FSS uses the reports to brief other pilots, to provide inflight advisories and weather avoidance information to en route aircraft.

18.4.3 The ARTCC uses the reports to expedite the flow of en route traffic, to determine most favorable altitudes, and to issue hazardous weather information within the center's area.

18.4.4 The NWS uses the reports to verify or amend conditions contained in aviation forecasts and advisories; (In some cases, pilot reports of hazardous conditions are the triggering mechanism for the issuance of advisories.)

18.4.5 The NWS, other government organizations, the military, and private industry groups use PIREPs for research activities in the study of meteorological phenomena.

18.4.6 All air traffic facilities and the NWS forward the reports received from pilots into the weather distribution system to assure the information is made available to all pilots and other interested parties.

18.5 The FAA, NWS, and other organizations that enter PIREPs into the weather reporting system use the format listed in TBL GEN 3.5−7, PIREP Element Code Chart. Items 1 through 6 are included in all transmitted PIREPs along with one or more of items 7 through 13. Although the PIREP should be as complete and concise as possible, pilots should not be overly concerned with strict format or phraseology. The important thing is that the information is relayed so other pilots may benefit from your observation. If a portion of the report needs clarification, the ground station will request the information.

18.6 Completed PIREPs will be transmitted to weather circuits as in the following examples:

EXAMPLE−
KCMH UA/OV APE 230010/TM 1516/FL085/TP BE20/SK BKN065/WX FV03SM HZ FU/TA 20/TB LGT.

Translation: one zero miles southwest of Appleton VOR; time 1516 UTC; altitude eight thousand five hundred; aircraft type BE20; base of the broken cloud layer is six thousand five hundred; flight visibility 3 miles with haze and smoke; air temperature 20 degrees Celsius; light turbulence.

EXAMPLE−
KCRW UA/OV KBKW 360015−KCRW/TM 1815/ FL120/TP BE99/SK IMC/WX RA−/TA M08/WV 290030/TB LGT−MDT/IC LGT RIME/RM MDT MXD ICG DURGC KROA NWBND FL080−100 1750Z.

Translation: from 15 miles north of Beckley VOR to Charleston VOR; time 1815 UTC; altitude 12,000 feet; type aircraft, BE−99; in clouds; rain; temperature minus 8 Celsius; wind 290 degrees magnetic at 30 knots; light to moderate turbulence; light rime icing during climb northwestbound from Roanoke, VA, between 8,000 and 10,000 feet at 1750 UTC.

TBL GEN 3.5−7

PIREP Element Code Chart

	PIREP ELEMENT	PIREP CODE	CONTENTS
1.	3−letter station identifier	XXX	Nearest weather reporting location to the reported phenomenon
2.	Report type	UA or UUA	Routine or urgent PIREP
3.	Location	/OV	In relation to a VOR
4.	Time	/TM	Coordinated Universal Time
5.	Altitude	/FL	Essential for turbulence and icing reports
6.	Type aircraft	/TP	Essential for turbulence and icing reports
7.	Sky cover	/SK	Cloud height and coverage (sky clear, few, scattered, broken, or overcast)
8.	Weather	/WX	Flight visibility, precipitation, restrictions to visibility, etc.
9.	Temperature	/TA	Degrees Celsius
10.	Wind	/WV	Direction in degrees magnetic north and speed in knots
11.	Turbulence	/TB	See paragraph 21
12.	Icing	/IC	See paragraph 20
13.	Remarks	/RM	For reporting elements not included or to clarify previously reported items

19. Mandatory MET Points

19.1 Within the ICAO CAR/SAM Regions and within the U.S. area of responsibility, several mandatory MET reporting points have been established. These points are located within the Houston, Miami, and San Juan Flight Information Regions (FIR). These points have been established for flights between the South American and Caribbean Regions and Europe, Canada and the U.S.

19.2 Mandatory MET Reporting Points Within the Houston FIR

Point	For Flights Between
ABBOT	Acapulco and Montreal, New York, Toronto, Mexico City and New Orleans.
ALARD	New Orleans and Belize, Guatemala, San Pedro Sula, Mexico City and Miami, Tampa.
ARGUS	Toronto and Guadalajara, Mexico City, New Orleans and Mexico City.
SWORD	Dallas−Fort Worth, New Orleans, Chicago and Cancun, Cozumel, and Central America.

19.3 Mandatory MET Reporting Points Within the Miami FIR

Point	For Flights Between
Grand Turk	New York and Aruba, Curacao, Kingston, Miami and Belem, St. Thomas, Rio de Janeiro, San Paulo, St. Croix, Kingston and Bermuda.
GRATX	Madrid and Miami, Havana.
MAPYL	New York and Guayaquil, Montego Bay, Panama, Lima, Atlanta and San Juan.
RESIN	New Orleans and San Juan.
SLAPP	New York and Aruba, Curacao, Kingston, Port−au−Prince. Bermuda and Freeport, Nassau. New York and Barranquilla, Bogota, Santo Domingo, Washington and Santo Domingo, Atlanta and San Juan.

19.4 Mandatory MET Reporting Points Within the San Juan FIR

Point	For Flights Between
GRANN	Toronto and Barbados, New York and Fort de France. At intersection of routes A321, A523, G432.
KRAFT	San Juan and Buenos Aires, Caracas, St. Thomas, St. Croix, St. Maarten, San Juan, Kingston and Bermuda.
PISAX	New York and Barbados, Fort de France, Bermuda and Antigua, Barbados.

TBL GEN 3.5−8

Intensity	Ice Accumulation
Trace	Ice becomes perceptible. Rate of accumulation slightly greater than rate of sublimation. Deicing/anti−icing equipment is not utilized unless encountered for an extended period of time (over 1 hour).
Light	The rate of accumulation may create a problem if flight is prolonged in this environment (over 1 hour). Occasional use of deicing/anti−icing equipment removes/prevents accumulation. It does not present a problem if the deicing/anti−icing equipment is used.
Moderate	The rate of accumulation is such that even short encounters become potentially hazardous and use of deicing/anti−icing equipment or diversion is necessary.
Severe	The rate of accumulation is such that deicing/anti−icing equipment fails to reduce or control the hazard. Immediate diversion is necessary.
Pilot Report: Aircraft Identification, Location, Time (UTC), Intensity of Type[1], Altitude/FL, Aircraft Type, Indicated Air Speed (IAS), and Outside Air Temperature (OAT)[2].	
[1]Rime or Clear Ice: Rime ice is a rough, milky, opaque ice formed by the instantaneous freezing of small supercooled water droplets. Clear ice is a glossy, clear, or translucent ice formed by the relatively slow freezing of large supercooled water droplets.	
[2]The Outside Air Temperature (OAT) should be requested by the AFSS/FSS or ATC if not included in the PIREP.	

20. PIREPs Relating to Airframe Icing

20.1 The effects of ice accretion on aircraft are: cumulative−thrust is reduced, drag increases, lift lessens, weight increases. The results are an increase in stall speed and a deterioration of aircraft performance. In extreme cases, 2 to 3 inches of ice can form on the leading edge of the airfoil in less than 5 minutes. It takes but $^1/_2$ inch of ice to reduce the lifting power of some aircraft by 50 percent and to increase the frictional drag by an equal percentage.

20.2 A pilot can expect icing when flying in visible precipitation, such as rain or cloud droplets, and the temperature is between +02 and −10 degrees Celsius. When icing is detected, a pilot should do one of two things (particularly if the aircraft is not equipped with deicing equipment). The pilot should get out of the area of precipitation or go to an altitude where the temperature is above freezing. This "warmer" altitude may not always be a lower altitude. Proper preflight action includes obtaining information on the freezing level and the above−freezing levels in precipitation areas. Report the icing to an ATC or FSS facility, and if operating IFR, request new routing or altitude if icing will be a hazard. Be sure to give the type of aircraft to ATC when reporting icing. TBL GEN 3.5−8, describes how to report icing conditions.

21. PIREPs Relating to Turbulence

21.1 When encountering turbulence, pilots are urgently requested to report such conditions to ATC as soon as practicable. PIREPs relating to turbulence should state:

21.1.1 Aircraft location.

21.1.2 Time of occurrence in UTC.

21.1.3 Turbulence intensity.

21.1.4 Whether the turbulence occurred in or near clouds.

21.1.5 Aircraft altitude, or flight level.

21.1.6 Type of aircraft.

21.1.7 Duration of turbulence.

EXAMPLE−
1. *Over Omaha, 1232Z, moderate turbulence in clouds at Flight Level three one zero, Boeing 707.*
2. *From five zero miles south of Albuquerque to three zero miles north of Phoenix, 1250Z, occasional moderate chop at Flight Level three three zero, DC8.*

21.2 Duration and classification of intensity should be made using TBL GEN 3.5−9, Turbulence Reporting Criteria Table.

TBL GEN 3.5−9

Turbulence Reporting Criteria Table

Intensity	Aircraft Reaction	Reaction inside Aircraft	Reporting Term−Definition
Light	Turbulence that momentarily causes slight, erratic changes in altitude and/or attitude (pitch, roll, yaw). Report as **Light Turbulence;** [1] or Turbulence that causes slight, rapid and somewhat rhythmic bumpiness without appreciable changes in altitude or attitude. Report as **Light Chop.**	Occupants may feel a slight strain against seat belts or shoulder straps. Unsecured objects may be displaced slightly. Food service may be conducted, and little or no difficulty is encountered in walking.	Occasional−Less than $^{1}/_{3}$ of the time. Intermittent−$^{1}/_{3}$ to $^{2}/_{3}$. Continuous−More than $^{2}/_{3}$.
Moderate	Turbulence that is similar to Light Turbulence but of greater intensity. Changes in altitude and/or attitude occur, but the aircraft remains in positive control at all times. It usually causes variations in indicated airspeed. Report as **Moderate Turbulence;** [1] or Turbulence that is similar to Light Chop but of greater intensity. It causes rapid bumps or jolts without appreciable changes in aircraft altitude or attitude. Report as **Moderate Chop.** [1]	Occupants feel definite strains against seat belts or shoulder straps. Unsecured objects are dislodged. Food service and walking are difficult.	**NOTE** 1. Pilots should report location(s), time (UTC), intensity, whether in or near clouds, altitude, type of aircraft and, when applicable, duration of turbulence. 2. Duration may be based on time between two locations or over a single location. All locations should be readily identifiable.
Severe	Turbulence that causes large, abrupt changes in altitude and/or attitude. It usually causes large variations in indicated airspeed. Aircraft may be momentarily out of control. Report as **Severe Turbulence.**[1]	Occupants are forced violently against seat belts or shoulder straps. Unsecured objects are tossed about. Food service and walking are impossible.	**EXAMPLES:** a. Over Omaha. 1232Z, Moderate Turbulence, in cloud, Flight Level 310, B707.
Extreme	Turbulence in which the aircraft is violently tossed about and is practically impossible to control. It may cause structural damage. Report as **Extreme Turbulence.** [1]		b. From 50 miles south of Albuquerque to 30 miles north of Phoenix, 1210Z to 1250Z, occasional Moderate Chop, Flight Level 330, DC8.
[1] High level turbulence (normally above 15,000 feet ASL) not associated with cumuliform cloudiness, including thunderstorms, should be reported as clear air turbulence (CAT) preceded by the appropriate intensity, or light or moderate chop.			

22. Wind Shear PIREPs

22.1 Because unexpected changes in wind speed and direction can be hazardous to aircraft operations at low altitudes on approach to and departing from airports, pilots are urged to promptly volunteer reports to controllers of wind shear conditions they encounter. An advance warning of this information will assist other pilots in avoiding or coping with a wind shear on approach or departure.

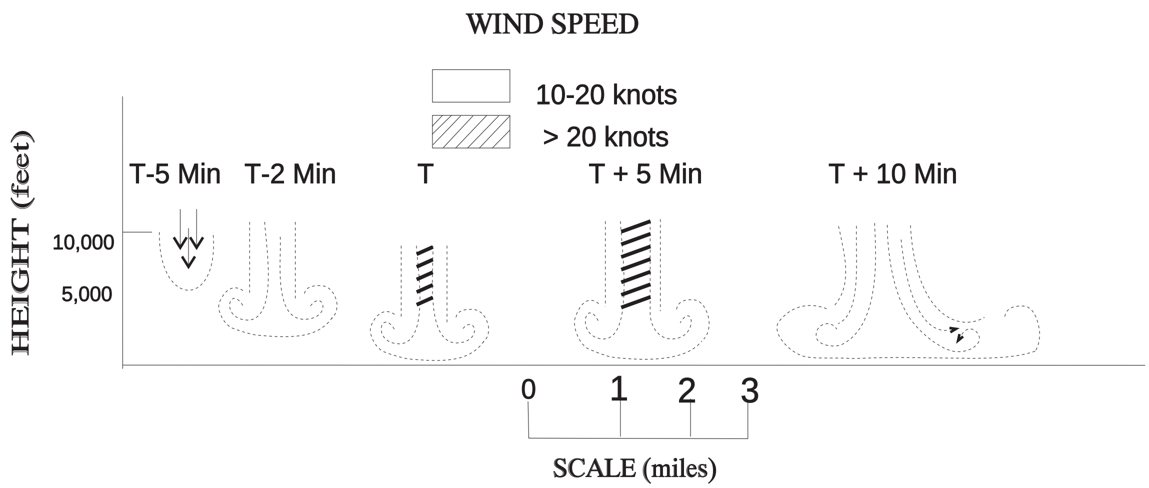
22.2 When describing conditions, the use of the terms "negative" or "positive" wind shear should be avoided. PIREPs of negative wind shear on final, intended to describe loss of airspeed and lift, have been interpreted to mean that no wind shear was encountered. The recommended method for wind shear reporting is to state the loss/gain of airspeed and the altitude(s) at which it was encountered.

EXAMPLE−
1. *Denver Tower, Cessna 1234 encountered wind shear, loss of 20 knots at 400.*
2. *Tulsa Tower, American 721 encountered wind shear on final, gained 25 knots between 600 and 400 feet followed by loss of 40 knots between 400 feet and surface.*

Pilots using Inertial Navigation Systems should report the wind and altitude both above and below the shear layer.

FIG GEN 3.5−9

Evolution of a Microburst



Vertical cross section of the evolution of a microburst wind field. T is the time of initial divergence at the surface. The shading refers to the vector wind speeds. Figure adapted from Wilson et al., 1984, Microburst Wind Structure and Evaluation of Doppler Radar for Wind Shear Detection, DOT/FAA Report No. DOT/FAA/PM-84/29, National Technical Information Service, Springfield, VA 37 pp.

EXAMPLE−
Miami Tower, Gulfstream 403 Charlie encountered an abrupt wind shear at 800 feet on final, max thrust required.

Pilots who are not able to report wind shear in these specific terms are encouraged to make reports in terms of the effect upon their aircraft.

23. Clear Air Turbulence (CAT) PIREPs

23.1 Clear air turbulence (CAT) has become a very serious operational factor to flight operations at all levels and especially to jet traffic flying in excess of 15,000 feet. The best available information on this phenomenon must come from pilots via the PIREP procedures. All pilots encountering CAT conditions are urgently requested to report time, location, and intensity (light, moderate, severe, or extreme) of the element to the FAA facility with which they are maintaining radio contact. If time and conditions permit, elements should be reported according to the standards for other PIREPs and position reports. See TBL GEN 3.5−9, Turbulence Reporting Criteria Table.

24. Microbursts

24.1 Relatively recent meteorological studies have confirmed the existence of microburst phenomena. Microbursts are small−scale intense downdrafts which, on reaching the surface, spread outward in all directions from the downdraft center. This causes the presence of both vertical and horizontal wind shears that can be extremely hazardous to all types and categories of aircraft, especially at low altitudes. Due to their small size, short life−span, and the fact that they can occur over areas without surface precipitation, microbursts are not easily detectable using conventional weather radar or wind shear alert systems.

24.2 Parent clouds producing microburst activity can be any of the low or middle layer convective cloud types. Note however, that microbursts commonly occur within the heavy rain portion of thunderstorms, and in much weaker, benign−appearing convective cells that have little or no precipitation reaching the ground.

24.3 The life cycle of a microburst as it descends in a convective rain shaft is seen in FIG GEN 3.5−9, Evolution of a Microburst. An important consideration for pilots is the fact that the microburst intensifies for about 5 minutes after it strikes the ground.

24.4 Characteristics of microbursts include:

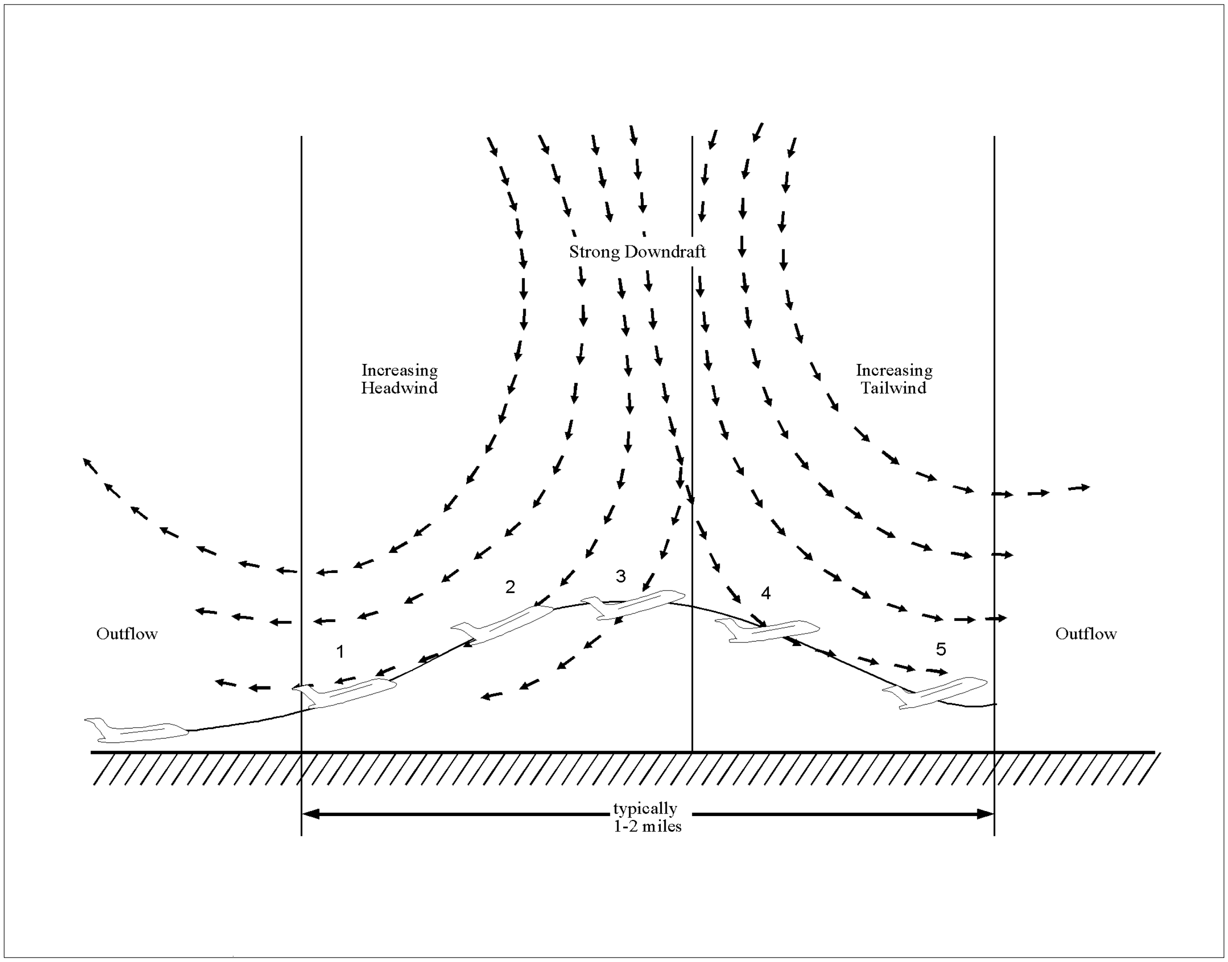
24.4.1 Size. The microburst downdraft is typically less than 1 mile in diameter as it descends from the cloud base to about 1,000−3,000 feet above the ground. In the transition zone near the ground, the downdraft changes to a horizontal outflow that can extend to approximately 2 $^1/_2$ miles in diameter.

24.4.2 Intensity. The downdrafts can be as strong as 6,000 feet per minute. Horizontal winds near the surface can be as strong as 45 knots resulting in a 90−knot shear (headwind to tailwind change for a traversing aircraft) across the microburst. These strong horizontal winds occur within a few hundred feet of the ground.

24.4.3 Visual Signs. Microbursts can be found almost anywhere that there is convective activity. They may be embedded in heavy rain associated with a thunderstorm or in light rain in benign− appearing virga. When there is little or no precipitation at the surface accompanying the microburst, a ring of blowing dust may be the only visual clue of its existence.

24.4.4 Duration. An individual microburst will seldom last longer than 15 minutes from the time it strikes the ground until dissipation. The horizontal winds continue to increase during the first 5 minutes with the maximum intensity winds lasting approximately 2−4 minutes. Sometimes microbursts are concentrated into a line structure and, under these conditions, activity may continue for as long as 1 hour. Once microburst activity starts, multiple microbursts in the same general area are not uncommon and should be expected.

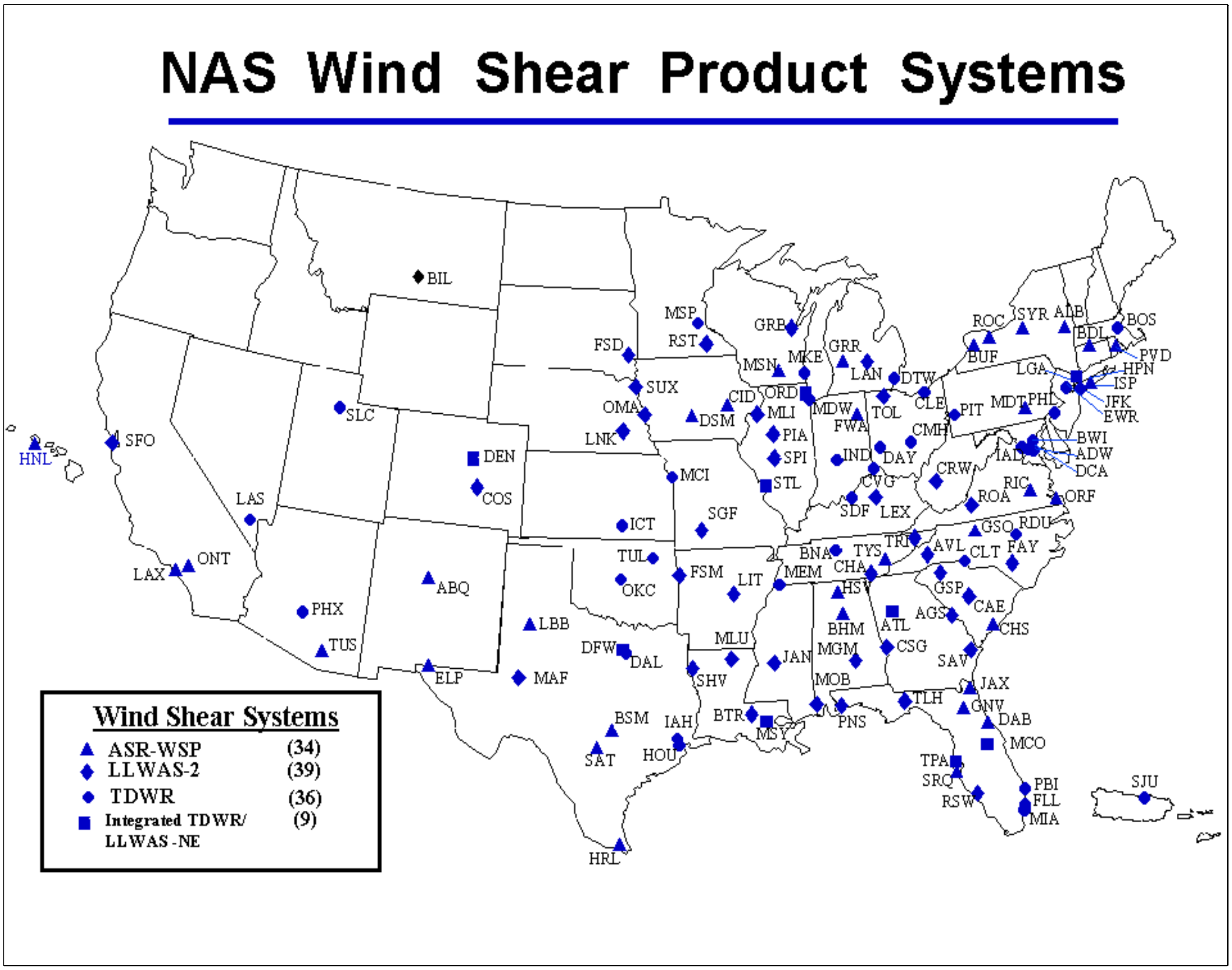
FIG GEN 3.5−10
Microburst Encounter During Takeoff



NOTE−
A microburst encounter during takeoff. The airplane first encounters a headwind and experiences increasing performance (1), this is followed in short succession by a decreasing headwind component (2), a downdraft (3), and finally a strong tailwind (4), where 2 through 5 all result in decreasing performance of the airplane. Position (5) represents an extreme situation just prior to impact. Figure courtesy of Walter Frost, FWG Associates, Inc., Tullahoma, Tennessee.

24.5 Microburst wind shear may create a severe hazard for aircraft within 1,000 feet of the ground, particularly during the approach to landing and landing and take−off phases. The impact of a microburst on aircraft which have the unfortunate experience of penetrating one is characterized in FIG GEN 3.5−10. The aircraft may encounter a headwind (performance increasing), followed by a downdraft and a tailwind (both performance decreasing), possibly resulting in terrain impact.

FIG GEN 3.5−11



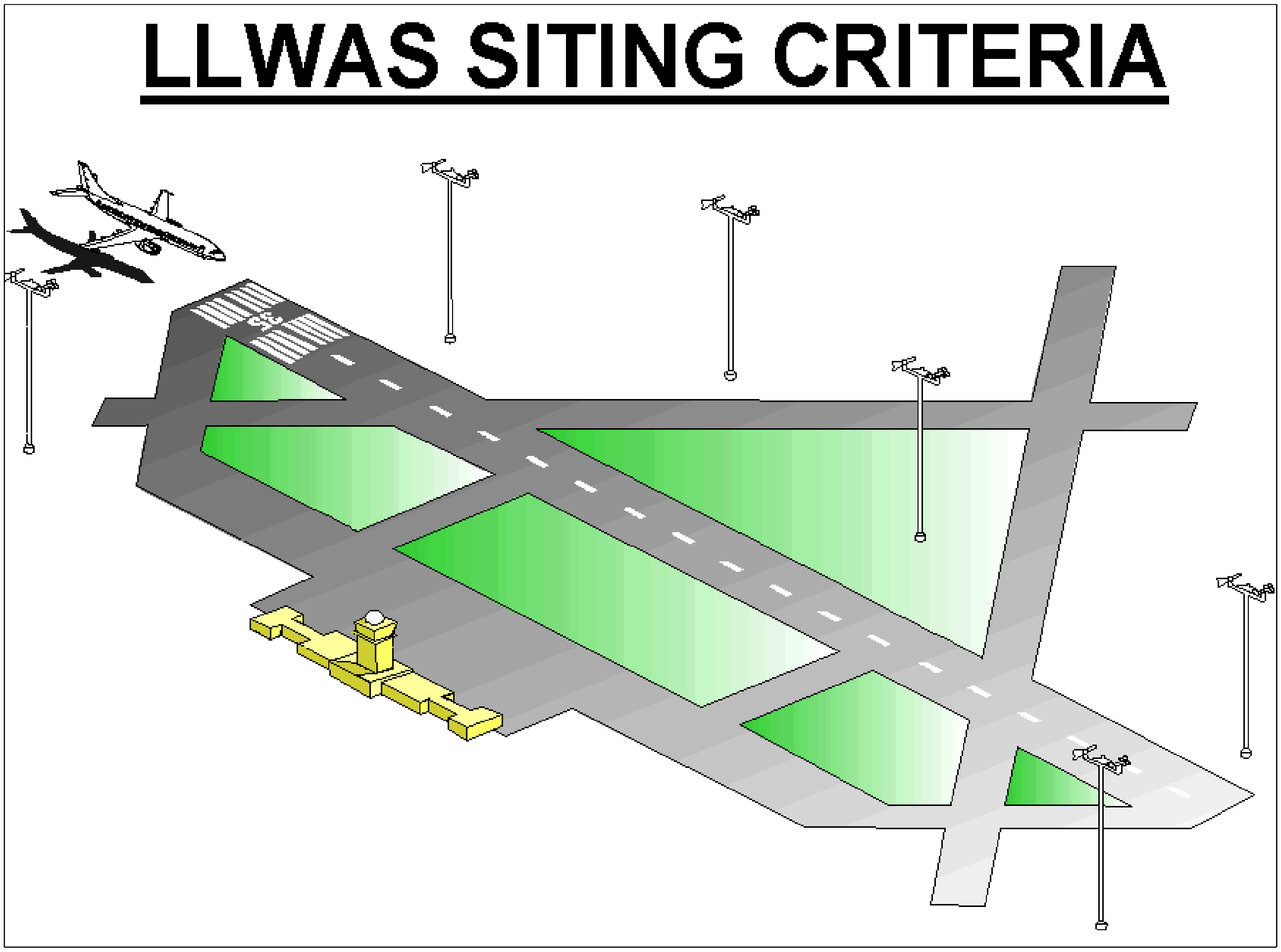
24.6 Detection of Microbursts, Wind Shear, and Gust Fronts

24.6.1 FAA's Integrated Wind Shear Detection Plan

24.6.1.1 The FAA currently employs an integrated plan for wind shear detection that will significantly improve both the safety and capacity of the majority of the airports currently served by the air carriers. This plan integrates several programs, such as the Integrated Terminal Weather System (ITWS), Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR), Weather System Processor (WSP), and Low Level Wind Shear Alert Systems (LLWAS) into a single strategic concept that significantly improves the aviation weather information in the terminal area.
(See FIG GEN 3.5−11.)

24.6.1.2 The wind shear/microburst information and warnings are displayed on the ribbon display terminal (RBDT) located in the tower cabs. They are identical (and standardized) to those in the LLWAS, TDWR and WSP systems, and designed so that the controller does not need to interpret the data, but simply read the displayed information to the pilot. The RBDTs are constantly monitored by the controller to ensure the rapid and timely dissemination of any hazardous event(s) to the pilot.

FIG GEN 3.5−12



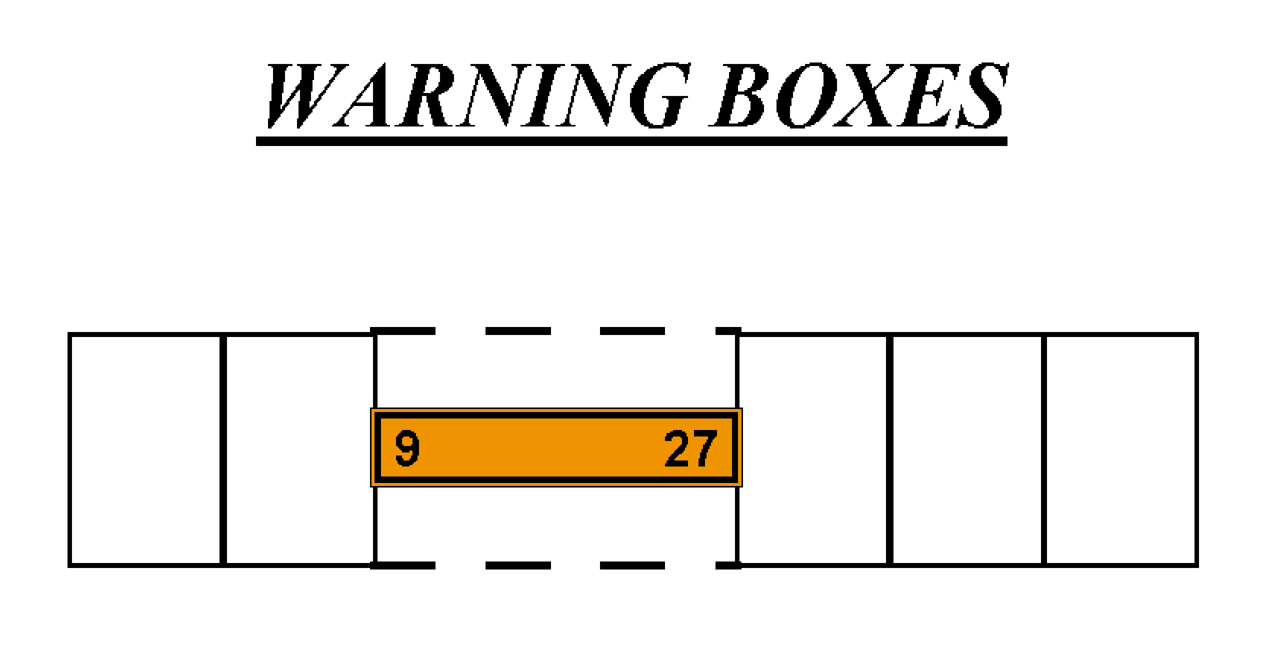
24.6.1.3 The early detection of a wind shear/microburst event, and the subsequent warning(s) issued to an aircraft on approach or departure, will alert the pilot/crew to the potential of, and to be prepared for, a situation that could become very dangerous! Without these warnings, the aircraft may NOT be able to climb out of or safely transition the event, resulting in a catastrophe. The air carriers, working with the FAA, have developed specialized training programs using their simulators to train and prepare their pilots on the demanding aircraft procedures required to escape these very dangerous wind shear and/or microburst encounters.

24.6.1.4 Low Level Wind Shear Alert System (LLWAS)

a) The LLWAS provides wind data and software processes to detect the presence of hazardous wind shear and microbursts in the vicinity of an airport. Wind sensors, mounted on poles sometimes as high as 150 feet, are (ideally) located 2,000 − 3,500 feet, but not more than 5,000 feet, from the centerline of the runway. (See FIG GEN 3.5−12.)

b) The LLWAS was fielded in 1988 at 110 airports across the nation. Many of these systems have been replaced by new terminal doppler weather radar (TDWR) and weather systems processor (WSP) technology. Eventually all LLWAS systems will be phased out; however, 39 airports will be upgraded to the LLWAS−NE (Network Expansion) system, which employs the very latest software and sensor technology. The new LLWAS−NE systems will not only provide the controller with wind shear warnings and alerts, including wind shear/microburst detection at the airport wind sensor location, but will also provide the location of the hazards relative to the airport runway(s). It will also have the flexibility and capability to grow with the airport as new runways are built. As many as 32 sensors, strategically located around the airport and in relationship to its runway configuration, can be accommodated by the LLWAS−NE network.

FIG GEN 3.5−13



24.6.1.5 Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR)

a) TDWRs are being deployed at 45 locations across the U.S. Optimum locations for TDWRs are 8 to 12 miles from the airport proper, and designed to look at the airspace around and over the airport to detect microbursts, gust fronts, wind shifts, and precipitation intensities. TDWR products advise the controller of wind shear and microburst events impacting all runways and the areas $^{1}/_{2}$ mile on either side of the extended centerline of the runways and to a distance of 3 miles on final approach and 2 miles on departure. FIG GEN 3.5−13 is a theoretical view of the runway and the warning boxes that the software uses to determine the location(s) of wind shear or microbursts. These warnings are displayed (as depicted in the examples in subparagraph e) on the ribbon display terminal located in the tower cabs.

b) It is very important to understand what TDWR DOES NOT DO:

1) It **DOES NOT** warn of wind shear outside of the alert boxes (on the arrival and departure ends of the runways).

2) It **DOES NOT** detect wind shear that is NOT a microburst or a gust front.

3) It **DOES NOT** detect gusty or cross wind conditions.

4) It **DOES NOT** detect turbulence.

However, research and development is continuing on these systems. Future improvements may include such areas as storm motion (movement), improved gust front detection, storm growth and decay, microburst prediction, and turbulence detection.

c) TDWR also provides a geographical situation display (GSD) for supervisors and traffic management specialists for planning purposes. The GSD displays (in color) 6 levels of weather (precipitation), gust fronts and predicted storm movement(s). This data is used by the tower supervisor(s), traffic management specialists, and controllers to plan for runway changes and arrival/departure route changes in order to reduce aircraft delays and increase airport capacity.

24.6.1.6 Weather Systems Processor (WSP)

a) The WSP provides the controller, supervisor, traffic management specialist, and ultimately the pilot, with the same products as the terminal doppler weather radar at a fraction of the cost. This is accomplished by utilizing new technologies to access the weather channel capabilities of the existing ASR−9 radar located on or near the airport, thus eliminating the requirements for a separate radar location, land acquisition, support facilities, and the associated communication landlines and expenses.

b) The WSP utilizes the same RBDT display as the TDWR and LLWAS, and, like the TDWR, has a GSD for planning purposes by supervisors, traffic management specialists, and controllers. The WSP GSD emulates the TDWR display; i.e., it also depicts 6 levels of precipitation, gust fronts and predicted storm movement, and like the TDWR, GSD is used to plan for runway changes and arrival/departure route changes in order to reduce aircraft delays and to increase airport capacity.

c) This system is currently under development and is operating in a developmental test status at the Albuquerque, New Mexico, airport. When fielded, the WSP is expected to be installed at 34 airports across the nation, substantially increasing the safety of flying.

24.6.1.7 Operational Aspects of LLWAS, TDWR, and WSP

To demonstrate how this data is used by both the controller and the pilot, 3 ribbon display examples and their explanations are presented:

a) MICROBURST ALERTS

EXAMPLE−
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A MBA 35K− 2MF 250 20

NOTE−
(See FIG GEN 3.5−14 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the microburst location).

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, MICROBURST ALERT, 35 KT LOSS 2 MILE FINAL, THRESHOLD WINDS 250 AT 20.

In plain language, the controller is telling the pilot that on approach to runway 27, there is a microburst alert on the approach lane to the runway, and to anticipate or expect a 35−knot loss of airspeed at approximately 2 miles out on final approach (where the aircraft will first encounter the phenomena). With that information, the aircrew is forewarned, and should be prepared to apply wind shear/microburst escape procedures should they decide to continue the approach. Additionally, the surface winds at the airport for landing runway 27 are reported as 250 degrees at 20 knots.

NOTE−
Threshold wind is at pilot's request or as deemed appropriate by the controller.

b) WIND SHEAR ALERTS

EXAMPLE−
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A WSA 20K− 3MF 200 15

NOTE−
(See FIG GEN 3.5−15 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the wind shear location).

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT LOSS 3 MILE FINAL, THRESHOLD WINDS 200 AT 15.

In plain language, the controller is advising the aircraft arriving on runway 27 that at 3 miles out the pilot should expect to encounter a wind shear condition that will decrease airspeed by 20 knots and possibly the aircraft will encounter turbulence. Additionally, the airport surface winds for landing runway 27 are reported as 200 degrees at 15 knots.

NOTE−
Threshold wind is at pilot's request or as deemed appropriate by the controller.

FIG GEN 3.5−14

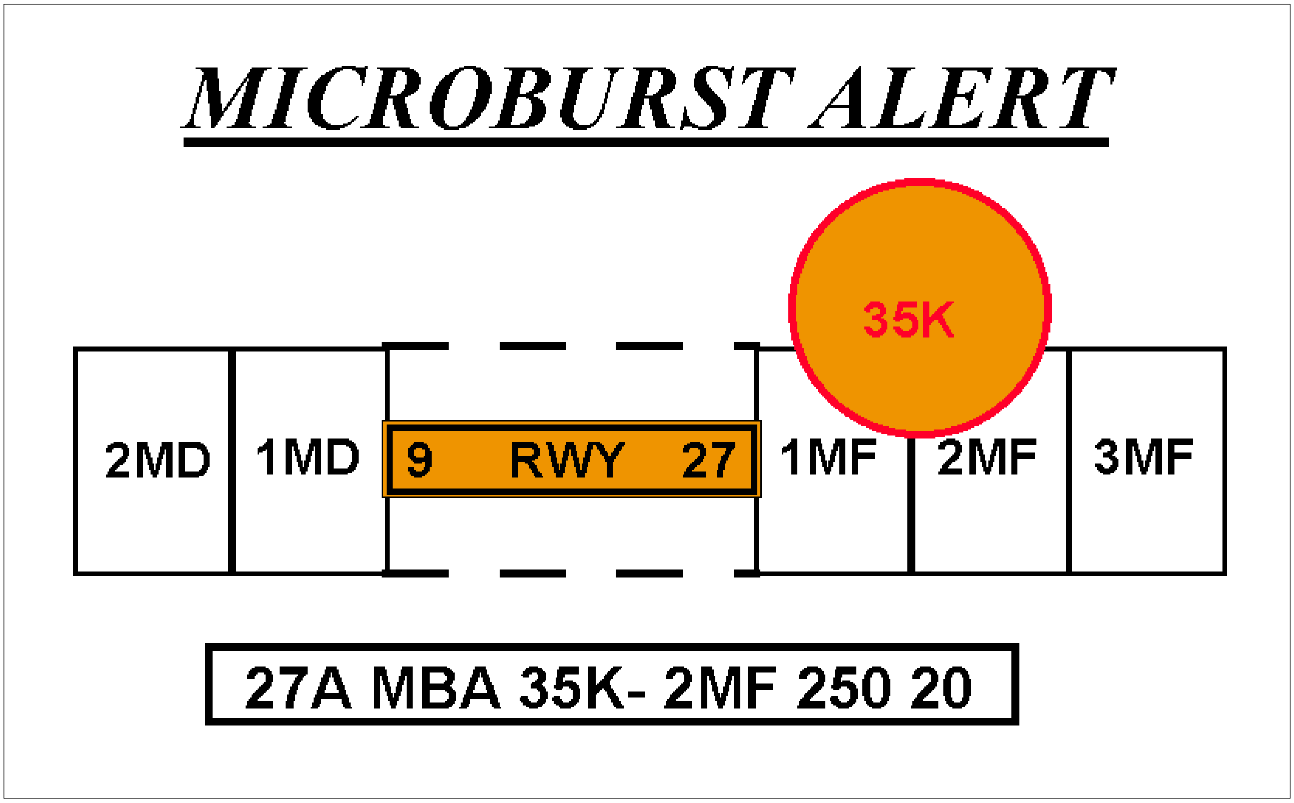


FIG GEN 3.5−15

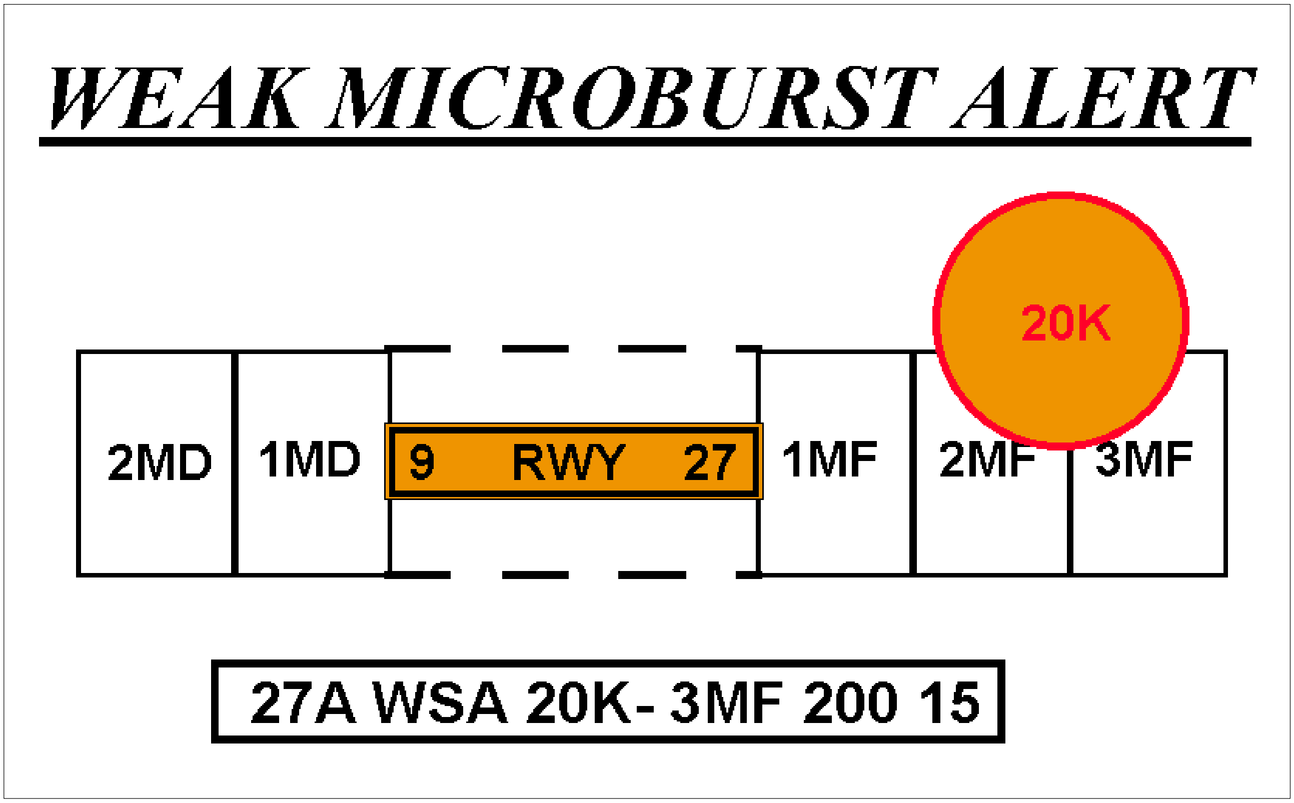
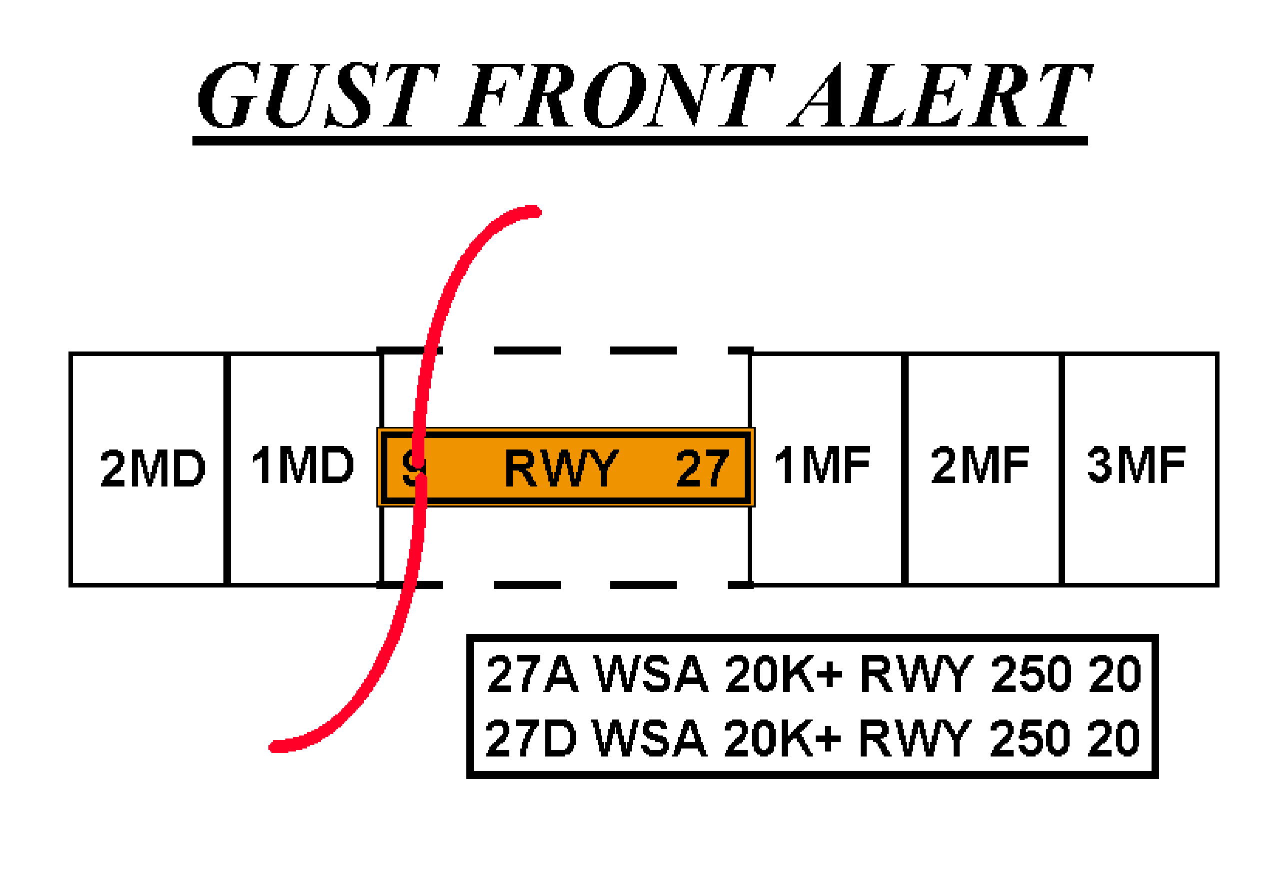


FIG GEN 3.5−16



c) MULTIPLE WIND SHEAR ALERTS

EXAMPLE−
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A WSA 20K+ RWY	250 20
27D WSA 20K+ RWY	250 20

NOTE−
(See FIG GEN 3.5−16 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the gust front/wind shear location).

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

PHRASEOLOGY−
MULTIPLE WIND SHEAR ALERTS.
RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT GAIN ON RUNWAY;
RUNWAY 27 DEPARTURE, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT GAIN ON RUNWAY, WINDS 250 AT 20.

EXAMPLE−
In this example, the controller is advising arriving and departing aircraft that they could encounter a wind shear condition right on the runway due to a gust front (significant change of wind direction) with the possibility of a 20 knot gain in airspeed associated with the gust front. Additionally, the airport surface winds (for the runway in use) are reported as 250 degrees at 20 knots.

24.6.1.8 The Terminal Weather Information for Pilots System (TWIP)

a) With the increase in the quantity and quality of terminal weather information available through TDWR, the next step is to provide this information directly to pilots rather than relying on voice communications from ATC. The National Airspace System has long been in need of a means of delivering terminal weather information to the cockpit more efficiently in terms of both speed and accuracy to enhance pilot awareness of weather hazards and to reduce air traffic controller workload. With the TWIP capability, terminal weather information, both alphanumerically and graphically, is now available directly to the cockpit on a test basis at 9 locations.

b) TWIP products are generated using weather data from the TDWR or the Integrated Terminal Weather System (ITWS) testbed. TWIP products are generated and stored in the form of text and character graphic messages. Software has been developed to allow TDWR or ITWS to format the data and send the TWIP products to a database resident at Aeronautical Radio, Inc. (ARINC). These products can then be accessed by pilots using the ARINC Aircraft Communications Addressing and Reporting System (ACARS) data link services. Airline dispatchers can also access this database and send messages to specific aircraft whenever wind shear activity begins or ends at an airport.

c) TWIP products include descriptions and character graphics of microburst alerts, wind shear alerts, significant precipitation, convective activity within 30 NM surrounding the terminal area, and expected weather that will impact airport operations. During inclement weather; i.e., whenever a predetermined level of precipitation or wind shear is detected within 15 miles of the terminal area, TWIP products are updated once each minute for text messages and once every 5 minutes for character graphic messages. During good weather (below the predetermined precipitation or wind shear parameters) each message is updated every 10 minutes. These products are intended to improve the situational awareness of the pilot/flight crew, and to aid in flight planning prior to arriving or departing the terminal area. It is important to understand that, in the context of TWIP, the predetermined levels for inclement versus good weather has nothing to do with the criteria for VFR/MVFR/IFR/LIFR; it only deals with precipitation, wind shears, and microbursts.

25. PIREPs Relating to Volcanic Ash Activity

25.1 Volcanic eruptions which send ash into the upper atmosphere occur somewhere around the world several times each year. Flying into a volcanic ash cloud can be exceedingly dangerous. At least two B747s have lost all power in all four engines after such an encounter. Regardless of the type aircraft, some damage is almost certain to ensue after an encounter with a volcanic ash cloud.

25.2 While some volcanoes in the U.S. are monitored, many in remote areas are not. These unmonitored volcanoes may erupt without prior warning to the aviation community. A pilot observing a volcanic eruption who has not had previous notification of it may be the only witness to the eruption. Pilots are strongly encouraged to transmit a PIREP regarding volcanic eruptions and any observed volcanic ash clouds.

25.3 Pilots should submit PIREPs regarding volcanic activity using the Volcanic Activity Reporting form (VAR) as illustrated in FIG GEN 3.5−31. (If a VAR form is not immediately available, relay enough information to identify the position and type of volcanic activity.)

25.4 Pilots should verbally transmit the data required in items 1 through 8 of the VAR as soon as possible. The data required in items 9 through 16 of the VAR should be relayed after landing, if possible.

26. Thunderstorms

26.1 Turbulence, hail, rain, snow, lightning, sustained updrafts and downdrafts, and icing conditions are all present in thunderstorms. While there is some evidence that maximum turbulence exists at the middle level of a thunderstorm, recent studies show little variation of turbulence intensity with altitude.

26.2 There is no useful correlation between the external visual appearance of thunderstorms and the severity or amount of turbulence or hail within them. Also, the visible thunderstorm cloud is only a portion of a turbulent system whose updrafts and downdrafts often extend far beyond the visible storm cloud. Severe turbulence can be expected up to 20 miles from severe thunderstorms. This distance decreases to about 10 miles in less severe storms. These turbulent areas may appear as a well−defined echo on weather radar.

26.3 Weather radar, airborne or ground−based, will normally reflect the areas of moderate to heavy precipitation. (Radar does not detect turbulence.) The frequency and severity of turbulence generally increases with the areas of highest liquid water content of the storm. NO FLIGHT PATH THROUGH AN AREA OF STRONG OR VERY STRONG RADAR ECHOES SEPARATED BY 20−30 MILES OR LESS MAY BE CONSIDERED FREE OF SEVERE TURBULENCE.

26.4 Turbulence beneath a thunderstorm should not be minimized. This is especially true when the relative humidity is low in any layer between the surface and 15,000 feet. Then the lower altitudes may be characterized by strong out−flowing winds and severe turbulence.

26.5 The probability of lightning strikes occurring to aircraft is greatest when operating at altitudes where temperatures are between −5 C and +5 C. Lightning can strike aircraft flying in the clear in the vicinity of a thunderstorm.

26.6 National Weather Service radar systems are able to objectively determine radar weather echo intensity levels by use of Video Integrator Processor (VIP) equipment. The thunderstorm intensity levels are on a scale of one to six.

EXAMPLE−
Alert provided by an ATC facility to an aircraft:

(Aircraft identification), LEVEL FIVE INTENSE WEATHER ECHO BETWEEN TEN O'CLOCK AND TWO O'CLOCK, ONE ZERO MILES, MOVING EAST AT TWO ZERO KNOTS, TOPS FLIGHT LEVEL THREE NINER ZERO.

EXAMPLE−
Alert provided by a Flight Service Station:

(Aircraft identification), LEVEL FIVE INTENSE WEATHER ECHO, TWO ZERO MILES WEST OF THE ATLANTA V−O−R, TWO FIVE MILES WIDE, MOVING EAST AT TWO ZERO KNOTS, TOPS FLIGHT LEVEL THREE NINER ZERO.

27. Thunderstorm Flying

27.1 Above all, remember this: never regard any thunderstorm lightly, even when radar observers report the echoes are of light intensity. Avoiding thunderstorms is the best policy. Following are some Do's and Don'ts of thunderstorm avoidance:

27.1.1 Don't land or takeoff in the face of an approaching thunderstorm. A sudden gust front of low−level turbulence could cause loss of control.

27.1.2 Don't attempt to fly under a thunderstorm even if you can see through to the other side. Turbulence and wind shear under the storm could be disastrous.

27.1.3 Don't fly without airborne radar into a cloud mass containing scattered embedded thunderstorms. Scattered thunderstorms not embedded usually can be visually circumnavigated.

27.1.4 Don't trust the visual appearance to be a reliable indicator of the turbulence inside a thunderstorm.

27.1.5 Do avoid by at least 20 miles any thunderstorm identified as severe or giving an intense radar echo. This is especially true under the anvil of a large cumulonimbus.

27.1.6 Do clear the top of a known or suspected severe thunderstorm by at least 1,000 feet altitude for each 10 knots of wind speed at the cloud top. However, the altitude capability of most aircraft make it unlikely that the aircraft will be able to clear the storm top.

27.1.7 Do circumnavigate the entire area if the area has 6/10 thunderstorm coverage.

27.1.8 Do remember that vivid and frequent lightning indicates the probability of a severe thunderstorm.

27.1.9 Do regard as extremely hazardous any thunderstorm with tops 35,000 feet or higher whether the top is visually sighted or determined by radar.

27.2 If you cannot avoid penetrating a thunderstorm, before entering the storm, you should do the following:

27.2.1 Tighten your safety belt, put on your shoulder harness if you have one, and secure all loose objects.

27.2.2 Plan and hold your course to take you through the storm in a minimum time.

27.2.3 To avoid the most critical icing, establish a penetration altitude below the freezing level or above the level of −15 C.

27.2.4 Verify that pitot heat is on and turn on carburetor heat or jet engine anti−ice. Icing can be rapid at any altitude and cause almost instantaneous power failure and/or loss of airspeed indication.

27.2.5 Establish power settings for turbulence penetration airspeed recommended in your aircraft manual.

27.2.6 Turn up cockpit lights to highest intensity to lessen danger of temporary blindness from lightning.

27.2.7 If using automatic pilot, disengage altitude hold mode and speed hold mode. The automatic altitude and speed controls will increase maneuvers of the aircraft thus increasing structural stresses.

27.2.8 If using airborne radar, tilt the antenna up and down occasionally. This will permit you to detect other thunderstorm activity at altitudes other than the one being flown.

27.3 Following are some Do's and Don'ts during the thunderstorm penetration:

27.3.1 Do keep your eyes on your instruments. Looking outside the cockpit can increase danger of temporary blindness from lightning.

27.3.2 Don't change power settings; maintain settings for the recommended turbulence penetration airspeed.

27.3.3 Do maintain constant attitude; let the aircraft "ride the waves." Maneuvers in trying to maintain constant altitude increase stress on the aircraft.

27.3.4 Don't turn back once you are in the thunderstorm. A straight course through the storm most likely will get you out of the hazards more quickly. In addition, turning maneuvers increase stress on the aircraft.

28. Wake Turbulence

28.1 General

28.1.1 Every aircraft generates a wake while in flight. Initially, when pilots encountered this wake in flight, the disturbance was attributed to "prop wash." It is known, however, that this disturbance is caused by a pair of counterrotating vortices trailing from the wing tips. The vortices from larger aircraft pose problems to encountering aircraft. For instance, the wake of these aircraft can impose rolling moments exceeding the roll control authority of the encountering aircraft. Further, turbulence generated within the vortices can damage aircraft components and equipment if encountered at close range. The pilot must learn to envision the location of the vortex wake generated by larger (transport category) aircraft and adjust the flight path accordingly.

28.1.2 During ground operations and during takeoff, jet engine blast (thrust stream turbulence) can cause damage and upsets if encountered at close range. Exhaust velocity versus distance studies at various thrust levels have shown a need for light aircraft to maintain an adequate separation behind large turbojet aircraft. Pilots of larger aircraft should be particularly careful to consider the effects of their "jet blast" on other aircraft, vehicles, and maintenance equipment during ground operations.

28.2 Vortex Generation

28.2.1 Lift is generated by the creation of a pressure differential over the wing surface. The lowest pressure occurs over the upper wing surface and the highest pressure under the wing. This pressure differential triggers the roll up of the airflow aft of the wing resulting in swirling air masses trailing downstream of the wing tips. After the roll up is completed, the wake consists of two counter rotating cylindrical vortices. Most of the energy is within a few feet of the center of each vortex, but pilots should avoid a region within about 100 feet of the vortex core. (See FIG GEN 3.5−17.)

28.3 Vortex Strength

28.3.1 The strength of the vortex is governed by the weight, speed, and shape of the wing of the generating aircraft. The vortex characteristics of any given aircraft can also be changed by extension of flaps or other wing configuring devices as well as by change in speed. However, as the basic factor is weight, the vortex strength increases proportionately. Peak vortex tangential speeds up to almost 300 feet per second have been recorded. The greatest vortex strength occurs when the generating aircraft is HEAVY, CLEAN, and SLOW.

28.3.2 Induced Roll

28.3.2.1 In rare instances, a wake encounter could cause inflight structural damage of catastrophic proportions. However, the usual hazard is associated with induced rolling moments which can exceed the roll control authority of the encountering aircraft. In flight experiments, aircraft have been intentionally flown directly up trailing vortex cores of larger aircraft. It was shown that the capability of an aircraft to counteract the roll imposed by the wake vortex primarily depends on the wing span and counter−control responsiveness of the encountering aircraft.

28.3.2.2 Counter−control is usually effective and induced roll minimal in cases where the wing span and ailerons of the encountering aircraft extend beyond the rotational flow field of the vortex. It is more difficult for aircraft with short wing span (relative to the generating aircraft) to counter the imposed roll induced by vortex flow. Pilots of short−span aircraft, even of the high−performance type, must be especially alert to vortex encounters. (See FIG GEN 3.5−18.)

28.3.2.3 The wake of larger aircraft requires the respect of all pilots.

28.4 Vortex Behavior

28.4.1 Trailing vortices have certain behavioral characteristics which can help a pilot visualize the wake location and thereby take avoidance precautions.

28.4.1.1 Vortices are generated from the moment aircraft leave the ground, since trailing vortices are a by−product of wing lift. Prior to takeoff or touchdown pilots should note the rotation or touchdown point of the preceding aircraft. (See FIG GEN 3.5−19.)

28.4.1.2 The vortex circulation is outward, upward and around the wing tips when viewed from either ahead or behind the aircraft. Tests with large aircraft have shown that the vortices remain spaced a bit less than a wing span apart, drifting with the wind, at altitudes greater than a wing span from the ground. In view of this, if persistent vortex turbulence is encountered, a slight change of altitude and lateral position (preferably upwind) will provide a flight path clear of the turbulence.

28.4.1.3 Flight tests have shown that the vortices from larger (transport category) aircraft sink at a rate of several hundred feet per minute, slowing their descent and diminishing in strength with time and distance behind the generating aircraft. Atmospheric turbulence hastens breakup. Pilots should fly at or above the preceding aircraft's flight path, altering course as necessary to avoid the area behind and below the generating aircraft. However, vertical separation of 1,000 feet may be considered safe. (See FIG GEN 3.5−20.)

FIG GEN 3.5−17
Wake Vortex Generation

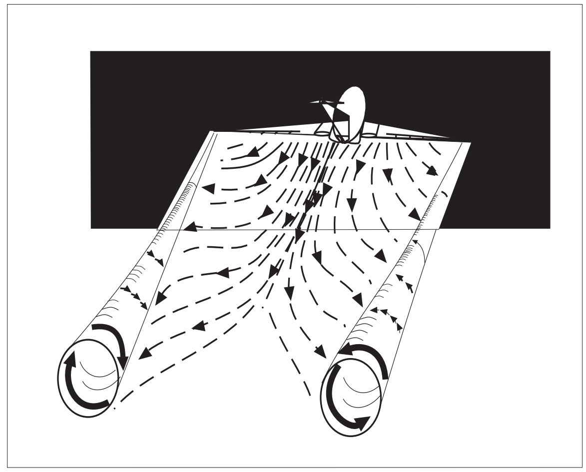


FIG GEN 3.5−18
Wake Encounter Counter Control

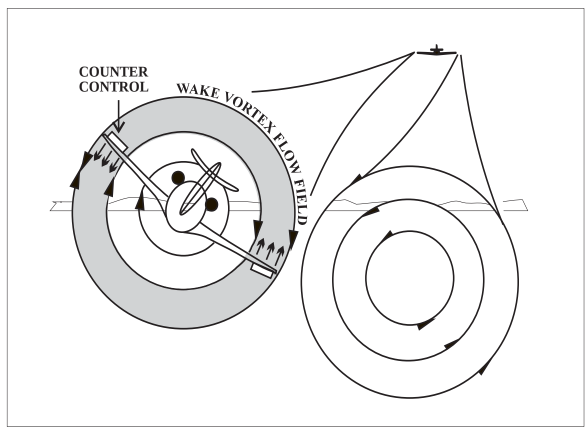


FIG GEN 3.5−19
Wake Ends/Wake Begins

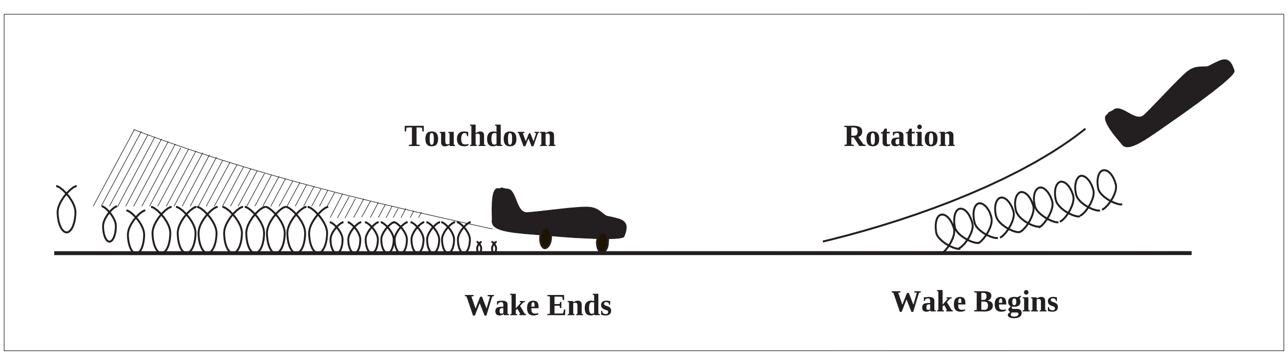


FIG GEN 3.5−20

Vortex Flow Field

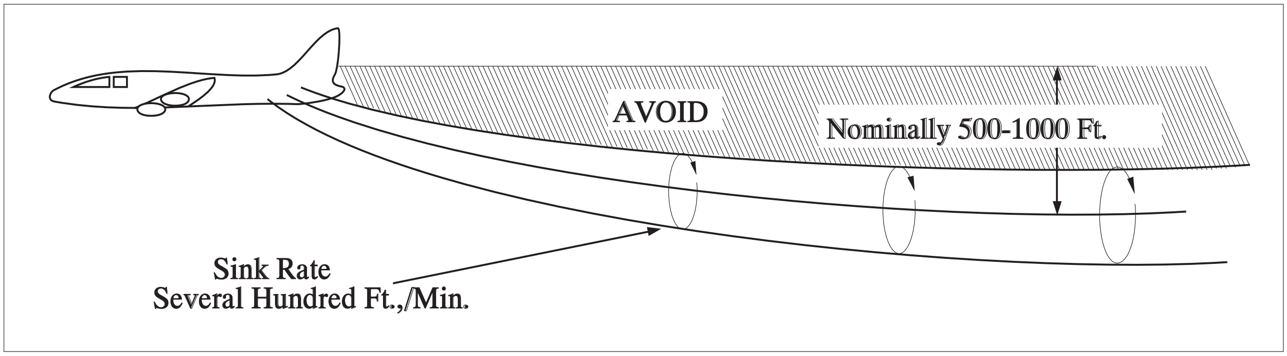
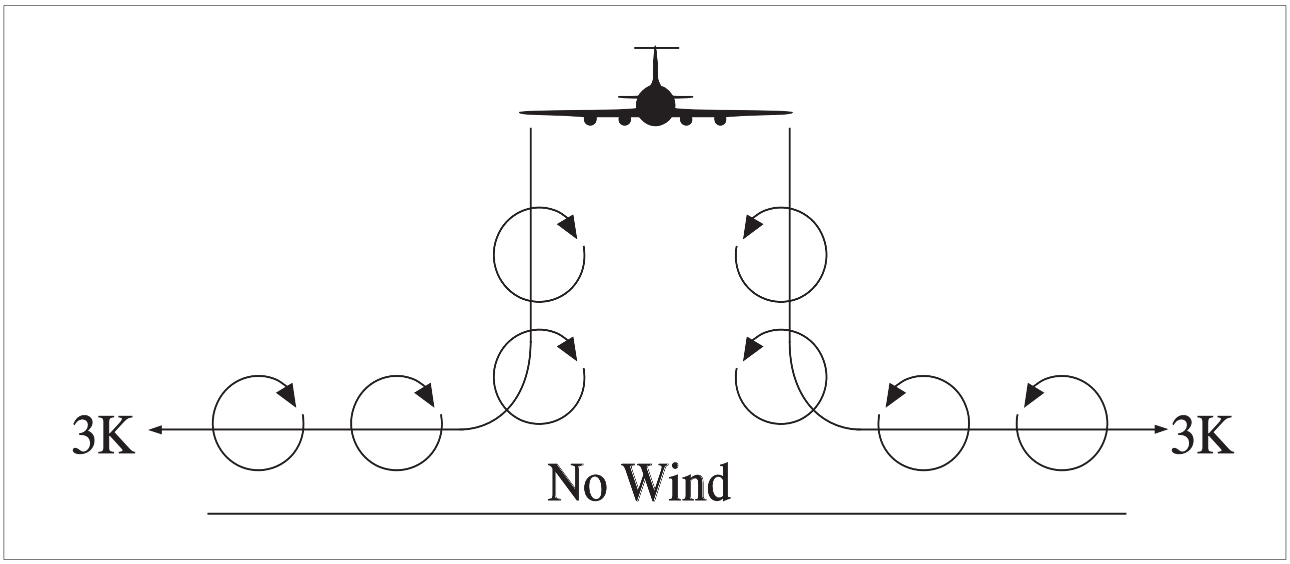


FIG GEN 3.5−21

Vortex Movement Near Ground − No Wind



28.4.1.4 When the vortices of larger aircraft sink close to the ground (within 100 to 200 feet), they tend to move laterally over the ground at a speed of 2 or 3 knots. (See FIG GEN 3.5−21.)

28.4.1.5 There is a small segment of the aviation community that have become convinced that wake vortices may "bounce" up to twice their nominal steady state height. With a 200−foot span aircraft, the "bounce" height could reach approximately 200 feet AGL. This conviction is based on a single unsubstantiated report of an apparent coherent vortical flow that was seen in the volume scan of a research sensor. No one can say what conditions cause vortex bouncing, how high they bounce, at what angle they bounce, or how many times a vortex may bounce. On the other hand, no one can say for certain that vortices never "bounce." Test data have shown that vortices can rise with the air mass in which they are embedded. Wind shear, particularly, can cause vortex flow field "tilting." Also, ambient thermal lifting and orographic effects (rising terrain or tree lines) can cause a vortex flow field to rise. Notwithstanding the foregoing, pilots are reminded that they should be alert at all times for possible wake vortex encounters when conducting approach and landing operations. The pilot has the ultimate responsibility for ensuring appropriate separations and positioning of the aircraft in the terminal area to avoid the wake turbulence created by a preceding aircraft.

FIG GEN 3.5−22
Vortex Movement Near Ground − with Cross Winds

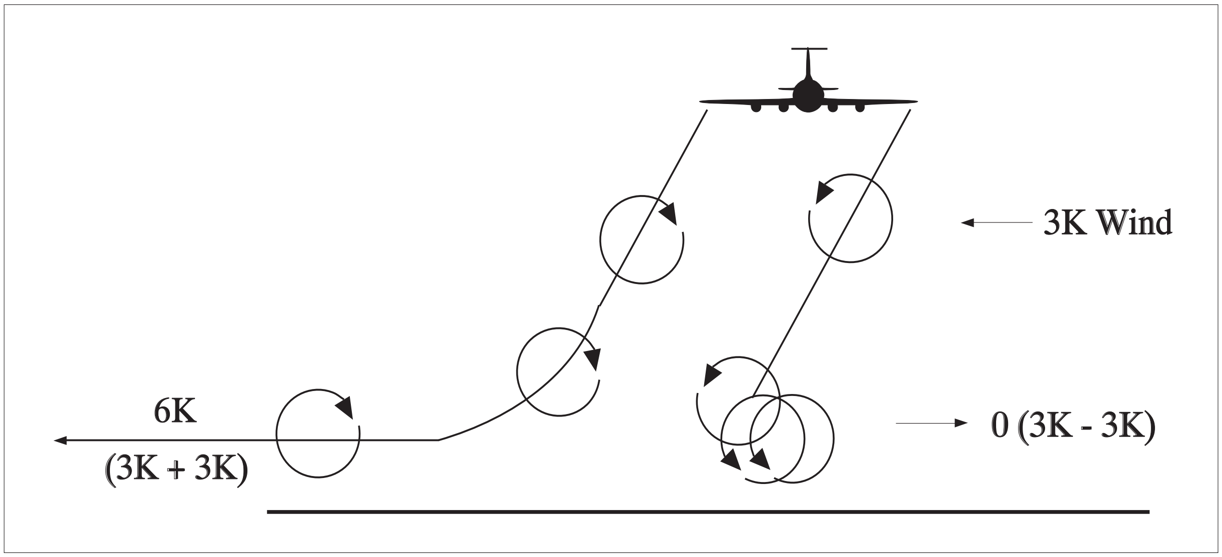
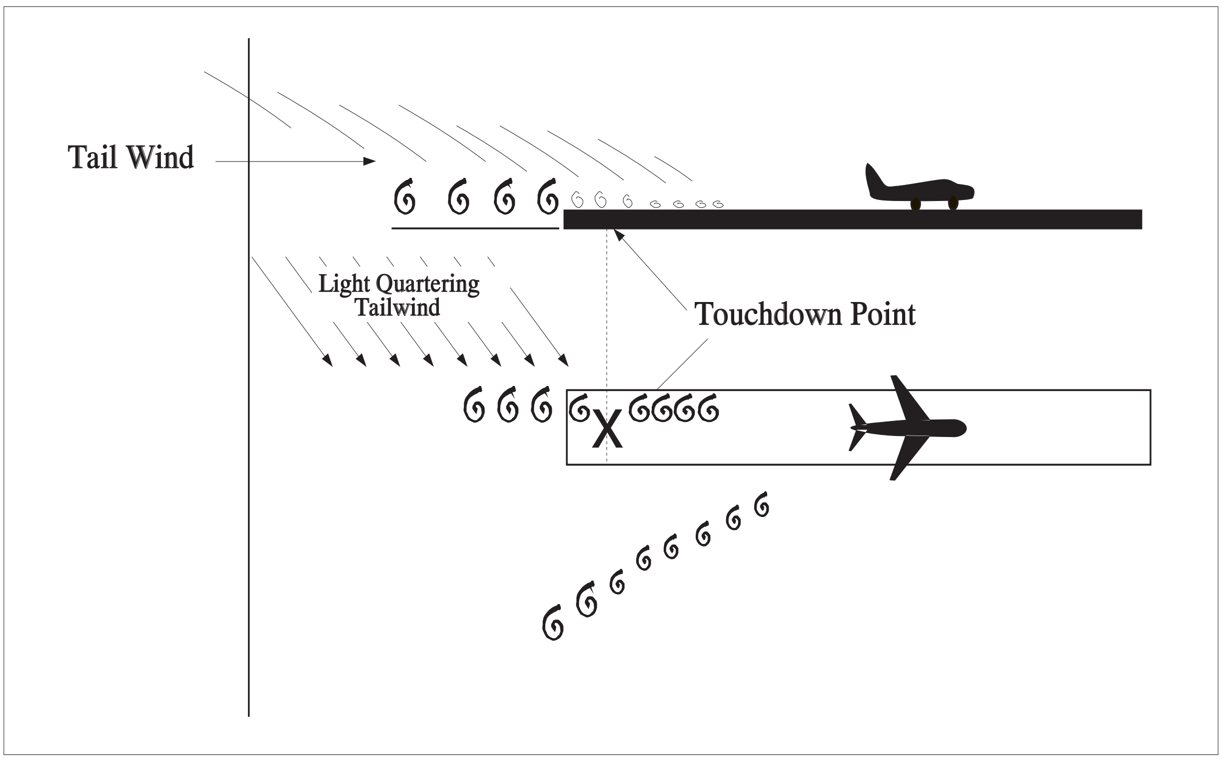


FIG GEN 3.5−23
Vortex Movement in Ground Effect − Tailwind



28.4.2 A crosswind will decrease the lateral movement of the upwind vortex and increase the movement of the downwind vortex. Thus a light wind with a cross−runway component of 1 to 5 knots could result in the upwind vortex remaining in the touchdown zone for a period of time and hasten the drift of the downwind vortex toward another runway. (See FIG GEN 3.5−22.) Similarly, a tailwind condition can move the vortices of the preceding aircraft forward into the touchdown zone. THE LIGHT QUARTERING TAILWIND REQUIRES MAXIMUM CAUTION. Pilots should be alert to larger aircraft upwind from their approach and takeoff flight paths. (See FIG GEN 3.5−23.)

28.5 Operations Problem Areas

28.5.1 A wake encounter can be catastrophic. In 1972 at Fort Worth, Texas, a DC−9 got too close to a DC−10 (two miles back), rolled, caught a wingtip, and cartwheeled coming to rest in an inverted position on the runway. All aboard were killed. Serious and even fatal general aviation accidents induced by wake vortices are not uncommon. However, a wake encounter is not necessarily hazardous. It can be one or more jolts with varying severity depending upon the direction of the encounter, weight of the generating aircraft, size of the encountering aircraft, distance from the generating aircraft, and point of vortex encounter. The probability of induced roll increases when the encountering aircraft's heading is generally aligned with the flight path of the generating aircraft.

28.5.2 AVOID THE AREA BELOW AND BEHIND THE GENERATING AIRCRAFT, ESPECIALLY AT LOW ALTITUDE WHERE EVEN A MOMENTARY WAKE ENCOUNTER COULD BE HAZARDOUS. This is not easy to do. Some accidents have occurred even though the pilot of the trailing aircraft had carefully noted that the aircraft in front was at a considerably lower altitude. Unfortunately, this does not ensure that the flight path of the lead aircraft will be below that of the trailing aircraft.

28.5.3 Pilots should be particularly alert in calm wind conditions and situations where the vortices could:

28.5.3.1 Remain in the touchdown area.

28.5.3.2 Drift from aircraft operating on a nearby runway.

28.5.3.3 Sink into the takeoff or landing path from a crossing runway.

28.5.3.4 Sink into the traffic pattern from other airport operations.

28.5.3.5 Sink into the flight path of VFR aircraft operating on the hemispheric altitude 500 feet below.

28.5.4 Pilots of all aircraft should visualize the location of the vortex trail behind larger aircraft and use proper vortex avoidance procedures to achieve safe operation. It is equally important that pilots of larger aircraft plan or adjust their flight paths to minimize vortex exposure to other aircraft.

28.6 Vortex Avoidance Procedures

28.6.1 Under certain conditions, airport traffic controllers apply procedures for separating IFR aircraft. If a pilot accepts a clearance to visually follow a preceding aircraft, the pilot accepts responsibility for separation and wake turbulence avoidance. The controllers will also provide to VFR aircraft, with whom they are in communication and which in the tower's opinion may be adversely affected by wake turbulence from a larger aircraft, the position, altitude and direction of flight of larger aircraft followed by the phrase "CAUTION − WAKE TURBULENCE." After issuing the caution for wake turbulence, the airport traffic controllers generally do not provide additional information to the following aircraft unless the airport traffic controllers know the following aircraft is overtaking the preceding aircraft. WHETHER OR NOT A WARNING OR INFORMATION HAS BEEN GIVEN, HOWEVER, THE PILOT IS EXPECTED TO ADJUST AIRCRAFT OPERATIONS AND FLIGHT PATH AS NECESSARY TO PRECLUDE SERIOUS WAKE ENCOUNTERS. When any doubt exists about maintaining safe separation distances between aircraft during approaches, pilots should ask the control tower for updates on separation distance and aircraft groundspeed.

28.6.2 The following vortex avoidance procedures are recommended for the various situations:

28.6.2.1 Landing Behind a Larger Aircraft − Same Runway. Stay at or above the larger aircraft's final approach flight path − note its touchdown point − land beyond it.

28.6.2.2 Landing Behind a Larger Aircraft − When a Parallel Runway is Closer Than 2,500 Feet. Consider possible drift to your runway. Stay at or above the larger aircraft's final approach flight path − note its touchdown point.

28.6.2.3 Landing Behind a Larger Aircraft − Crossing Runway. Cross above the larger aircraft's flight path.

28.6.2.4 Landing Behind a Departing Larger Aircraft − Same Runway. Note the larger aircraft's rotation point − land well prior to rotation point.

28.6.2.5 Landing Behind a Departing Larger Aircraft − Crossing Runway. Note the larger aircraft's rotation point – if past the intersection – continue the approach – land prior to the intersection. If larger aircraft rotates prior to the intersection, avoid flight below the larger aircraft's flight path. Abandon the approach unless a landing is ensured well before reaching the intersection.

28.6.2.6 Departing Behind a Larger Aircraft. Note the larger aircraft's rotation point – rotate prior to larger aircraft's rotation point – continue climb above the larger aircraft's climb path until turning clear of the larger aircraft's wake. Avoid subsequent headings which will cross below and behind a larger aircraft. Be alert for any critical takeoff situation which could lead to a vortex encounter.

28.6.2.7 Intersection Takeoffs − Same Runway. Be alert to adjacent larger aircraft operations, particularly upwind of your runway. If intersection takeoff clearance is received, avoid subsequent headings which will cross below a larger aircraft's path.

28.6.2.8 Departing or Landing After a Larger Aircraft Executing a Low Approach, Missed Approach, Or Touch−and−go Landing. Because vortices settle and move laterally near the ground, the vortex hazard may exist along the runway and in your flight path after a larger aircraft has executed a low approach, missed approach, or a touch–and–go landing, particular in light quartering wind conditions. You should ensure that an interval of at least 2 minutes has elapsed before your takeoff or landing.

28.6.2.9 En Route VFR (Thousand−foot Altitude Plus 500 Feet). Avoid flight below and behind a large aircraft's path. If a larger aircraft is observed above on the same track (meeting or overtaking) adjust your position laterally, preferably upwind.

28.7 Helicopters

28.7.1 In a slow hover–taxi or stationary hover near the surface, helicopter main rotor(s) generate downwash producing high velocity outwash vortices to a distance approximately three times the diameter of the rotor. When rotor downwash hits the surface, the resulting outwash vortices have behavioral characteristics similar to wing tip vortices produced by fixed–wing aircraft. However, the vortex circulation is outward, upward, around, and away from the main rotor(s) in all directions. Pilots of small aircraft should avoid operating within three rotor diameters of any helicopter in a slow hover–taxi or stationary hover. In forward flight, departing or landing helicopters produce a pair of strong, high–speed trailing vortices similar to wing tip vortices of larger fixed–wing aircraft. Pilots of small aircraft should use caution when operating behind or crossing behind landing and departing helicop**ters.**

28.8 Pilot Responsibility

28.8.1 Government and industry groups are making concerted efforts to minimize or eliminate the hazards of trailing vortices. However, the flight disciplines necessary to ensure vortex avoidance during VFR operations must be exercised by the pilot. Vortex visualization and avoidance procedures should be exercised by the pilot using the same degree for concern as in collision avoidance.

28.8.2 Wake turbulence may be encountered by aircraft in flight as well as when operating on the airport movement area.

28.8.3 Pilots are reminded that in operations conducted behind all aircraft, acceptance of instructions from ATC in the following situations is an acknowledgment that the pilot will ensure safe takeoff and landing intervals and accepts the responsibility of providing his/her own wake turbulence separation:

28.8.3.1 Traffic information.

28.8.3.2 Instructions to follow an aircraft.

28.8.3.3 The acceptance of a visual approach clearance.

28.8.4 For operations conducted behind heavy aircraft, ATC will specify the word "heavy" when this information is known. Pilots of heavy aircraft should always use the word "heavy" in radio communications.

28.8.5 Heavy and large jet aircraft operators should use the following procedures during an approach to landing. These procedures establish a dependable baseline from which pilots of in–trail, lighter aircraft may reasonably expect to make effective flight path adjustments to avoid serious wake vortex turbulence.

28.8.5.1 Pilots of aircraft that produce strong wake vortices should make every attempt to fly on the established glidepath, not above it; or, if glidepath guidance is not available, to fly as closely as possible to a "3−1" glidepath, not above it.

EXAMPLE−
Fly 3,000 feet at 10 miles from touchdown, 1,500 feet at 5 miles, 1,200 feet at 4 miles, and so on to touchdown.

28.8.5.2 Pilots of aircraft that produce strong wake vortices should fly as closely as possible to the approach course centerline or to the extended centerline of the runway of intended landing as appropriate to conditions.

28.8.6 Pilots operating lighter aircraft on visual approaches in−trail to aircraft producing strong wake vortices should use the following procedures to assist in avoiding wake turbulence. These procedures apply only to those aircraft that are on visual approaches.

28.8.6.1 Pilots of lighter aircraft should fly on or above the glidepath. Glidepath reference may be furnished by an ILS, by a visual approach slope system, by other ground−based approach slope guidance systems, or by other means. In the absence of visible glidepath guidance, pilots may very nearly duplicate a 3−degree glideslope by adhering to the "3 to 1" glidepath principle.

EXAMPLE−
Fly 3,000 feet at 10 miles from touchdown, 1,500 feet at 5 miles, 1,200 feet at 4 miles, and so on to touchdown.

28.8.6.2 If the pilot of the lighter following aircraft has visual contact with the preceding heavier aircraft and also with the runway, the pilot may further adjust for possible wake vortex turbulence by the following practices:

a) Pick a point of landing no less than 1,000 feet from the arrival end of the runway.

b) Establish a line−of−sight to that landing point that is above and in front of the heavier preceding aircraft.

c) When possible, note the point of landing of the heavier preceding aircraft and adjust point of intended landing as necessary.

EXAMPLE−
A puff of smoke may appear at the 1,000−foot markings of the runway, showing that touchdown was at that point; therefore, adjust point of intended landing to the 1,500−footmarkings.

d) Maintain the line−of−sight to the point of intended landing above and ahead of the heavier preceding aircraft; maintain it to touchdown.

e) Land beyond the point of landing of the preceding heavier aircraft.

28.8.7 During visual approaches pilots may ask ATC for updates on separation and groundspeed with respect to heavier preceding aircraft, especially when there is any question of safe separation from wake turbulence.

28.9 Air Traffic Wake Turbulence Separations

28.9.1 Because of the possible effects of wake turbulence, controllers are required to apply no less than specified minimum separation for aircraft operating behind a heavy jet and, in certain instances, behind large nonheavy aircraft; i.e., B757 aircraft.

28.9.1.1 Separation is applied to aircraft operating directly behind a heavy and/or B757 jet at the same altitude or less than 1,000 feet below:

a) Heavy jet behind heavy jet−4 miles.

b) Large/heavy behind B757 − 4 miles.

c) Small behind B757−5 miles.

d) Small/large aircraft behind heavy jet − 5 miles.

28.9.1.2 Also, separation, measured at the time the preceding aircraft is over the landing threshold, is provided to small aircraft:

a) Small aircraft landing behind heavy jet − 6 miles.

b) Small aircraft landing behind B757 − 5 miles.

c) Small aircraft landing behind large aircraft − 4 miles.

NOTE−
Aircraft classes are listed in the Pilot/Controller Glossary in the Aeronautical Information Manual.

28.9.1.3 Additionally, appropriate time or distance intervals are provided to departing aircraft. Two minutes or the appropriate 4 or 5 mile radar separation when takeoff behind a heavy/B757 jet will be:

a) From the same threshold.

b) On a crossing runway and projected flight paths will cross.

c) From the threshold of a parallel runway when staggered ahead of that of the adjacent runway by less than 500 feet and when the runways are separated by less than 2,500 feet.

NOTE−
Controllers may not reduce or waive these intervals.

28.9.2 A 3−minute interval will be provided for a small aircraft taking off:

28.9.2.1 From an intersection on the same runway (same or opposite direction) behind a departing large aircraft.

28.9.2.2 In the opposite direction on the same runway behind a large aircraft takeoff or low/missed approach.

NOTE−
This 3−minute interval may be waived upon specific pilot request.

28.9.3 A 3−minute interval will be provided for all aircraft taking off when the operations are as described in paragraph 28.9.2 above, the preceding aircraft is a heavy and/or a B757 jet, and the operations are on either the same runway or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet. Controllers may not reduce or waive this interval.

28.9.4 Pilots may request additional separation; i.e., 2 minutes instead of 4 or 5 miles for wake turbulence avoidance. This request should be made as soon as practical on ground control and at least before taxiing onto the runway.

NOTE−
Federal Aviation Administration Regulations state: "The pilot in command of an aircraft is directly responsible for and is the final authority as to the operation of that aircraft."

28.9.5 Controllers may anticipate separation and need not withhold a takeoff clearance for an aircraft departing behind a large/heavy aircraft if there is reasonable assurance the required separation will exist when the departing aircraft starts takeoff roll.

29. International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) Weather Formats

29.1 The U.S. uses the ICAO world standard for aviation weather reporting and forecasting. The utilization of terminal forecasts affirms U.S. commitment to a single global format for aviation weather. The World Meteorological Organization's (WMO) publication No. 782, "Aerodrome Reports and Forecasts," contains the base METAR and TAF code as adopted by the WMO member countries.

29.2 Although the METAR code is adopted worldwide, each country is allowed to make modifications or exceptions to the code for use in their particular country; e.g., the U.S. will continue to use statute miles for visibility, feet for RVR values, knots for wind speed, inches of mercury for altimetry, and will continue reporting prevailing visibility rather than lowest sector visibility. A METAR report contains the following sequence of elements in the following order:

29.2.1 Type of report.

29.2.2 ICAO station identifier.

29.2.3 Date and time of report.

29.2.4 Modifier (as required).

29.2.5 Wind.

29.2.6 Visibility.

29.2.7 Runway Visual Range (RVR).

29.2.8 Weather phenomena.

29.2.9 Sky conditions.

29.2.10 Temperature/Dew point group.

29.2.11 Altimeter.

29.2.12 Remarks (RMK).

29.3 The following paragraphs describe the elements in a METAR report.

29.3.1 Type of Report. There are two types of reports:

29.3.1.1 The METAR, an aviation routine weather report.

29.3.1.2 The SPECI, a nonroutine (special) aviation weather report.

The type of report (METAR or SPECI) will always appear as the lead element of the report.

29.3.2 ICAO Station Identifier. The METAR code uses ICAO 4−letter station identifiers. In the contiguous 48 states, the 3−letter domestic station identifier is prefixed with a "K"; i.e., the domestic identifier for Seattle is SEA while the ICAO identifier is KSEA. For Alaska, all station identifiers start with "PA"; for Hawaii, all station identifiers start with "PH." The identifier for the eastern Caribbean is "T" followed by the individual country's letter; i.e., Puerto Rico is "TJ." For a complete worldwide listing see ICAO Document 7910, "Location Indicators."

29.3.3 Date and Time of Report. The date and time the observation is taken are transmitted as a six−digit date/time group appended with Z to denote Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). The first two digits are the date followed with two digits for hour and two digits for minutes.

EXAMPLE−
172345Z (the 17th day of the month at 2345Z)

29.3.4 Modifier (As Required). "AUTO" identifies a METAR/SPECI report as an automated weather report with no human intervention. If "AUTO" is shown in the body of the report, the type of sensor equipment used at the station will be encoded in the remarks section of the report. The absence of "AUTO" indicates that a report was made manually by an observer or that an automated report had human augmentation/backup. The modifier "COR" indicates a corrected report that is sent out to replace an earlier report with an error.

NOTE−
There are two types of automated stations, AO1 for automated weather reporting stations without a precipitation discriminator, and AO2 for automated stations with a precipitation discriminator. (A precipitation discriminator can determine the difference between liquid and frozen/freezing precipitation). This information appears in the remarks section of an automated report.

29.3.5 Wind. The wind is reported as a five digit group (six digits if speed is over 99 knots). The first three digits are the direction from which the wind is blowing, in tens of degrees referenced to true north, or "VRB" if the direction is variable. The next two digits is the wind speed in knots, or if over 99 knots, the next three digits. If the wind is gusty, it is reported as a "G" after the speed followed by the highest gust reported. The abbreviation "KT" is appended to denote the use of knots for wind speed.

EXAMPLE−
13008KT − wind from 130 degrees at 8 knots

08032G45KT − wind from 080 degrees at 32 knots with gusts to 45 knots

VRB04KT − wind variable in direction at 4 knots

00000KT − wind calm

210103G130KT − wind from 210 degrees at 103 knots with gusts to 130 knots

If the wind direction is variable by 60 degrees or more and the speed is greater than 6 knots, a variable group consisting of the extremes of the wind direction separated by a "V" will follow the prevailing wind group.

32012G22KT 280V350

29.3.5.1 Peak Wind. Whenever the peak wind exceeds 25 knots, "PK WND" will be included in Remarks; e.g., PK WND 280045/1955 "Peak wind two eight zero at four five occurred at one niner five five." If the hour can be inferred from the report time, only the minutes will be appended; e.g., PK WND 34050/38 "Peak wind three four zero at five zero occurred at three eight past the hour."

29.3.5.2 Wind Shift. Whenever a wind shift occurs, "WSHFT" will be included in remarks followed by the time the wind shift began; e.g., WSHFT 30 FROPA "Wind shift at three zero due to frontal passage."

29.3.6 Visibility. Prevailing visibility is reported in statute miles with "SM" appended to it.

EXAMPLE−
7SM . . . . seven statute miles
15SM . . . . fifteen statute miles
$^1/_2$SM . . . . one−half statute mile

29.3.6.1 Tower/Surface Visibility. If either tower or surface visibility is below 4 statute miles, the lesser of the 2 will be reported in the body of the report; the greater will be reported in remarks.

29.3.6.2 Automated Visibility. ASOS visibility stations will show visibility ten or greater than ten miles as "10SM." AWOS visibility stations will show visibility less than $^1/_4$ statute mile as "M$^1/_4$SM" and visibility ten or greater than ten miles as "10SM."

29.3.6.3 Variable Visibility. Variable visibility is shown in remarks when rapid increase or decrease by $^1/_2$ statute mile or more and the average prevailing visibility is less than 3 statute miles; e.g., VIS 1V2 means "visibility variable between 1 and 2 statute miles."

29.3.6.4 Sector Visibility. Sector visibility is shown in remarks when it differs from the prevailing visibility, and either the prevailing or sector visibility is less than 3 statute miles.

EXAMPLE−
VIS N2 . . . . visibility north two

29.3.7 Runway Visual Range (when reported). "R" identifies the group followed by the runway heading (and parallel runway designator, if needed) "/" and the visual range in feet (meters in other countries) followed with "FT." ("Feet" is not spoken.)

29.3.7.1 Variability Values. When RVR varies by more than on reportable value, the lowest and highest values are shown with "V" between them.

29.3.7.2 Maximum/Minimum Range. "P" indicates an observed RVR is above the maximum value for this system (spoken as "more than"). "M" indicates an observed RVR is below the minimum value which can be determined by the system (spoken as "less than").

EXAMPLE−
R32L/1200FT − Runway Three Two Left R−V−R one thousand two hundred

R27R/M1000V4000FT − Runway Two Seven Right R−V−R variable from less than one thousand to four thousand.

29.3.8 Weather Phenomena. In METAR, weather is reported in the format:

Intensity / Proximity / Descriptor / Precipitation / Obstruction to Visibility / Other

NOTE−
The "/" above and in the following descriptions (except as the separator between the temperature and dew point) are for separation purposes in this publication and do not appear in the actual METARs.

29.3.8.1 Intensity applies only to the first type of precipitation reported. A "−" denotes light, no symbol denotes moderate, and a "+" denotes heavy.

29.3.8.2 Proximity applies to and is reported only for weather occurring in the vicinity of the airport (between 5 and 10 miles of the point(s) of observation). It is denoted by the letters "VC." (Intensity and "VC" will not appear together in the weather group.)

29.3.8.3 Descriptor. These eight descriptors apply to the precipitation or obstructions to visibility:

TS	thunderstorm
DR	low drifting
SH	showers
MI	shallow
FZ	freezing
BC	patches
BL	blowing
PR	partial

NOTE−
Although "TS" and "SH" are used with precipitation and may be preceded with an intensity symbol, the intensity still applies to the precipitation not the descriptor.

29.3.8.4 Precipitation. There are nine types of precipitation in the METAR code:

RA	rain
DZ	drizzle
SN	snow
GR	hail ($^{1}/_{4}$□ or greater)
GS	small hail/snow pellets
PL	ice pellets
SG	snow grains
IC	ice crystals
UP	unknown precipitation (automated stations only)

EXAMPLE−

TSRA	thunderstorm with moderate rain
+SN	heavy snow
−RA FG	light rain and fog
BRHZ	mist and haze (visibility $^{5}/_{8}$ mile or greater)
FZDZ	freezing drizzle
VCSH	rain shower in the vicinity
+SHRASNPL	heavy rain showers, snow, ice pellets (Intensity indicator refers to the predominant rain.)

29.3.8.5 Obstructions to Visibility. Obscurations are any phenomena in the atmosphere, other than precipitation, that reduce horizontal visibility. There are eight types of obscuration phenomena in the METAR code:

FG	fog (visibility less than $^5/_8$ mile)
HZ	haze
FU	smoke
PY	spray
BR	mist (visibility $^5/_8$–6 miles)
SA	sand
DU	dust
VA	volcanic ash

NOTE−
Fog (FG) is observed or forecast only when the visibility is less than $^5/_8$ mile. Otherwise, mist (BR) is observed or forecast.

29.3.8.6 Other. There are five categories of other weather phenomena which are reported when they occur:

SQ	squall
SS	sandstorm
DS	duststorm
PO	dust/sand whirls
FC +FC	funnel cloud tornado/waterspout

29.3.9 Sky Condition. In METAR, sky condition is reported in the format:

Amount / Height / (Type) or Indefinite Ceiling /Height

29.3.9.1 Amount. The amount of sky cover is reported in eighths of sky cover, using contractions:

SKC	clear (no clouds)
FEW	>$^0/_8$ to $^2/_8$ cloud cover
SCT	scattered ($^3/_8$ to $^4/_8$ cloud cover)
BKN	broken ($^5/_8$ to $^7/_8$ cloud cover)
OVC	overcast ($^8/_8$ cloud cover)
CB	cumulonimbus when present
TCU	towering cumulus when present

NOTE−
1. *"SKC" will be reported at manual stations. "CLR" will be used at automated stations when no clouds below 12,000 feet are reported.*
2. A *ceiling layer is not designated in the METAR code. For aviation purposes, the ceiling is the lowest broken or overcast layer, or vertical visibility into obscuration. Also, there is no provision for reporting thin layers in the METAR code. When clouds are thin, that layer shall be reported as if it were opaque.*

29.3.9.2 Height. Cloud bases are reported with three digits in hundreds of feet. (Clouds above 12,000 feet cannot be reported by an automated station.)

29.3.9.3 Type. If towering cumulus clouds (TCU) or cumulonimbus clouds (CB) are present, they are reported after the height which represents their base.

EXAMPLE−
SCT025TCU BKN080 BKN250 − "two thousand five hundred scattered towering cumulus, ceiling eight thousand broken, two five thousand broken."

SCT008 OVC012CB − "eight hundred scattered ceiling one thousand two hundred overcast cumulonimbus clouds."

29.3.9.4 Vertical Visibility (indefinite ceiling height). The height into an indefinite ceiling is preceded by "VV" and followed by three digits indicating the vertical visibility in hundreds of feet. This layer indicates total obscuration.

EXAMPLE−
$^1/_8$ SM FG VV006 − visibility one eighth, fog, indefinite ceiling six hundred.

29.3.9.5 Obscurations are reported when the sky is partially obscured by a ground−based phenomena by indicating the amount of obscuration as FEW, SCT, BKN followed by three zeros (000). In remarks, the obscuring phenomenon precedes the amount of obscuration and three zeros.

EXAMPLE−
BKN000 (IN BODY) − "sky partially obscured."

FU BKN000 (IN REMARKS) − "smoke obscuring five− to seven−eighthsof the sky."

29.3.9.6 When sky conditions include a layer aloft other than clouds, such as smoke or haze, the type of phenomena, sky cover, and height are shown in remarks.

EXAMPLE−
BKN020 (IN BODY) − " ceiling two thousand broken."
RMK FU BKN020 − " broken layer of smoke aloft, based at two thousand."

29.3.9.7 Variable Ceiling. When a ceiling is below three thousand and is variable, the remark "CIG" will be shown followed with the lowest and highest ceiling heights separated by a "V."

EXAMPLE−
CIG 005V010 − " ceiling variable between five hundred and one thousand."

29.3.9.8 Second Site Sensor. When an automated station uses meteorological discontinuity sensors, remarks will be shown to identify site specific sky conditions which differ and are lower than conditions reported in the body.

EXAMPLE−
CIG 020 RY11 − " ceiling two thousand at Runway One One."

29.3.9.9 Variable Cloud Layer. When a layer is varying in sky cover, remarks will show the variability range. If there is more than one cloud layer, the variable layer will be identified by including the layer height.

EXAMPLE−
SCT V BKN − " scattered layer variable to broken."

BKN025 V OVC − " broken layer at two thousand five hundred variable to overcast."

29.3.9.10 Significant Clouds. When significant clouds are observed, they are shown in remarks, along with the specified information as shown below:

a) Cumulonimbus (CB), or Cumulonimbus Mammatus (CBMAM), distance (if known), direction from the station, and direction of movement, if known. If the clouds are beyond 10 miles from the airport, DSNT will indicate distance.

EXAMPLE−
CB W MOV E − " cumulonimbus west moving east."

CBMAM DSNT S − " cumulonimbus mammatus distant south."

b) Towering Cumulus (TCU), location, (if known), or direction from the station.

EXAMPLE−
TCU OHD − " towering cumulus overhead."

TCU W − " towering cumulus west."

c) Altocumulus Castellanus (ACC), Stratocumulus Standing Lenticular (SCSL), Altocumulus Standing Lenticular (ACSL), Cirrocumulus Standing Lenticular (CCSL) or rotor clouds, describing the clouds (if needed), and the direction from the station.

ACC W	"altocumulus castellanus west"
ACSL SW−S	"standing lenticular altocumulus southwest through south"
APRNT ROTOR CLD S	"apparent rotor cloud south"
CCSL OVR E	"standing lenticular cirrocumulus over the east"

29.3.10 Temperature/Dew Point. Temperature and dew point are reported in two, two−digit groups in degrees Celsius, separated by a solidus (/). Temperatures below zero are prefixed with an "M." If the temperature is available but the dew point is missing, the temperature is shown followed by a solidus. If the temperature is missing, the group is omitted from the report.

EXAMPLE−
15/08 . . . . " temperature one five, dew point 8"
00/M02 . . . . " temperature zero, dew point minus 2"
M05/ . . . . " temperature minus five, dew point missing"

29.3.11 Altimeter. Altimeter settings are reported in a four−digit format in inches of mercury prefixed with an "A" to denote the units of pressure.

EXAMPLE−
A2995 . . . . " altimeter two niner niner five"

29.3.12 Remarks. Remarks will be included in all observations, when appropriate. The contraction "RMK" denotes the start of the remarks section of a METAR report.

Location of a phenomena within 5 statute miles of the point of observation will be reported as at the station. Phenomena between 5 and 10 statute miles will be reported in the vicinity, "VC." Phenomena beyond 10 statute miles will be shown as distant, "DSNT." Distances are in statute miles except for automated lightning remarks which are in nautical miles. Movement of clouds or weather will be indicated by the direction toward which the phenomena is moving.

There are two categories of remarks: Automated, Manual, and Plain Language; and Additive and Automated Maintenance Data.

29.3.12.1 Automated, Manual, and Plain Language Remarks. This group of remarks may be generated from either manual or automated weather reporting stations and generally elaborates on parameters reported in the body of the report. Plain language remarks are only provided by manual stations.

1) Volcanic Eruptions
2) Tornado, Funnel Cloud, Waterspout
3) Type of Automated Station (AO1 or AO2)
4) Peak Wind
5) Wind Shift
6) Tower or Surface Visibility
7) Variable Prevailing Visibility
8) Sector Visibility
9) Visibility at Second Location
10) Dispatch Visual Range
11) Lightning (freq) LTG (type) (loc)
12) Beginning/Ending Time of Precipitation
13) Beginning/Ending Time of Thunderstorms
14) Thunderstorm Location; Movement Direction
15) Hailstone Size
16) Virga
17) Variable Ceiling
18) Obscurations
19) Variable Sky Condition
20) Significant Cloud Types
21) Ceiling Height at Second Location
22) Pressure Rising or Falling Rapidly
23) Sea−Level Pressure
24) Aircraft Mishap (not transmitted)
25) No SPECI Reports Taken
26) Snow Increasing Rapidly
27) Other Significant Information

29.3.12.2 Additive and Automated Maintenance Data Remarks.

1) Hourly Precipitation
2) Precipitation Amount
3) 24−Hour Precipitation
4) Snow Depth on Ground
5) Water Equivalent of Snow on Ground
6) Cloud Types
7) Duration of Sunshine
8) Hourly Temperature and Dew Point (Tenths)
9) 6−Hour Maximum Temperature
10) 6−Hour Minimum Temperature
11) 24−Hour Maximum/Minimum Temperatures
12) Pressure Tendency
13) Sensor Status:
WINO
ZRANO
SNO
VRNO
PNO
VISNO

EXAMPLE−
METAR report and explanation:

METAR KSFO 041453Z AUTO VRB02KT 3SM BR CLR 15/12 A3012 RMK AO2

METAR	Type of report (aviation routine weather report)
KSFO	Station identifier (San Francisco, CA)
041453Z	Date/Time (4th day of month; time 1453 UTC)
AUTO	Fully automated; no human intervention
VRB02KT	Wind (wind variable at two)
3SM	Visibility (visibility three statute miles)
BR	Visibility obscured by mist
CLR	No clouds below one two thousand
15/12	Temperature one five; dew point one two
A3012	Altimeter three zero one two
RMK	Remarks
AO2	This automated station has a weather discriminator (for precipitation).

EXAMPLE−
METAR report and explanation:

METAR KBNA 281250Z 33018KT 290V360 1/2SM R31/2700FT SN BLSN FG VV008 00/M03 A2991 RMK RAE42SNB42

METAR	Aviation routine weather report
KBNA	Nashville, TN
281250Z	28th day of month; time 1250 UTC
(no modifier)	This is a manually generated report, due to the absence of “AUTO” and “AO1 or AO2” in remarks.
33018KT	Wind three three zero at one eight
290V360	Wind variable between two nine zero and three six zero
$^{1}/_{2}$SM	Visibility one half statute mile
R31/2700FT	Runway three one RVR two thousand seven hundred feet
SN	Moderate snow
BLSN FG	Visibility obscured by blowing snow and fog
VV008	Indefinite ceiling eight hundred
00/M03	Temperature zero; dew point minus three
A2991	Altimeter two niner niner one
RMK	Remarks
RAE36	Rain ended at three six
SNB42	Snow began at four two

EXAMPLE−
SPECI report and explanation:

SPECI KCVG 152224Z 28024G36KT 3/4SM +TSRA BKN008 OVC020CB 28/23 A3000 RMK TSRAB24 TS W MOV E.

SPECI	Nonroutine aviation special weather report
KCVG	Cincinnati, OH
152224Z	15th day of month; time 2224 UTC
(no modifier)	This is a manually generated report due to the absence of “AUTO” and “AO1 or AO2” in remarks.
28024G36KT	Wind two eight zero at two four gusts three six
3/4SM	Visibility three fourths statute mile
+TSRA	Thunderstorms, heavy rain
BKN008	Ceiling eight hundred broken
OVC020CB	Two thousand overcast cumulonimbus clouds
28/23	Temperature two eight; dew point two three
A3000	Altimeter three zero zero zero
RMK	Remarks
TSRAB24	Thunderstorm and rain began at two four
TS W MOV E	Thunderstorm west moving east

29.4 Aerodrome Forecast (TAF). A concise statement of the expected meteorological conditions at an airport during a specified period (usually 24 hours). TAFs use the same codes as METAR weather reports. They are scheduled four times daily for 24−hour periods beginning at 0000Z, 0600Z, 1200Z, and 1800Z. TAFs are issued in the following format:

Type of Report / ICAO Station Identifier / Date and Time of Origin / Valid Period Date and Time / Forecast Meteorological Conditions

NOTE−
The "/" above and in the following descriptions are for separation purposes in this publication and do not appear in the actual TAFs.

29.4.1 Explanation of TAF elements.

29.4.1.1 Type of Report. There are two types of TAF issuances, a routine forecast issuance (TAF) and an amended forecast (TAF AMD). An amended TAF is issued when the current TAF no longer adequately describes the on−going weather or the forecaster feels the TAF is not representative of the current or expected weather. Corrected (COR) or delayed (RTD) TAFs are identified only in the communications header which precedes the actual forecasts.

29.4.1.2 ICAO Station Identifier. The TAF code uses ICAO 4−letter location identifiers as described in the METAR section.

29.4.1.3 Date and Time of Origin. This element is the date and time the forecast is actually prepared. The format is a two−digit date and four−digit time followed, without a space, by the letter "Z."

29.4.1.4 Valid Period Date and Time. The UTC valid period of the forecast is a two−digit date followed by the two−digit beginning hour and two−digit ending hour. In the case of an amended forecast, or a forecast which is corrected or delayed, the valid period may be for less than 24 hours. Where an airport or terminal operates on a part−time basis (less than 24 hours/day), the TAFs issued for those locations will have the abbreviated statement "NIL AMD SKED AFT (closing time) Z" added to the end of the forecasts. For the TAFs issued while these locations are closed, the word "NIL" will appear in place of the forecast text. A delayed (RTD) forecast will then be issued for these locations after two complete observations are received.

29.4.1.5 Forecast Meteorological Conditions. This is the body of the TAF. The basic format is:

Wind / Visibility / Weather / Sky Condition / Optional Data (Wind Shear)

The wind, visibility, and sky condition elements are always included in the initial time group of the forecast. Weather is included only if significant to aviation. If a significant, lasting change in any of the elements is expected during the valid period, a new time period with the changes is included. It should be noted that with the exception of an "FM" group, the new time period will include only those elements which are expected to change; i.e., if a lowering of the visibility is expected but the wind is expected to remain the same, the new time period reflecting the lower visibility would not include a forecast wind. The forecast wind would remain the same as in the previous time period.

Any temporary conditions expected during a specific time period are included with that time period. The following describes the elements in the above format.

a) Wind. This five (or six) digit group includes the expected wind direction (first 3 digits) and speed (last 2 digits or 3 digits if 100 knots or greater). The contraction "KT" follows to denote the units of wind speed. Wind gusts are noted by the letter "G" appended to the wind speed followed by the highest expected gust.

NOTE−
A variable wind direction is noted by "VRB" where the three digit direction usually appears. A calm wind (3 knots or less) is forecast as "00000KT."

EXAMPLE−
18010KT − wind one eight zero at one zero (wind is blowing from 180 at 10 knots).

35012G20KT − wind three five zero at one two gust two zero

b) Visibility. The expected prevailing visibility up to and including 6 miles is forecast in statute miles, including fractions of miles, followed by "SM" to note the units of measure. Expected visibilities greater than 6 miles are forecast as P6SM (Plus six statute miles).

EXAMPLE−
1/2SM . . . . visibility one−half
4SM . . . . visibility four
P6SM . . . . visibility more than six

c) Weather. The expected weather phenomena is coded in TAF reports using the same format, qualifiers, and phenomena contractions as METAR reports (except UP).

Obscurations to vision will be forecast whenever the prevailing visibility is forecast to be 6 statute miles or less.

If no significant weather is expected to occur during a specific time period in the forecast, the weather group is omitted for that time period. If, after a time period in which significant weather has been forecast, a change to a forecast of no significant weather occurs, the contraction NSW (no significant weather) will appear as the weather group in the new time period. (NSW is included only in becoming (BECMG) or temporary (TEMPO) groups.)

d) Sky Condition. TAF sky condition forecasts use the METAR format described in the METAR section. Cumulonimbus clouds (CB) are the only cloud type forecast in TAFs.

When clear skies are forecast, the contraction “SKC” will always be used. The contraction “CLR” is never used in the aerodrome forecast (TAF).

When the sky is obscured due to a surface−based phenomenon, vertical visibility (VV) into the obscuration is forecast. The format for vertical visibility is “VV” followed by a three−digit height in hundreds of feet.

NOTE−
As in METAR, ceiling layers are not designated in the TAF code. For aviation purposes, the ceiling is the lowest broken or overcast layer or vertical visibility into a complete obscuration.

SKC	“sky clear”
SCT005 BKN025CB	“five hundred scattered, ceiling two thousand five hundred broken cumulonimbus clouds”
VV008	“indefinite ceiling eight hundred”

e) Optional Data (Wind Shear). Wind Shear is the forecast of non−convective, low−level winds (up to 2,000 feet). The forecast includes the letters “WS” followed by the height of the wind shear, the wind direction and wind speed at the indicated height and the ending letters “KT” (knots). Height is given in hundreds of feet (AGL) up to and including 2,000 feet. Wind shear is encoded with the contraction “WS” followed by a three−digit height, slant character “/” and winds at the height indicated in the same format as surface winds. The wind shear element is omitted if not expected to occur.

WS010/18040KT	“low level wind shear at one thousand, wind one eight zero at four zero”

29.5 Probability Forecast. The probability or chance of thunderstorms or other precipitation events occurring, along with associated weather conditions (wind, visibility, and sky conditions).

The PROB30 group is used when the occurrence of thunderstorms or precipitation is 30−39 percent and the PROB40 group is used when the occurrence of thunderstorms or precipitation is 40−49 percent. This is followed by a four−digit group giving the beginning hour and ending hour of the time period during which the thunderstorms or precipitation are expected.

NOTE−
Neither PROB30 nor PROB40 will be shown during the first six hours of a forecast.

EXAMPLE−
PROB40 2102 1/2SM +TSRA − “chance between 2100Z and 0200Z of visibility one−half thunderstorm, heavy rain.”

PROB30 1014 1SM RASN − “chance between 1000Z and 1400Z of visibility one rain and snow.”

29.6 Forecast Change Indicators. The following change indicators are used when either a rapid, gradual, or temporary change is expected in some or all of the forecast meteorological conditions. Each change indicator marks a time group within the TAF report.

29.6.1 From (FM) Group. The FM Group is used when a rapid change, usually occurring in less than one hour, in prevailing conditions is expected. Typically, a rapid change of prevailing conditions to more or less a completely new set of prevailing conditions is associated with a synoptic feature passing through the terminal area (cold or warm frontal passage). Appended to the “FM” indicator is the four−digit hour and minute the change is expected to begin and continues until the next change group or until the end of the current forecast.

An "FM" group marks the beginning of a new line in a TAF report (indented 5 spaces). Each "FM" group contains all the required elements−wind, visibility, weather, and sky condition. Weather is omitted in "FM" groups when it is not significant to aviation. FM groups do not include the contraction NSW.

EXAMPLE−
FM0100 14010KT P6SM SKC − "after 0100Z, wind one four zero at one zero, visibility more than six, sky clear."

29.6.2 Becoming (BECMG) Group. The BECMG group is used when a gradual change in conditions is expected over a longer time period, usually two hours. The time period when the change is expected is a four−digit group with the beginning hour and ending hour of the change period which follows the BECMG indicator. The gradual change will occur at an unspecified time within this time period. Only the changing forecast meteorological conditions are included in BECMG groups. The omitted conditions are carried over from the previous time group.

EXAMPLE−
OVC012 BECMG 1416 BKN020 − "ceiling one thousand two hundred overcast. Then a gradual change to ceiling two thousand broken between 1400Z and 1600Z."

29.6.3 Temporary (TEMPO) Group. The TEMPO group is used for any conditions in wind, visibility, weather, or sky condition which are expected to last for generally less than an hour at a time (occasional), and are expected to occur during less than half the time period. The TEMPO indicator is followed by a four−digit group giving the beginning hour and ending hour of the time period during which the temporary conditions are expected. Only the changing forecast meteorological conditions are included in TEMPO groups. The omitted conditions are carried over from the previous time group.

EXAMPLE−
1. *SCT030 TEMPO 1923 BKN030 − "three thousand scattered with occasional ceilings three thousand broken between 1900Z and 2300Z."*

2. *4SM HZ TEMPO 0006 2SM BR HZ − "visibility four in haze with occasional visibility two in mist and haze between 0000Z and 0600Z."*

FIG GEN 3.5−24

U.S. Department of Transportation
Federal Aviation Administration

KEY to AERODROME FORECAST (TAF) and AVIATION ROUTINE WEATHER REPORT (METAR) (FRONT)

TAF KPIT 091730Z 091818 15005KT 5SM HZ FEW020 WS010/31022KT
FM 1930 30015G25KT 3SM SHRA OVC015 TEMPO 2022 1/2SM +TSRA
OVC008CB
FM0100 27008KT 5SM SHRA BKN020 OVC040 PROB40 0407 1SM −RA BR
FM1015 18005KT 6SM −SHRA OVC020 BECMG 1315 P6SM NSW SKC

METAR KPIT 091955Z COR 22015G25KT 3/4SM R28L/2600FT TSRA OVC010CB
18/16 A2992 RMK SLP045 T01820159

FORECAST	EXPLANATION	REPORT
TAF	Message type : TAF−routine or TAF AMD−amended forecast, METAR−hourly, SPECI−special or TESTM−non−commissioned ASOS report	**METAR**
KPIT	ICAO location indicator	**KPIT**
091730Z	Issuance time: ALL times in UTC “Z”, 2−digit date, 4−digit time	**091955z**
091818	Valid period: 2−digit date, 2−digit beginning, 2−digit ending times	
	In U.S. **METAR**: CORrected of; or AUTOmated ob for automated report with no human intervention; omitted when observer logs on	**COR**
15005KT	Wind: 3 digit true−north direction , nearest 10 degrees (or VaRiaBle); next 2−3 digits for speed and unit, KT (KMH or MPS); as needed, Gust and maximum speed; 00000KT for calm; for **METAR,** if direction varies 60 degrees or more, Variability appended, e.g. 180V260	**22015G25KT**
5SM	Prevailing visibility; in U.S., Statute Miles & fractions; above 6 miles in **TAF** Plus6SM. (Or, 4−digit minimum visibility in meters and as required, lowest value with direction)	**3/4SM**
	Runway Visual Range: R; 2−digit runway designator Left, Center, or Right as needed; “/”, Minus or Plus in U.S., 4−digit value, FeeT in U.S., (usually meters elsewhere); 4−digit value Variability 4−digit value (and tendency Down, Up or No change)	**R28L/2600FT**
HZ	Significant present, forecast and recent weather: see table (on back)	**TSRA**
FEW020	Cloud amount, height and type: SKy Clear 0/8, FEW >0/8−2/8, SCaTtered 3/8−4/8, BroKeN 5/8−7/8, OVerCast 8/8; 3−digit height in hundreds of ft; Towering Cumulus or CumulonimBus in **METAR**; in **TAF**, only CB. Vertical Visibility for obscured sky and height “VV004”. More than 1 layer may be reported or forecast. In automated **METAR** reports only, CLeaR for “clear below 12,000 feet”	**OVC 010CB**
	Temperature: degrees Celsius; first 2 digits, temperature “/” last 2 digits, dew−point temperature; Minus for below zero, e.g., M06	**18/16**
	Altimeter setting: indicator and 4 digits; in U.S., A−inches and hundredths; (Q−hectoPascals, e.g. Q1013)	**A2992**

FIG GEN 3.5−25

U.S. Department
of Transportation

**Federal Aviation
Administration**

KEY to AERODROME FORECAST (TAF) and AVIATION ROUTINE WEATHER REPORT (METAR) (BACK)

FORECAST	EXPLANATION	REPORT
WS010/31022KT	In U.S. **TAF**, non−convective low−level (≤ 2,000 ft) Wind Shear; 3−digit height (hundreds of ft); "/"; 3−digit wind direction and 2−3 digit wind speed above the indicated height, and unit, KT	
	In **METAR**, ReMarK indicator & remarks. For example: Sea−Level Pressure in hectoPascals & tenths, as shown: 1004.5 hPa; Temp/dew−point in tenths $_0$C, as shown: temp. 18.2$_0$C, dew−point 15.9$_0$C	**RMK** **SLP045** **T01820159**
FM1930	FroM and 2−digit hour and 2−digit minute **beginning** time: indicates significant change. Each FM starts on a new line, indented 5 spaces	
TEMPO 2022	TEMPOrary: changes expected for <1 hour and in total, < half of 2−digit hour **beginning** and 2−digit hour **ending** time period	
PROB40 0407	PROBability and 2−digit percent (30 or 40): probable condition during 2−digit hour **beginning** and 2−digit hour **ending** time period	
BECMG 1315	BECoMinG: change expected during 2−digit hour **beginning** and 2−digit hour **ending** time period	

Table of Significant Present, Forecast and Recent Weather− Grouped in categories and used in the order listed below; or as needed in TAF, No Significant Weather.

QUALIFIER

INTENSITY OR PROXIMITY

'−' Light "no sign" Moderate '+' Heavy

VC Vicinity: but not at aerodrome; in U.S. **METAR**, between 5 and 10SM of the point(s) of observation; in U.S. **TAF,** 5 to 10SM from center of runway complex (elsewhere within 8000m)

DESCRIPTOR

MI	Shallow	BC	Patches	PR	Partial	TS	Thunderstorm
BL	Blowing	SH	Showers	DR	Drifting	FZ	Freezing

WEATHER PHENOMENA

PRECIPITATION

DZ	Drizzle	RA	Rain	SN	Snow	SG	Snow grains
IC	Ice Crystals	PL	Ice Pellets	GR	Hail	GS	Small hail/snow pellets
UP	Unknown precipitation in automated observations						

OBSCURATION

BR	Mist (≥5/8SM)	FG	Fog (<5/8SM)	FU	Smoke	VA	Volcanic ash
SA	Sand	HZ	Haze	PY	Spray	DU	Widespread dust

OTHER

SQ	Squall	SS	Sandstorm	DU	Duststorm	PO	Well developed dust/sand whirls
FC	Funnel cloud	+FC	tornado/waterspout				

−Explanations in parentheses "( )" indicate different worldwide practices.
− Ceiling is not specified; defined as the lowest broken or overcast layer, or the vertical visibility.
− NWS **TAFs** exclude turbulence, icing & temperature forecasts; NWS **METARs** exclude trend forecasts

January 1999
Aviation Weather Directorate

Department of Transportation
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

30. Meteorological Broadcasts (ATIS, VHF and LF)

30.1 Continuous Transcribed Weather Broadcasts (TWEB)

30.1.1 Weather broadcasts are made continuously over selected navigational aids. These broadcasts contain the general weather forecasts and winds up to 12,000 feet within a 250−mile radius of the radio. In some cases the forecasts are for route of flight rather than the general area. They also broadcast pilot reports, radar reports, and hourly weather reports of selected locations within a 400−mile radius of the broadcast station.

30.2 Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS) Broadcasts

30.2.1 These broadcasts are made continuously and include as weather information only the ceiling, visibility, wind, and altimeter setting of the aerodrome at which they are located.

30.3 Scheduled Weather Broadcasts (SWB)

30.3.1 Scheduled broadcasts are made only in Alaska at 15 minutes past the hour over en route navigational aids not used for TWEB or ATIS. These broadcasts contain hourly weather reports of selected locations within 150 miles of the station and weather advisories, pilot weather reports, radar weather reports, and Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs).

30.4 Navigational Aids Providing Broadcast Services

30.4.1 A compilation of navigational aids over which weather broadcasts are transmitted is not available for this publication. Complete information concerning all navigational aids providing this service is contained in the Airport/Facility directory. Similar information for the Pacific and Alaskan areas is contained in the Pacific and Alaska Supplements.

30.5 Hazardous Inflight Weather Advisory Service (HIWAS)

30.5.1 A 24−hour continuous broadcast of hazardous inflight weather is available on selected navigational outlets. Broadcasts include: severe weather forecast alerts (AWW), airman's meteorological information (AIRMET), significant meteorological information (SIGMET), Convective SIGMET (WST), urgent pilot weather reports (UUA), hazardous portions of the domestic area forecasts (FA), and center weather advisories (CWA). HIWAS broadcast outlets are identified on en route/sectional charts and in airport facility directories. For further details, contact your nearest FSS.

TBL GEN 3.5−10

Meteorological Broadcasts (VOLMET)

Name	Call Sign	Frequency	Broadcast	Form	Contents	Emission	Remarks
Honolulu	Honolulu Radio	2863, 6679, 8828, 13282 kHz	H00−05 and H30−35	Forecasts	PHNL Honolulu PHTO Hilo PGUM Guam	Voice	Plain language English
				SIGMET	Oakland FIR		
				Hourly Reports	PHNL Honolulu PHTO Hilo PHOG Kahului PGUM Guam		
			E05−10 and E35−40	Hourly Reports	KSFO San Francisco KSEA Seattle KLAX Los Angeles KPDX Portland KSMF Sacramento KONT Ontario KLAS Las Vegas		
				SIGMET	Oakland FIR		
				Aerodrome Forecasts	KSFO San Francisco KSEA Seattle KLAX Los Angeles		
			E25−30 and E55−00	Hourly Reports	PANC Anchorage PAED ElmendorfAFB PAFA Fairbanks PACD Cold Bay PAKN King Salmon CYVR Vancouver		
				SIGMET	Oakland FIR		
				Forecasts	PANC Anchorage PAFA Fairbanks PACD Cold Bay CYVR Vancouver		
New York	New York Radio	3485, 6604, 10051, 13270 kHz	H00−05	Aerodrome Forecasts	KDTW Detroit KCLE Cleveland KCVG Cincinnati	Voice	Plain language English
				Hourly Reports	KDTW Detroit KCLE Cleveland KCVG Cincinnati KIND Indianapolis KPIT Pittsburgh		
			H05−10	SIGMET	Oceanic − New York FIR		
				Aerodrome Forecasts	KBGR Bangor KBDL Windsor Locks KCLT Charlotte		
				Hourly Reports	KBGR Bangor KBDL Windsor Locks KORF Norfolk KCLT Charlotte		
			H10−15	Aerodrome Forecasts	KJFK New York KEWR Newark KBOS Boston		
				Hourly Reports	KJFK New York KEWR Newark KBOS Boston KBAL Baltimore KIAD Washington		

Meteorological Broadcasts (VOLMET) − continued

Name	Call Sign	Frequency	Broadcast	Form	Contents	Emission	Remarks
			H15−20	SIGMET	Oceanic − Miami FIR/San Juan FIR		
				Aerodrome Forecasts	MXKF Bermuda KMIA Miami KATL Atlanta		
				Hourly Reports	MXKF Bermuda KMIA Miami MYNN Nassau KMCO Orlando KATL Atlanta		
			H30−35	Aerodrome Forecasts	KORD Chicago KMKE Milwaukee KMSP Minneapolis		
				Hourly Reports	KORD Chicago KMKE Milwaukee KMSP Minneapolis KDTW Detroit KBOS Boston		
			E35−40	SIGMET	Oceanic − New York FIR		
				Aerodrome Forecasts	KIND Indianapolis KSTL St. Louis KPIT Pittsburgh		
				Hourly Reports	KIND Indianapolis KSTL St. Louis KPIT Pittsburgh KACY Atlantic City		
			E40−45	Aerodrome Forecasts	KBAL Baltimore KPHL Philadelphia KIAD Washington		
				Hourly Reports	KBAL Baltimore KPHL Philadelphia KIAD Washington KJFK New York KEWR Newark		
			E45−50	SIGMET	Oceanic − Miami FIR/San Juan FIR		
				Aerodrome Forecasts	MYNN Nassau KMCO Orlando		
				Hourly Reports	MXKF Bermuda KMIA Miami MYNN Nassau KMCO Orlando KATL Atlanta KTPA Tampa KPBI West Palm Beach		
All stations operate on A3 emission H24.							
All broadcasts are made 24 hours daily, seven days a week.							

FIG GEN 3.5−26

Key to Decode an ASOS (METAR) Observation (Front)

KEY TO DECODE AN ASOS (METAR) OBSERVATION

METAR KABC 121755Z AUTO 21016G24KT 180V240 1SM R11/P6000FT -RA BR BKN015 OVC025 06/04 A2990
RMK A02 PK WND 20032/25 WSHFT 1715 VIS 3/4V1 1/2 VIS 3/4 RWY11 RAB07 CIG 013V017 CIG 017 RWY11 PRESFR
SLP125 P0003 6009 T00640036 10066 21012 58033 TSNO $

TYPE OF REPORT	METAR: hourly (scheduled report; SPECI: special (unscheduled) report.	METAR
STATION IDENTIFIER	Four alphabetic characters; ICAO location identifiers.	KABC
DATE/TIME	All dates and times in UTC using a 24-hour clock; two-digit date and four-digit time; always appended with Z to indicate UTC.	121755Z
REPORT MODIFIER	Fully automated report, no human intervention; removed when observer signed-on.	AUTO
WIND DIRECTION AND SPEED	Direction in tens of degrees from true north (first three digits); next two digits: speed in whole knots; as needed Gusts (character) followed by maximum observed speed; always appended with KT to indicate knots; 00000KT for calm; if direction varies by 60° or more a Variable wind direction group is reported.	21016G24KT 108V240
VISIBILITY	Prevailing visibility in statute miles and fractions (space between whole miles and fractions); always appended with SM to indicate statute miles.	1SM
RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE	10-minute RVR value in hundreds of feet; reported if prevailing visibility is ≤ one mile or RVR ≤6000 feet; always appended with FT to indicate feet; value prefixed with M or P to indicate value is lower or higher than the reportable RVR value.	R11/P6000FT
WEATHER PHENOMENA	RA: liquid precipitation that does not freeze; SN: frozen precipitation other than hail; UP: precipitation of unknown type; intensity prefixed to precipitation: light (-), moderate (no sign), heavy (+); FG: fog; FZFG: freezing fog (temperature below 0°C); BR: mist; HZ: haze; SQ: squall; maximum of three groups reported; augmented by observer: FC (funnel cloud/tornado/waterspout); TS(thunderstorm); GR (hail); GS (small hail; <1/4 inch); FZRA (intensity; freezing rain); VA (volcanic ash).	-RA BR
SKY CONDITION	Cloud amount and height: CLR (no clouds detected below 12000 feet); FEW (few); SCT (scattered); BKN (broken); OVC (overcast); followed by 3-digit height in hundreds of feet; or vertical visibility (VV) followed by height for indefinite ceiling.	BKN015 OVC025
TEMPERATURE/DEW POINT	Each is reported in whole degrees Celsius using two digits; values are separated by a solidus; sub-zero values are prefixed with an M (minus).	06/04
ALTIMETER	Altimeter always prefixed with an A indicating inches of mercury; reported using four digits: tens, units, tenths, and hundredths.	A2990

FIG GEN 3.5−27

Key to Decode an ASOS (METAR) Observation (Back)

REMARKS IDENTIFIER: RMK	RMK
TORNADIC ACTIVITY: Augmented; report should include TORNADO, FUNNEL CLOUD, or WATERSPOUT, time begin/end, location, movement; e.;g., TORNADO B25 N MOV E.	
TYPE OF AUTOMATED STATION: AO2; automated station with precipitation discriminator.	AO2
PEAK WIND: PK WND dddff(f)/(hh)mm; direction in tens of degrees, speed in whole knots, and time.	PK WND 20032/25
WIND SHIFT: WSHFT (hh)mm	WSHFT 1715
TOWER OR SURFACE VISIBILITY: TWR VIS vvvvv: visibility reported by tower personnel, e.g., TWR VIS 2; SFC VIS vvvvv: visibility reported by ASOS, e.g., SFC VIS 2.	
VARIABLE PREVAILING VISIBILITY: VIS v_n v_n v_n v_n $v_n V v_x v_x v_x v_x v_x$; reported if prevailing visibility is <3 miles and variable.	VIS 3/4V1 1/2
VISIBILITY AT SECOND LOCATION: VIS vvvvv [LOC]; reported if different than the reported prevailing visibility in body of report.	VIS 3/4 RWY11
LIGHTNING: [FREQ] LTG [LOC]; when detected the frequency and location is reported, e.g., FRQ LTG NE.	
BEGINNING AND ENDING OF PRECIPITATION AND THUNDERSTORMS: w'w'B(hh)mmE(hh)mm; TSB(hh)mmE(hh)mm	RAB07
VIRGA: Augmented; precipitation not reaching the ground, e.g., VIRGA.	
VARIABLE CEILING HEIGHT: CIG h_n h_n $h_n V h_x h_x h_x$; reported if ceiling in body of report is <3000 feet and variable.	CIG 013V017
CEILING HEIGHT AT SECOND LOCATION: CIG hhh [LOC]; Ceiling height reported if secondary ceilometer site is different than the ceiling height in the body of the report.	CIG 017 RWY11
PRESSURE RISING OR FALLING RAPIDLY: PRESRR or PRESFR; pressure rising or falling rapidly at time of observation.	PRESFR
SEA-LEVEL PRESSURE: SLPppp; tens, units, and tenths of SLP in hPa.	SLP125
HOURLY PRECIPITATION AMOUNT: Prrrr; in .01 inches since last METAR; a trace is P0000.	P0003
3- AND 6-HOUR PRECIPITATION AMOUNT: 6RRRR; precipitation amount in .01 inches for past 6 hours reported in 00, 06, 12, and 18 UTC observations and for past 3 hours in 03, 09, 15, and 21 UTC observations; a trace is 60000.	60009
24-HOUR PRECIPITATION AMOUNT: $7R_{24}$ R_{24} R_{24} R_{24}; precipitation amount in .01 inches for past 24 hours reported in 12 UTC observation, e.g., 70015.	
HOURLY TEMPERATURE AND DEW POINT: $Ts_nT_aT_aT_as_nT'_aT'_aT'_a$; tenth of degree Celsius; s_n: 1 if temperature below 0° C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher.	T00640036
6-HOUR MAXIMUM TEMPERATURE: $1s_nT_xT_xT_x$; tenth of degree Celsius; 00, 06, 12, 18 UTC; s_n: 1 if temperature below 0°C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher.	10066
6-HOUR MINIMUM TEMPERATURE: $2s_nT_nT_nT_n$; tenth of degree Celsius; 00, 06, 12, 18 UTC; s_n: 1 if temperature below 0°C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher.	21012
24-HOUR MAXIMUM AND MINIMUM TEMPERATURE: $4s_nT_xT_xT_xs_nT_nT_nT_n$; tenth of degree Celsius; reported at midnight local standard time; 1 if temperature below 0°C and 0 if temperature 0°C or higher, e.g., 400461006.	
PRESSURE TENDENCY: 5appp; the character (a) and change in pressure (ppp; tenths of hPa) the past 3 hours.	58033
SENSOR STATUS INDICATORS: RVRNO: RVR missing; PWINO: precipitation identifier information not available; PNO: precipitation amount not available; FZRANO: freezing rain information not available; TSNO: thunderstorm information not available; VISNO [LOC]: visibility at secondary location not available, e.g., VISNO RWY06; CHINO [LOC]: (cloud-height-indicator) sky condition at secondary location not available, e.g., CHINO RWY06.	TSNO
MAINTENANCE CHECK INDICATOR: Maintenance needed on the system.	$

If an element or phenomena does not occur, is missing, or cannot be observed, the corresponding group and space are omitted (body and/or remarks) from that particular report, except for Sea-Level Pressure (SLPppp). SLPNO shall be reported in a METAR when the SLP is not available.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION • FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION • Aviation Weather Directorate, 400 7TH Street, SW, Rooms 8200-8326, Washington, D.C 20591

FIG GEN 3.5−28

NEXRAD Coverage

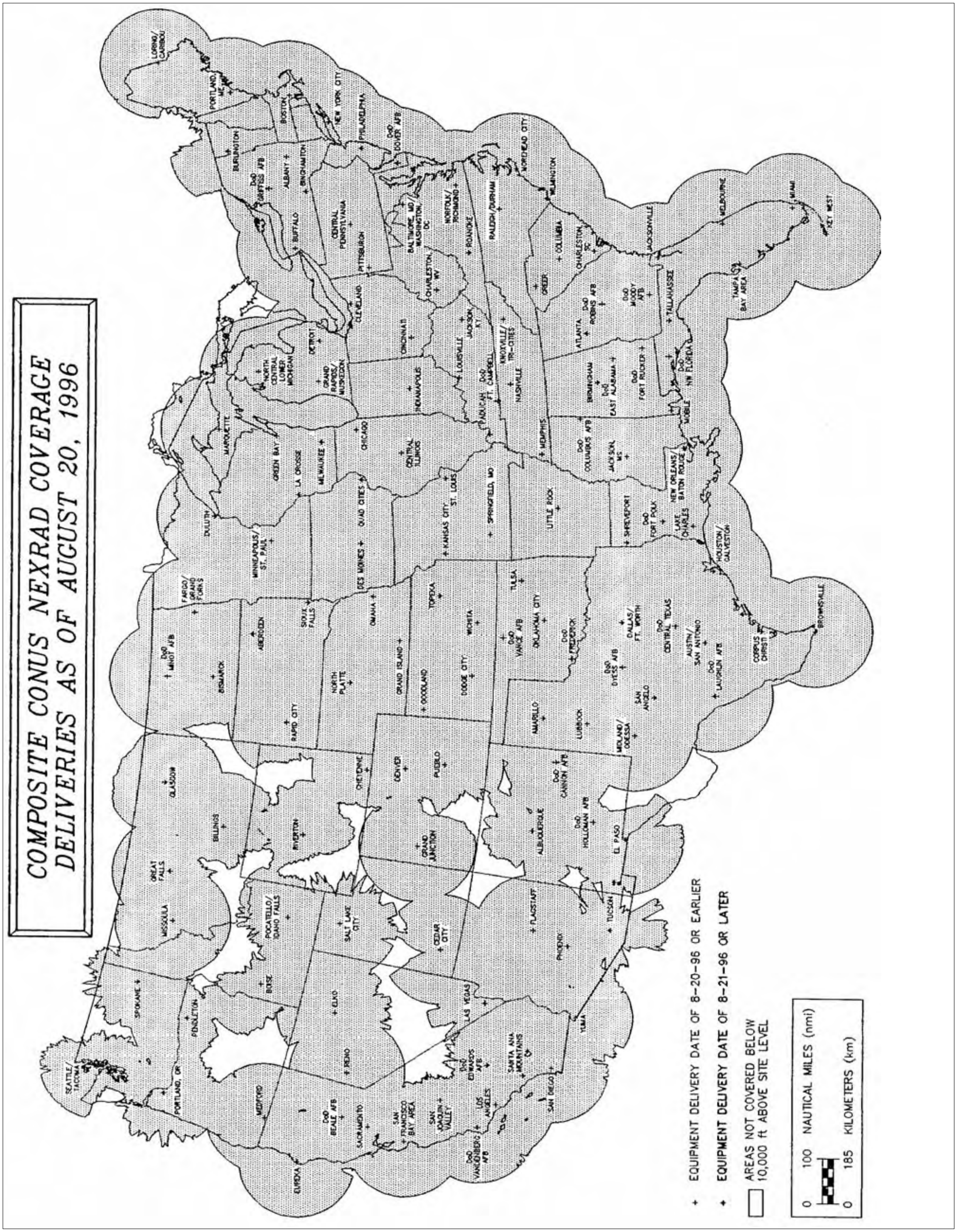


FIG GEN 3.5−29
NEXRAD Coverage

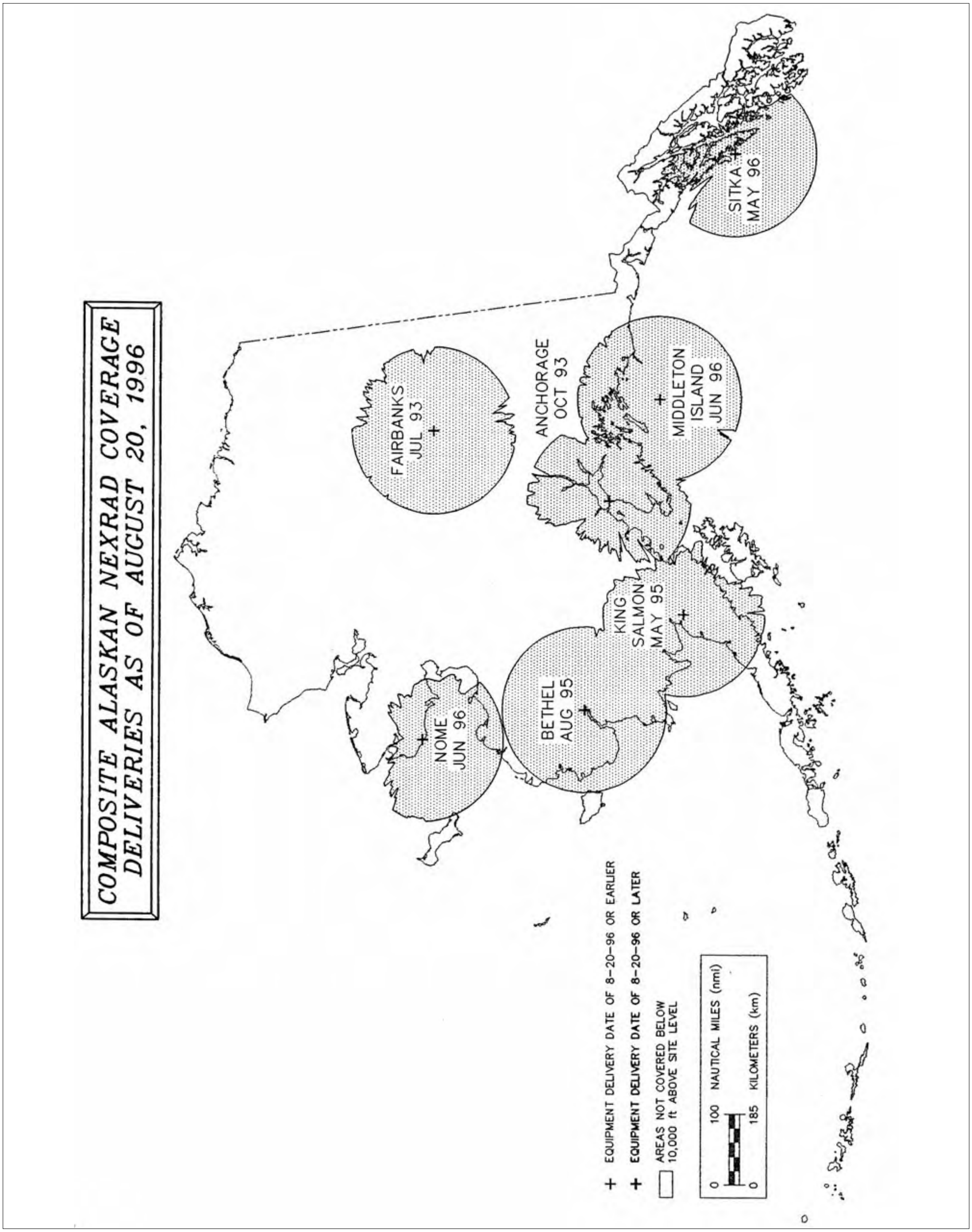


FIG GEN 3.5−30
NEXRAD Coverage

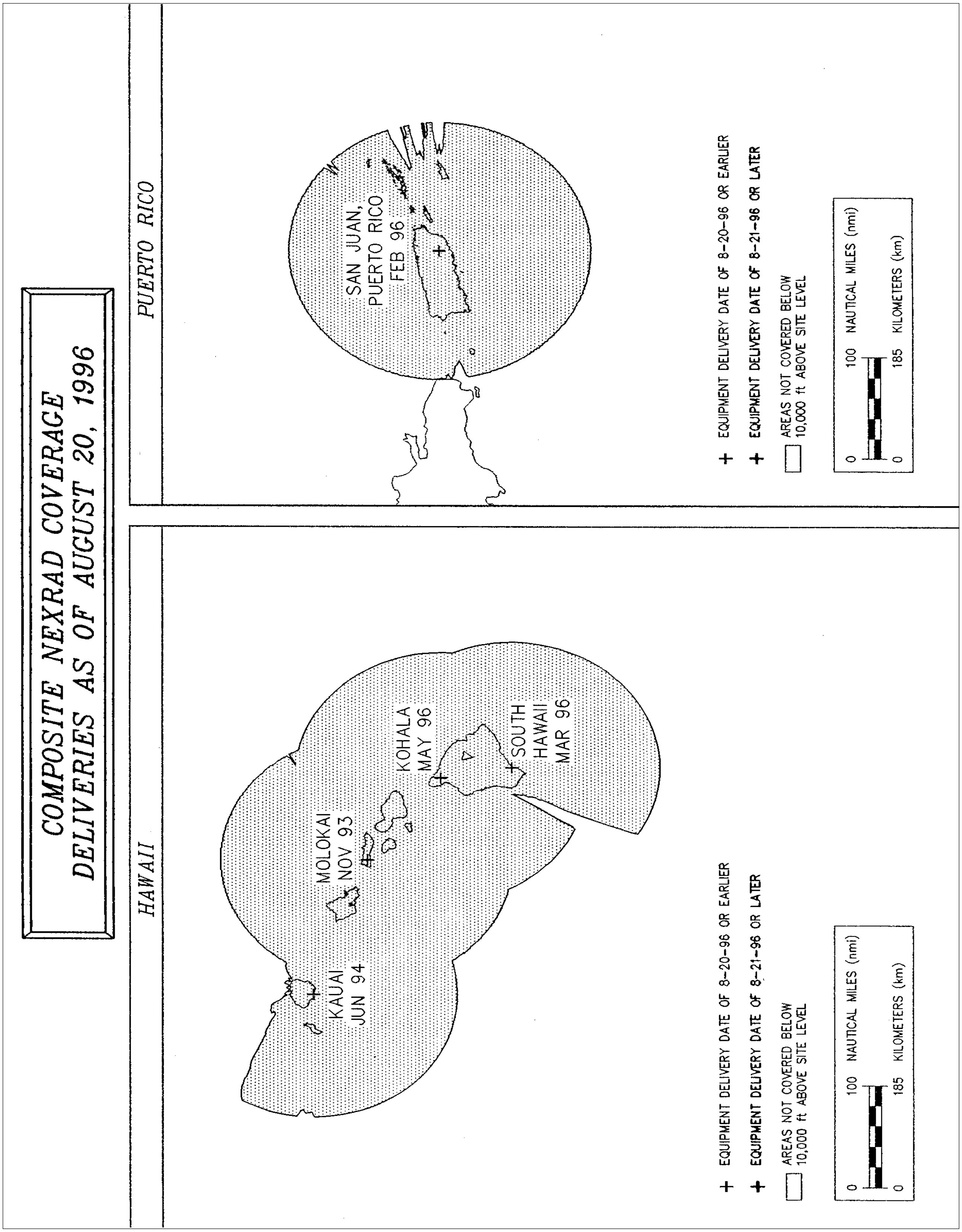


FIG GEN 3.5−31

Volcanic Activity Reporting Form (VAR)

Date ________________

SECTION 1 - Transmit to ATC via radio

1. Aircraft Identification	
2. Position	
3. Time (UTC)	
4. Flight level or altitude	
5. Position/location of volcanic activity or ash cloud	
6. Air temperature	
7. Wind	
8. Supplementary Information (Brief description of activity including vertical and lateral extent of the ash cloud, horizontal movement, rate of growth, etc., as available.)	

SECTION 2 - Complete and forward as directed

Mark the appropriate box(s)

9. *Density of ash cloud*	☐ wispy	☐ moderately dense	☐ very dense
10. *Color of ash*	☐ white ☐ black	☐ light gray	☐ dark gray
11. *Eruption*	☐ continuous	☐ intermittent	☐ not visible
12. *Position of activity*	☐ summit ☐ multiple	☐ side ☐ not observed	☐ single
13. *Other observed features of eruption*	☐ lightning ☐ ash fallout	☐ glow ☐ mushroom cloud	☐ large rocks ☐ none
14. *Effect on aircraft*	☐ communications ☐ pitot static ☐ none	☐ navigation system ☐ windscreen	☐ engines ☐ other windows
15. *Other effects*	☐ turbulence ☐ ash deposits	☐ St. Elmo's fire	☐ fumes
16. *Other information deemed useful*			

Forward completed form via mail to:
Global Volcanism Program
NHB-119
Smithsonian Institution
Washington, DC 20560

Or Fax to:
Global Volcanism Program
(202) 357-2476

GEN 3.6 Search and Rescue

1. Responsible Authority

1.1 The Search and Rescue (SAR) service in the U.S. and its area of jurisdiction is organized in accordance with the Standards and Recommended Practices of ICAO Annex 12 by the Federal Aviation Administration with the collaboration of the U.S. Coast Guard and the U.S. Air Force. The Coast Guard and the Air Force are the responsible SAR authorities and have the responsibility for making the necessary facilities available. Postal and telegraphic addresses for the Federal Aviation Administration are given in GEN 3.1. The appropriate addresses for Coast Guard and Air Force offices are:

Air Force
Postal Address:
Inland SAR Coordinator
Commander ARRS
USAF RCC
Langley AFB, VA.
Telegraphic Address: None.
Telex: None.
Telephone: 1−800−851−3051,
Commercial: 804−764−8112,
Base Operator: 804−764−1110,
(ask for extension 48112) or
Defense Switching Network: 574−8112.

Coast Guard
Postal Address:
United States Coast Guard
Search and Rescue Division (GOSR/73)
400 7th Street, S.W.
Washington, D.C. 20590
Telegraphic Address: None.
Telex: 89 2427

2. Types of Service

2.1 Details of the Rescue Coordination Centers (RCCs) and related rescue units are given in this section. In addition, various elements of state and local police organizations are available for search and rescue missions when required. The aeronautical, maritime and public telecommunication services are available to the search and rescue organizations.

2.2 Aircraft, both land and amphibious based, are used, as well as land and seagoing vessels, when required, and carry survival equipment. Airborne survival equipment, capable of being dropped, consists of inflatable rubber dinghies equipped with medical supplies, emergency rations and survival radio equipment. Aircraft and marine craft are equipped to communicate on 121.5, 123.1, 243.0, 500 kHz, 2182 kHz, and 8364 kHz. Ground rescue teams are equipped to communicate on 121.5 MHz, 500 kHz, and 8364 kHz. SAR aircraft and marine craft are equipped with direction finding equipment and radar.

3. SAR Agreements

3.1 Bilateral agreements exist between the U.S. and the following neighboring States of the NAM region: Canada and Mexico.

3.1.1 There are two agreements with Canada. One provides for public aircraft of either country which are engaged in air search and rescue operations to enter or leave either country without being subjected to immigration or customs formalities normally required. The other permits vessels and wrecking appliances of either country to render aid and assistance on specified border waters and on the shores and in the waters of the other country along the Atlantic and Pacific Coasts within a distance of 30 miles from the international boundary on those coasts. A post operations report is required.

3.1.2 The agreement with Mexico applies to territorial waters and shores of each country within 200 miles of the border on the Gulf Coast and within 270 miles of the border on the Pacific Coast. It permits the vessels and aircraft of either country to proceed to the assistance of a distressed vessel or aircraft of their own registry upon notification of entry and of departure of the applicable waters and shores.

3.2 In situations not falling under the above agreements, requests from States to participate in a SAR operation within the U.S. for aircraft of their own registry may be addressed to the nearest RCC. The RCC would reply, and issue appropriate instructions.

4. General Conditions of Availability

4.1 The SAR service and facilities in the U.S. are available to the neighboring States within the NAM, NAT, CAR, PAC Regions upon request to the appropriate RCC at all times when they are not engaged in search and rescue activity in their home territory. All facilities are specialized in SAR techniques and functions.

5. Applicable ICAO Documents

Annex 12	Search and Rescue
Annex 13	Aircraft Accident Inquiry
Doc 7030	Regional Supplementary Procedures for Alerting and Search and Rescue Services applicable to the NAM, NAT, CAR, PAC Regions.

6. Differences from ICAO Standards, Recommended Practices and Procedures

6.1 Differences from ICAO Standards, Recommended Practices and Procedures are listed in GEN 1.7.

7. Emergency Locator Transmitters

7.1 General

7.1.1 ELTs are required for most General Aviation airplanes.

REFERENCE−
14 CFR SECTION 91.207.

7.1.2 ELTs of various types were developed as a means of locating downed aircraft. These electronic, battery operated transmitters operate on one of three frequencies. These operating frequencies are 121.5 MHz, 243.0 MHz, and the newer 406 MHz. ELTs operating on 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz are analog devices. The newer 406 MHz ELT is a digital transmitter that can be encoded with the owner's contact information or aircraft data. The latest 406 MHz ELT models can also be encoded with the aircraft's position data which can help SAR forces locate the aircraft much more quickly after a crash. The 406 MHz ELTs also transmits a stronger signal when activated than the older 121.5 MHz ELTs.

7.1.2.1 The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) requires 406 MHz ELTs be registered with the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) as outlined in the ELT's documentation. The FAA's 406 MHz ELT Technical Standard Order (TSO) TSO−C126 also requires that each 406 MHz ELT be registered with NOAA. The reason is NOAA maintains the owner registration database for U.S. registered 406 MHz alerting devices, which includes ELTs. NOAA also operates the United States' portion of the Cospas−Sarsat satellite distress alerting system designed to detect activated ELTs and other distress alerting devices.

7.1.2.2 In the event that a properly registered 406 MHz ELT activates, the Cospas−Sarsat satellite system can decode the owner's information and provide that data to the appropriate search and rescue (SAR) center. In the United States, NOAA provides the alert data to the appropriate U.S. Air Force Rescue Coordination Center (RCC) or U.S. Coast Guard Rescue Coordination Center. That RCC can then telephone or contact the owner to verify the status of the aircraft. If the aircraft is safely secured in a hangar, a costly ground or airborne search is avoided. In the case of an inadvertent 406 MHz ELT activation, the owner can deactivate the 406 MHz ELT. If the 406 MHz ELT equipped aircraft is being flown, the RCC can quickly activate a search. 406 MHz ELTs permit the Cospas−Sarsat satellite system to narrow the search area to a more confined area compared to that of a 121.5 MHz or 243.0 MHz ELT. 406 MHz ELTs also include a low−power 121.5 MHz homing transmitter to aid searchers in finding the aircraft in the terminal search phase.

7.1.2.3 Each analog ELT emits a distinctive downward swept audio tone on 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz.

7.1.2.4 If "armed" and when subject to crash−generated forces, ELTs are designed to automatically activate and continuously emit their respective signals, analog or digital. The transmitters will operate continuously for at least 48 hours over a wide temperature range. A properly installed, maintained, and functioning ELT can expedite search and rescue operations and save lives if it survives the crash and is activated.

7.1.2.5 Pilots and their passengers should know how to activate the aircraft's ELT if manual activation is required. They should also be able to verify the aircraft's ELT is functioning and transmitting an alert after a crash or manual activation.

7.1.2.6 Because of the large number of 121.5 MHz ELT false alerts and the lack of a quick means of verifying the actual status of an activated 121.5 MHz or 243.0 MHz analog ELT through an owner registration database, U.S. SAR forces do not respond as quickly to initial 121.5/243.0 MHz ELT alerts as the SAR forces do to 406 MHz ELT alerts. Compared to the almost instantaneous detection of a 406 MHz ELT, SAR forces' normal practice is to wait for either a confirmation of a 121.5/243.0 MHz alert by additional satellite passes or through confirmation of an overdue aircraft or similar notification. In some cases, this confirmation process can take hours. SAR forces can initiate a response to 406 MHz alerts in minutes compared to the potential delay of hours for a 121.5/243.0 MHz ELT.

7.1.3 The Cospas−Sarsat system has announced the termination of satellite monitoring and reception of the 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz frequencies in 2009. The Cospas−Sarsat system will continue to monitor the 406 MHz frequency. What this means for pilots is that after the termination date, those aircraft with only 121.5 MHz or 243.0 MHz ELTs onboard will have to depend upon either a nearby Air Traffic Control facility receiving the alert signal or an overflying aircraft monitoring 121.5 MHz or 243.0 MHz detecting the alert. To ensure adequate monitoring of these frequencies and timely alerts after 2009, all airborne pilots should periodically monitor these frequencies to try and detect an activated 121.5/243.0 MHz ELT.

7.2 ELT Testing

7.2.1 ELTs should be tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, preferably in a shielded or screened room or specially designed test container to prevent the broadcast of signals which could trigger a false alert.

7.2.2 When this cannot be done, aircraft operational testing is authorized as follows:

7.2.2.1 Analog 121.5/243 MHz ELTs should only be tested during the first 5 minutes after any hour. If operational tests must be made outside of this period, they should be coordinated with the nearest FAA Control Tower or FSS. Tests should be no longer than three audible sweeps. If the antenna is removable, a dummy load should be substituted during test procedures.

7.2.2.2 Digital 406 MHz ELTs should only be tested in accordance with the unit's manufacturer's instructions.

7.2.2.3 Airborne tests are not authorized.

7.3 False Alarms

7.3.1 Caution should be exercised to prevent the inadvertent activation of ELTs in the air or while they are being handled on the ground. Accidental or unauthorized activation will generate an emergency signal that cannot be distinguished from the real thing, leading to expensive and frustrating searches. A false ELT signal could also interfere with genuine emergency transmissions and hinder or prevent the timely location of crash sites. Frequent false alarms could also result in complacency and decrease the vigorous reaction that must be attached to all ELT signals.

7.3.2 Numerous cases of inadvertent activation have occurred as a result of aerobatics, hard landings, movement by ground crews and aircraft maintenance. These false alarms can be minimized by monitoring 121.5 MHz and/or 243.0 MHz as follows:

7.3.2.1 In flight when a receiver is available.

7.3.2.2 Before engine shut down at the end of each flight.

7.3.2.3 When the ELT is handled during installation or maintenance.

7.3.2.4 When maintenance is being performed near the ELT.

7.3.2.5 When a ground crew moves the aircraft.

7.3.2.6 If an ELT signal is heard, turn off the aircraft's ELT to determine if it is transmitting. If it has been activated, maintenance might be required before the unit is returned to the "ARMED" position. You should contact the nearest Air Traffic facility and notify it of the inadvertent activation.

7.4 Inflight Monitoring and Reporting

7.4.1 Pilots are encouraged to monitor 121.5 MHz and/or 243.0 MHz while in flight to assist in identifying possible emergency ELT transmissions. On receiving a signal, report the following information to the nearest air traffic facility:

7.4.1.1 Your position at the time the signal was first heard.

7.4.1.2 Your position at the time the signal was last heard.

7.4.1.3 Your position at maximum signal strength.

7.4.1.4 Your flight altitudes and frequency on which the emergency signal was heard: 121.5 MHz or 243.0 MHz. If possible, positions should be given relative to a navigation aid. If the aircraft has homing equipment, provide the bearing to the emergency signal with each reported position.

8. National Search and Rescue Plan

8.1 By federal interagency agreement, the National Search and Rescue Plan provides for the effective use of all available facilities in all types of SAR missions. These facilities include aircraft, vessels, pararescue and ground rescue teams, and emergency radio fixing. Under the Plan, the U.S. Coast Guard is responsible for the coordination of SAR in the Maritime Region, and the U.S. Air Force is responsible in the Inland Region. To carry out these responsibilities, the Coast Guard and the Air Force have established RCCs to direct SAR activities within their regions. For aircraft emergencies, distress and urgency information normally will be passed to the appropriate RCC through an air route traffic control center (ARTCC) or flight service station (FSS).

TBL GEN 3.6−1

8.2 Coast Guard Rescue Coordination Centers

Coast Guard Rescue Coordination Centers	
Alameda, CA 510−437−3701	New York, NY 212−668−7055
Boston, MA 617−223−8555	New Orleans, LA 504−589−6225
Cleveland, OH 216−902−6117	Portsmouth, VA 757−398−6390
Honolulu, HI 808−541−2500	Seattle, WA 206−220−7001
Juneau, AK 907−463−2000	San Juan, PR 809−729−6770
Miami, FL 305−415−6800	

8.3 Coast Guard Rescue Coordination Centers are served by major radio stations which guard 2182 kHz (VOICE). In addition, Coast Guard units along the seacoasts of the U.S. and shores of the Great Lakes guard 2182 kHz. The call "COAST GUARD" will alert all Coast Guard Radio Stations within range. 2182 kHz is also guarded by most commercial coast stations and some ships and boats.

8.4 Air Force Rescue Coordination Centers

TBL GEN 3.6−2

Air Force Rescue Coordination Center	
Langley AFB, Virginia	**Phone**
Commercial	804−764−8112
WATS	800−851−3051
DSN	574−8112

TBL GEN 3.6−3

Air Command Rescue Coordination Center Alaska

Alaskan Air Command Rescue Coordination Center	
Fort Richardson, 11th RCC, Alaska	**Phone**
Commercial	907−428−7230 or 800−420−7230
DSN	317−384−6726

8.5 Joint Rescue Coordination Center Hawaii

TBL GEN 3.6−4

Honolulu Joint Rescue Coordination Center	
HQ 14th CG District Honolulu	**Phone**
Commercial	808−541−2500
DSN	448−0301

9. Procedures and Signals for Aircraft in Emergency

9.1 Search and Rescue

9.1.1 Search and Rescue is a life−saving service provided through the combined efforts of the federal agencies signatory to the National SAR Plan, and the agencies responsible for SAR within each State. Operational resources are provided by the U.S. Coast Guard, Department of Defense components, the Civil Air Patrol, the Coast Guard Auxiliary, state, county and local law enforcement and other public safety agencies, and private volunteer organizations. Services include search for missing aircraft, survival aid, rescue, and emergency medical help for the occupants after an accident site is located.

9.2 Emergency and Overdue Aircraft

9.2.1 ARTCCs and FSSs will alert the SAR system when information is received from any source that an aircraft is in difficulty, overdue, or missing.

9.2.2 Radar facilities providing radar flight following or advisories consider the loss of radar and radios, without service termination notice, to be a possible emergency. Pilots receiving VFR services from radar facilities should be aware that SAR may be initiated under these circumstances.

9.2.3 A filed flight plan is the most timely and effective indicator that an aircraft is overdue. Flight plan information is invaluable to SAR forces for search planning and executing search efforts. Prior to departure on every flight, local or otherwise, someone at the departure point should be advised of your destination and the route of flight if other than direct. Search efforts are often wasted and rescue is often delayed because of pilots who thoughtlessly take off without telling anyone where they are going. File a flight plan for your safety.

9.2.4 According to the National Search and Rescue Plan, "The life expectancy of an injured survivor decreases as much as 80 percent during the first 24 hours, while the chances of survival of uninjured survivors rapidly diminishes after the first 3 days."

9.2.5 An Air Force Review of 325 SAR missions conducted during a 23−month period revealed that "Time works against people who experience a distress but are not on a flight plan, since 36 hours normally pass before family concern initiates an (alert)."

9.3 VFR Search and Rescue Protection

9.3.1 To receive this valuable protection, file a VFR or DVFR Flight Plan with an FAA FSS. For maximum protection, file only to the point of first intended landing, and refile for each leg to final destination. When a lengthy flight plan is filed, with several stops en route and an ETE to final destination, a mishap could occur on any leg, and unless other information is received, it is probable that no one would start looking for you until 30 minutes after your ETA at your final destination.

9.3.2 If you land at a location other than the intended destination, report the landing to the nearest FAA FSS and advise them of your original destination.

9.3.3 If you land en route and are delayed more than 30 minutes, report this information to the nearest FSS and give them your original destination.

9.3.4 If your ETE changes by 30 minutes or more, report a new ETA to the nearest FSS and give them your original destination. Remember that if you fail to respond within one−half hour after your ETA at final destination, a search will be started to locate you.

9.3.5 It is important that you CLOSE YOUR FLIGHT PLAN IMMEDIATELY AFTER ARRIVAL AT YOUR FINAL DESTINATION WITH THE FSS DESIGNATED WHEN YOUR FLIGHT PLAN WAS FILED. The pilot is responsible for closure of a VFR or DVFR flight plan; they are not closed automatically. This will prevent needless search efforts.

9.3.6 The rapidity of rescue on land or water will depend on how accurately your position may be determined. If a flight plan has been followed and your position is on course, rescue will be expedited.

9.4 Survival Equipment

9.4.1 For flight over uninhabited land areas, it is wise to take suitable survival equipment depending on type of climate and terrain.

9.4.2 If forced landing occurs at sea, chances for survival are governed by degree of crew proficiency in emergency procedures and by effectiveness of water survival equipment.

9.5 Body Signal Illustrations

9.5.1 If you are forced down and are able to attract the attention of the pilot of a rescue airplane, the body signals illustrated on the pages following can be used to transmit messages to the pilot circling over your location.

9.5.2 Stand in the open when you make the signals.

9.5.3 Be sure the background, as seen from the air, is not confusing.

9.5.4 Go through the motions slowly and repeat each signal until you are positive that the pilot understands you.

9.6 Observance of a Downed Aircraft

9.6.1 Determine if the crash is marked with yellow cross; if so, the crash has already been reported and identified.

9.6.2 Determine, if possible, the type and number of the aircraft and whether there is evidence of survivors.

9.6.3 Fix, as accurately as possible, the exact location of the crash.

9.6.4 If circumstances permit, orbit the scene to guide in other assisting units or until relieved by another aircraft.

9.6.5 Transmit information to the nearest FAA or other appropriate radio facility.

9.6.6 Immediately after landing, make a complete report to nearest FAA, Air Force, or Coast Guard installation. The report may be made by long distance collect telephone.

FIG GEN 3.6−1

Ground−Air Visual Code for Use by Survivors

NO.	MESSAGE	CODE SYMBOL
1	Require assistance	V
2	Require medical assistance	X
3	No or Negative	N
4	Yes or Affirmative	Y
5	Proceeding in this direction	↑

IF IN DOUBT, USE INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL S O S

INSTRUCTIONS

1. Lay out symbols by using strips of fabric or parachutes, pieces of wood, stones, or any available material.
2. Provide as much color contrast as possible between material used for symbols and background against which symbols are exposed.
3. Symbols should be at least 10 feet high or larger. Care should be taken to lay out symbols exactly as shown.
4. In addition to using symbols, every effort is to be made to attract attention by means of radio, flares, smoke, or other available means.
5. On snow covered ground, signals can be made by dragging, shoveling or tramping. Depressed areas forming symbols will appear black from the air.
6. Pilot should acknowledge message by rocking wings from side to side.

FIG GEN 3.6−2

Ground−Air Visual Code for use by Ground Search Parties

NO.	MESSAGE	CODE SYMBOL
1	Operation completed.	L L L
2	We have found all personnel.	LL
3	We have found only some personnel.	
4	We are not able to continue. Returning to base.	XX
5	Have divided into two groups. Each proceeding in direction indicated.	
6	Information received that aircraft is in this direction.	→ →
7	Nothing found. Will continue search.	N N

Note: These visual signals have been accepted for international use and appear in Annex 12 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation.

FIG GEN 3.6−3

Urgent Medical Assistance

FIG GEN 3.6−4

All OK

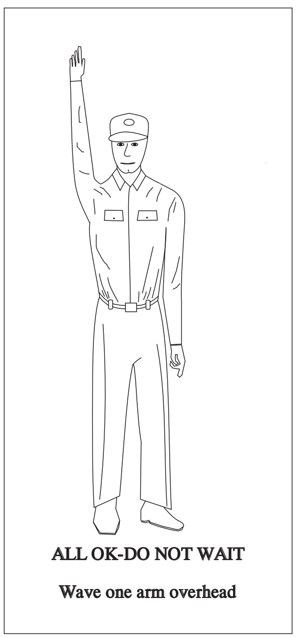


FIG GEN 3.6−5

Short Delay

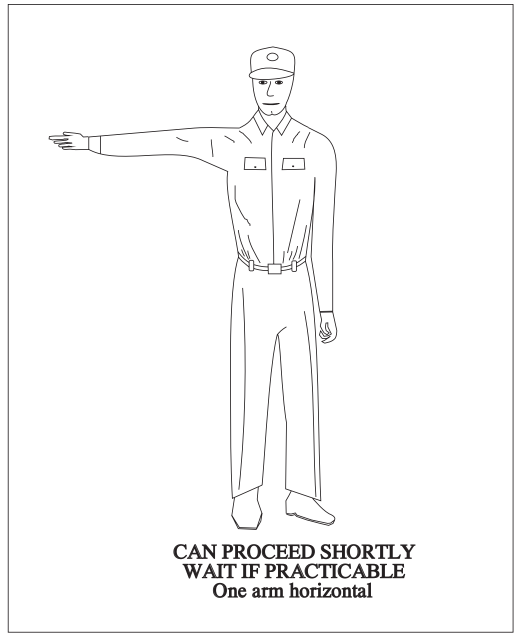


FIG GEN 3.6−6

Long Delay

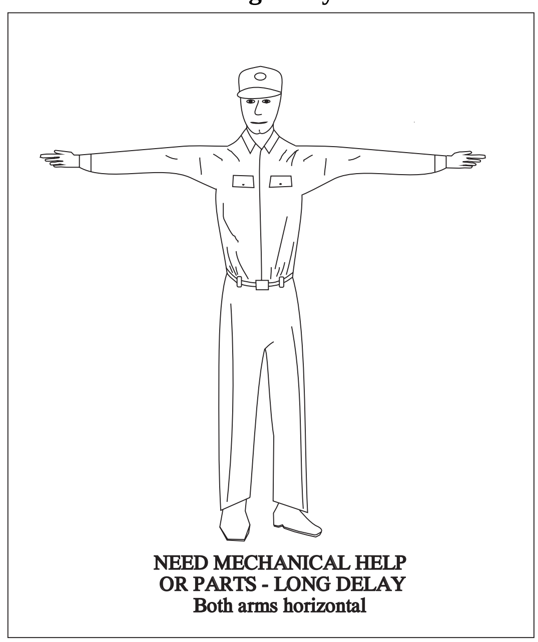


FIG GEN 3.6−7

Drop Message

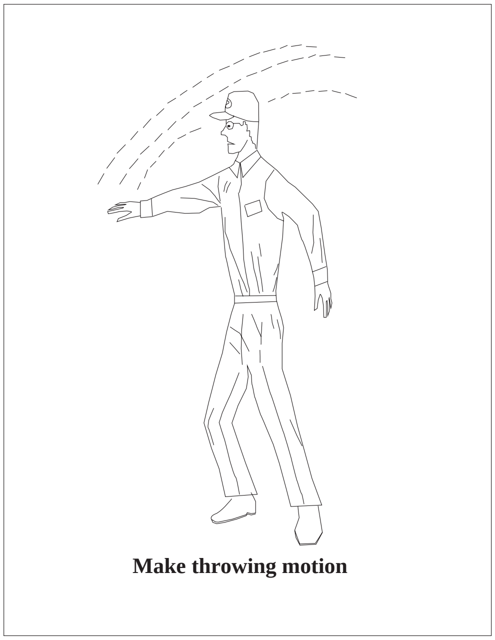


FIG GEN 3.6−9

Do Not Land Here

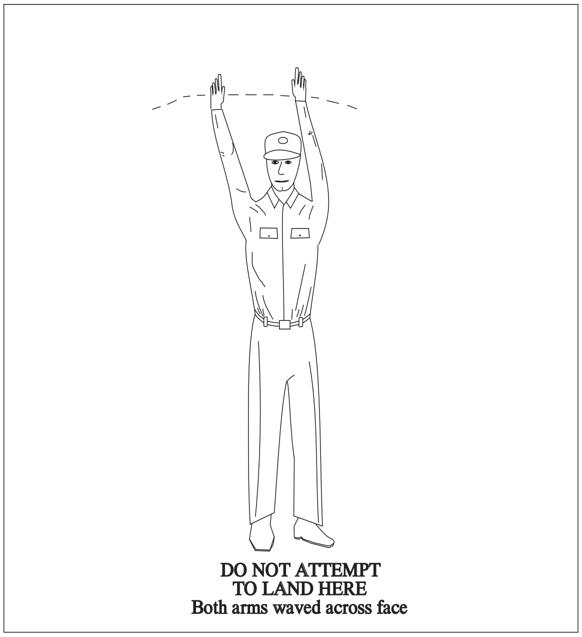


FIG GEN 3.6−8

Receiver Operates

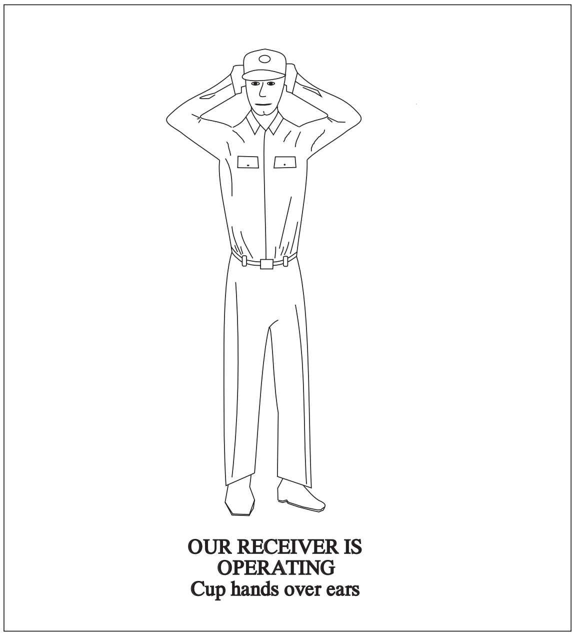


FIG GEN 3.6−10

Land Here

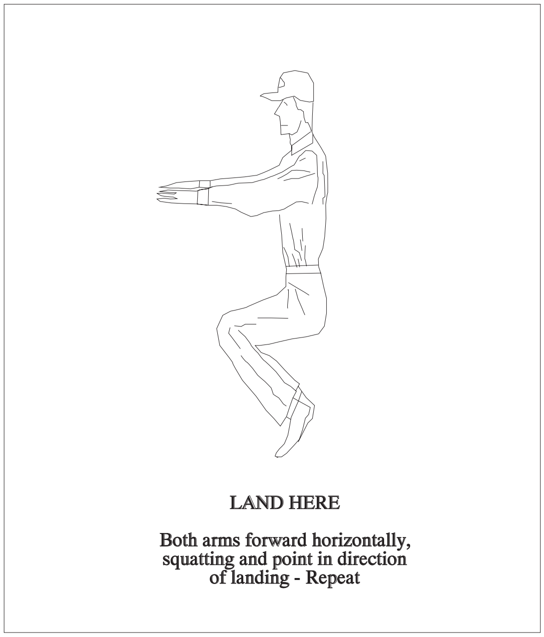


FIG GEN 3.6−11
Negative (Ground)

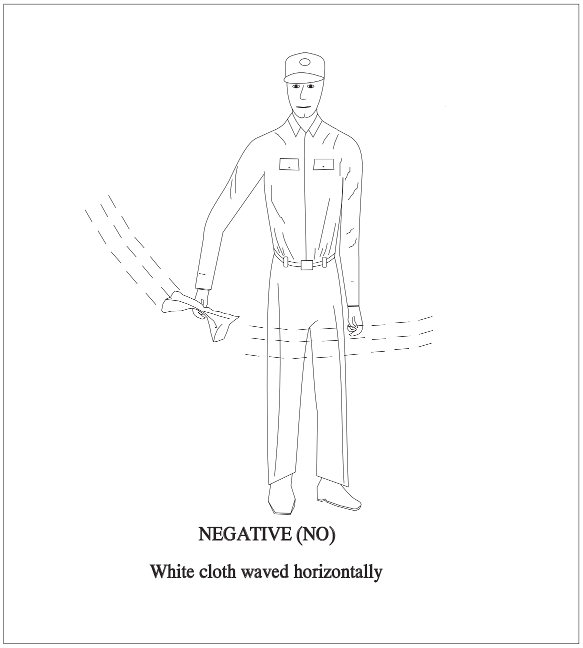


FIG GEN 3.6−12
Affirmative (Ground)

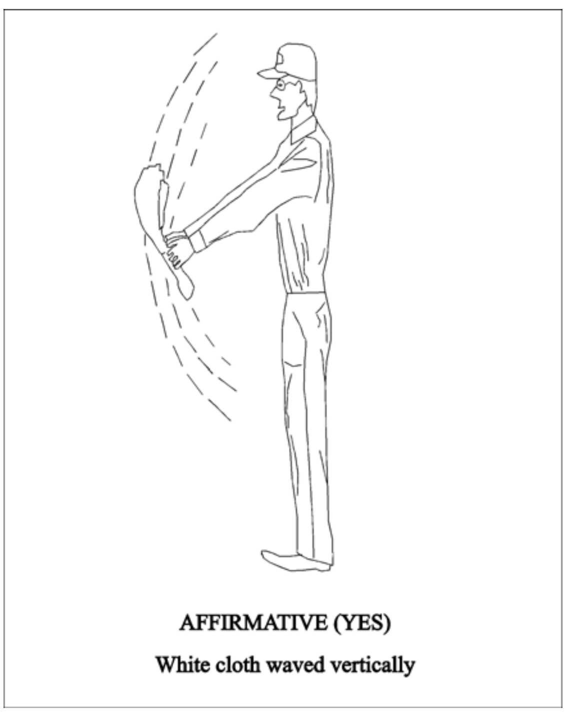


FIG GEN 3.6−13
Pick Us Up

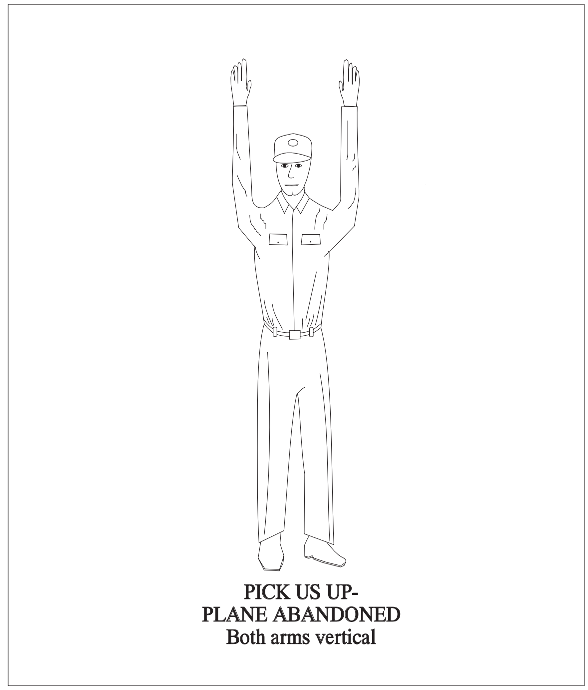


FIG GEN 3.6−14
Affirmative (Aircraft)

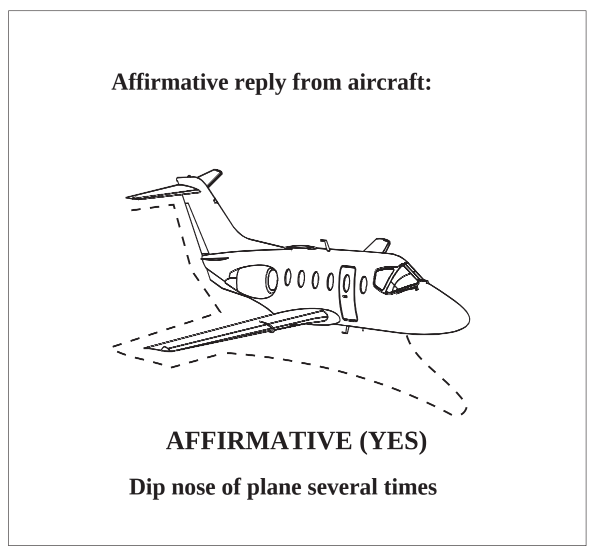


FIG GEN 3.6−15

Negative (Aircraft)

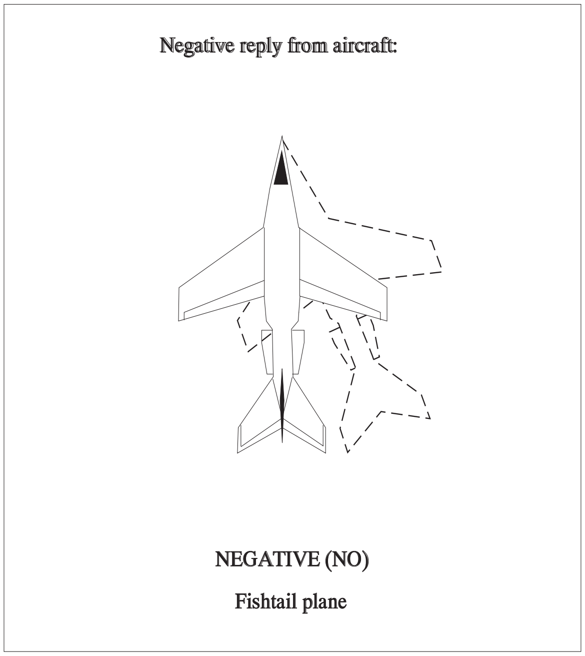


FIG GEN 3.6−16

Message received and understood (Aircraft)

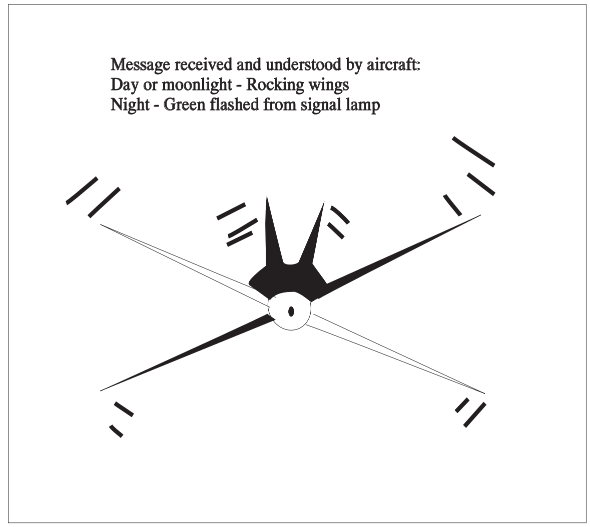
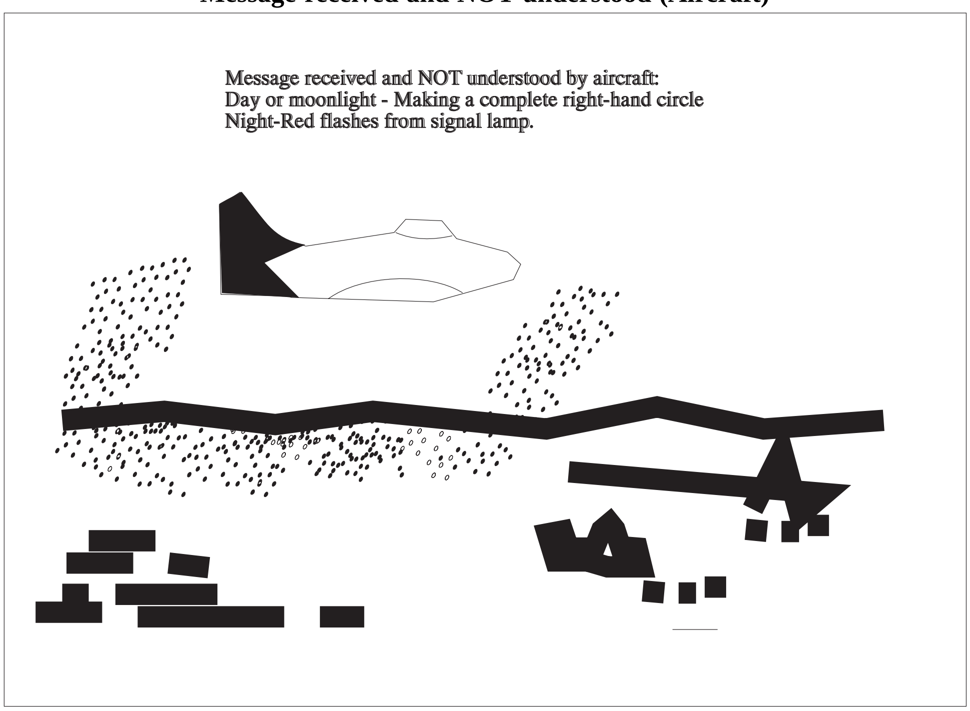


FIG GEN 3.6−17

Message received and NOT understood (Aircraft)



10. Pilot Responsibility and Authority

10.1 The pilot in command of an aircraft is directly responsible for, and is the final authority as to the operation of that aircraft. In an emergency requiring immediate action, the pilot in command may deviate from any rule in Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Part 91, Subpart A, General, and Subpart B, Flight Rules, to the extent required to meet that emergency (14 CFR Section 91.3(b)).

10.2 If the emergency authority of 14 CFR Section 91.3(b) is used to deviate from the provisions of an air traffic control clearance, the pilot in command must notify ATC as soon as possible and obtain an amended clearance (14 CFR Section 91.123(c)).

10.3 Unless deviation is necessary under the emergency authority of 14 CFR Section 91.3, pilots of IFR flights experiencing two−way radio communications failure are expected to adhere to the procedures prescribed under "IFR operations; two−way radio communications failure." (14 CFR Section 91.185)

11. Distress and Urgency Communications

11.1 A pilot who encounters a distress or urgency condition can obtain assistance simply by contacting the air traffic facility or other agency in whose area of responsibility the aircraft is operating, stating the nature of the difficulty, pilot's intentions, and assistance desired. Distress and urgency communications procedures prescribed by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), however, have decided advantages over the informal procedure described above.

11.2 Distress and urgency communications procedures discussed in the following paragraphs relate to the use of air−ground voice communications.

11.3 The initial communication, and if considered necessary, any subsequent transmissions by an aircraft in distress should begin with the signal MAYDAY, preferably repeated three times. The signal PAN−PAN should be used in the same manner for an urgency condition.

11.4 Distress communications have absolute priority over all other communications, and the word MAYDAY commands radio silence on the frequency in use. Urgency communications have priority over all other communications except distress, and the word PAN−PAN warns other stations not to interfere with urgency transmissions.

11.5 Normally, the station addressed will be the air traffic facility or other agency providing air traffic services on the frequency in use at the time. If the pilot is not communicating and receiving services, the station to be called will normally be the air traffic facility or other agency in whose area of responsibility the aircraft is operating on the appropriate assigned frequency. If the station addressed does not respond, or if time or the situation dictates, the distress or urgency message may be broadcast, or a collect call may be used, addressing "Any Station (Tower) (Radio) (Radar)."

11.6 The station addressed should immediately acknowledge a distress or urgency message, provide assistance, coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities, and alert the appropriate search and rescue coordinator if warranted. Responsibility will be transferred to another station only if better handling will result.

11.7 All other stations, aircraft and ground, will continue to listen until it is evident that assistance is being provided. If any station becomes aware that the station being called either has not received a distress or urgency message, or cannot communicate with the aircraft in difficulty, it will attempt to contact the aircraft and provide assistance.

11.8 Although the frequency in use or other frequencies assigned by ATC are preferable, the following emergency frequencies can be used for distress or urgency communications, if necessary or desirable:

11.8.1 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz − Both have a range generally limited to line of sight. 121.5 MHz is guarded by direction finding stations and some military and civil aircraft. 243.0 MHz is guarded by military aircraft. Both 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz are guarded by military towers, most civil towers, flight service stations, and radar facilities. Normally ARTCC emergency frequency capability does not extend to radar coverage limits. If an ARTCC does not respond when called on 121.5 MHz or 243.0 MHz, call the nearest tower or flight service station.

11.8.2 2182 kHz **–** The range is generally less than 300 miles for the average aircraft installation. It can be used to request assistance from stations in the maritime service. 2182 kHz is guarded by major radio stations serving Coast Guard Rescue Coordination Centers, and Coast Guard units along the sea coasts of the U.S. and shores of the Great Lakes. The call "Coast Guard" will alert all Coast Guard Radio Stations within range. 2182 kHz is also guarded by most commercial coast stations and some ships and boats.

12. Emergency Condition − Request Assistance Immediately

12.1 Pilots do not hesitate to declare an emergency when they are faced with distress conditions such as fire, mechanical failure, or structural damage. However, some are reluctant to report an urgency condition when they encounter situations which may not be immediately perilous, but are potentially catastrophic. An aircraft is in at least an urgency condition the moment the pilot becomes doubtful about position, fuel endurance, weather, or any other condition that could adversely affect flight safety. This is the time to ask for help, not after the situation has developed into a distress condition.

12.2 Pilots who become apprehensive for their safety for any reason should request assistance immediately. Ready and willing help is available in the form of radio, radar, direction finding stations and other aircraft. Delay has caused accidents and cost lives. Safety is not a luxury. Take action.

13. Obtaining Emergency Assistance

13.1 A pilot in any distress or urgency condition should immediately take the following action, not necessarily in the order listed, to obtain assistance:

13.1.1 Climb, if possible, for improved communications and better radar and direction finding detection. However, it must be understood that unauthorized climb or descent under IFR conditions within CONTROLLED AIRSPACE is prohibited, except as permitted by 14 CFR Section 91.3(b).

13.1.2 If equipped with a radar beacon transponder (civil) or IFF/SIF (military):

13.1.2.1 Continue squawking assigned Mode A/3 discrete code/VFR code and Mode C altitude encoding when in radio contact with an air traffic facility or other agency providing air traffic services, unless instructed to do otherwise.

13.1.2.2 If unable to immediately establish communications with an air traffic facility/agency, squawk Mode A/3, Code 7700/Emergency and Mode C.

13.1.2.3 Transmit a distress or urgency message consisting of as many as necessary of the following elements, preferably in the order listed:

a) If distress, MAYDAY, MAYDAY, MAYDAY; if urgency, PAN−PAN, PAN−PAN, PAN−PAN.

b) Name of station addressed.

c) Aircraft identification and type.

d) Nature of distress or urgency.

e) Weather.

f) Pilots intentions and request.

g) Present position, and heading; or if lost, last known position, time, and heading since that position.

h) Altitude or flight level.

i) Fuel remaining in minutes.

j) Number of people on board.

k) Any other useful information.

13.1.3 After establishing radio contact, comply with advice and instructions received. Cooperate. Do not hesitate to ask questions or clarify instructions when you do not understand or if you cannot comply with clearances. Assist the ground station to control communications on the frequency in use. Silence interfering radio stations. Do not change frequency or change to another ground station unless absolutely necessary. If you do, advise the ground station of the new frequency and station name prior to the change, transmitting in the blind if necessary. If two−way communications cannot be established on the frequency, return immediately to the frequency or station where two−way communications last existed.

13.1.4 When in a distress condition with bailout, crash landing, or ditching imminent, take the following additional actions to assist search and rescue units:

13.1.4.1 Time and circumstances permitting, transmit as many as necessary of the message elements in subparagraph 13.1.2.3 and any of the following you think might be helpful:

a) ELT status.

b) Visible landmarks.

c) Aircraft color.

d) Number of persons on board.

e) Emergency equipment on board.

13.1.4.2 Actuate your ELT if the installation permits.

13.1.4.3 For bailout, and for crash landing or ditching if risk of fire is not a consideration, set your radio for continuous transmission.

13.1.4.4 If it becomes necessary to ditch, make every effort to ditch near a surface vessel. If time permits, an FAA facility should be able to get the position of the nearest commercial or Coast Guard vessel from a Coast Guard Rescue Coordination Center.

13.2 After a crash landing unless you have good reason to believe that you will not be located by search aircraft or ground teams, it is best to remain with your aircraft and prepare means for signalling search aircraft.

14. Radar Service for VFR Aircraft in Difficulty

14.1 Radar equipped air traffic control facilities can provide radar assistance and navigation service (vectors) to VFR aircraft in difficulty when the pilot can talk with the controller, and the aircraft is within radar coverage. Pilots should clearly understand that authorization to proceed in accordance with such radar navigational assistance does not constitute authorization for the pilot to violate Federal Aviation Regulations. In effect, assistance is provided on the basis that navigational guidance information is advisory in nature, and the responsibility for flying the aircraft safely remains with the pilot.

14.2 Experience has shown that many pilots who are not qualified for instrument flight cannot maintain control of their aircraft when they encounter clouds or other reduced visibility conditions. In many cases, the controller will not know whether flight into instrument conditions will result from his/her instructions. To avoid possible hazards resulting from being vectored into IFR conditions, a pilot in difficulty should keep the controller advised of the weather conditions in which he/she is operating and the weather along the course ahead, and observe the following:

14.2.1 If a course of action is available which will permit flight and a safe landing in VFR weather conditions, noninstrument rated pilots should choose the VFR condition rather than requesting a vector or approach that will take them into IFR weather conditions; or

14.2.2 If continued flight in VFR conditions is not possible, the noninstrument rated pilot should so advise the controller and indicating the lack of an instrument rating, declare a distress condition.

14.2.3 If the pilot is instrument rated and current, and the aircraft is instrument equipped, the pilot should so indicate by requesting an IFR flight clearance. Assistance will then be provided on the basis that the aircraft can operate safely in IFR weather conditions.

15. Direction Finding Instrument Approach Procedure

15.1 Direction finding (DF) equipment has long been used to locate lost aircraft and to guide aircraft to areas of good weather or to airports; and now at most DF equipped airports, DF instrument approaches may be given to aircraft in emergency.

15.2 Experience has shown that a majority of actual emergencies requiring DF assistance involve pilots with a minimum of flight experience. With this in mind, DF approach procedures provide maximum flight stability in the approach by utilizing small turns, and descents in a wings level attitude. The DF specialist will give the pilot headings to fly and tell the pilot when to begin descent.

15.3 DF instrument approach procedures are for emergency use only and will not be given to IFR weather conditions unless the pilot has declared an emergency.

15.4 To become familiar with the procedures and other benefits of DF, pilots are urged to request practice guidance and approaches in VFR weather conditions. DF specialists welcome the practice and, workload permitting, will honor such requests.

16. Intercept and Escort

16.1 The concept of airborne intercept and escort is based on the SAR aircraft establishing visual and/or electronic contact with an aircraft in difficulty, providing inflight assistance, and escorting it to a safe landing. If bailout, crash landing or ditching becomes necessary, SAR operations can be conducted without delay. For most incidents, particularly those occurring at night and/or during instrument flight conditions, the availability of intercept and escort services will depend on the proximity of SAR units with suitable aircraft on alert for immediate dispatch. In limited circumstances, other aircraft flying in the vicinity of an aircraft in difficulty can provide these services.

16.2 If specifically requested by a pilot in difficulty or if a distress condition is declared, SAR coordinators will take steps to intercept and escort an aircraft. Steps may be initiated for intercept and escort if an urgency condition is declared and unusual circumstances make such action advisable.

16.3 It is the pilot's prerogative to refuse intercept and escort services. Escort services will normally be provided to the nearest adequate airport. Should the pilot receiving escort services continue on to another location after reaching a safe airport, or decide not to divert to the nearest safe airport, the escort aircraft is not obligated to continue and further escort is discretionary. The decision will depend on the circumstances of the individual incident.

17. Visual Emergency Signals

NOTE−
See FIG GEN 3.6−1 through FIG GEN 3.6−17.

18. Ditching Procedures

18.1 In order to select a proper ditching course for an aircraft, a basic knowledge of sea evaluation and other factors involved is required. Selection of the ditching heading may well determine the difference between survival and disaster.
(See FIG GEN 3.6−18, FIG GEN 3.6−19, FIG GEN 3.6−20, and FIG GEN 3.6−21).

18.2 Common Oceanographic Terminology:

18.2.1 Sea. The condition of the surface that is the result of both waves and swells.

18.2.2 Wave (or Chop). The condition of the surface caused by local winds.

18.2.3 Swell. The condition of the surface which has been caused by a distant disturbance.

18.2.4 Swell Face. The side of the swell toward the observer. The backside is the side away from the observer. These definitions apply regardless of the direction of swell movement.

18.2.5 Primary Swell. The swell system having the greatest height from trough to crest.

18.2.6 Secondary Swells. Those swell systems of less height than the primary swell.

18.2.7 Fetch. The distance the waves have been driven by a wind blowing in a constant direction, without obstruction.

18.2.8 Swell Period. The time interval between the passage of two successive crests at the same spot in the water, measured in seconds.

18.2.9 Swell Velocity. The velocity with which the swell advances with relation to a fixed reference point, measured in knots. There is little movement of water in the horizontal direction. Swells move primarily in a vertical motion, similar to the motion observed when shaking out a carpet.

18.2.10 Swell Direction. The direction from which a swell is moving. This direction is not necessarily the result of the wind present at the scene. The swell encountered may be moving into or across the local wind. Swells, once set in motion, tend to maintain their original direction for as long as they continue in deep water, regardless of changes in wind direction.

18.2.11 Swell Height. The height between crest and trough, measured in feet. The vast majority of ocean swells are lower than 12 to 15 feet, and swells over 25 feet are not common at any spot on the oceans. Successive swells may differ considerably in height.

18.3 Swells

18.3.1 It is extremely dangerous to land into the wind without regard to sea conditions. The swell system, or systems, must be taken into consideration.

FIG GEN 3.6−18

Single Swell (15 knot wind)

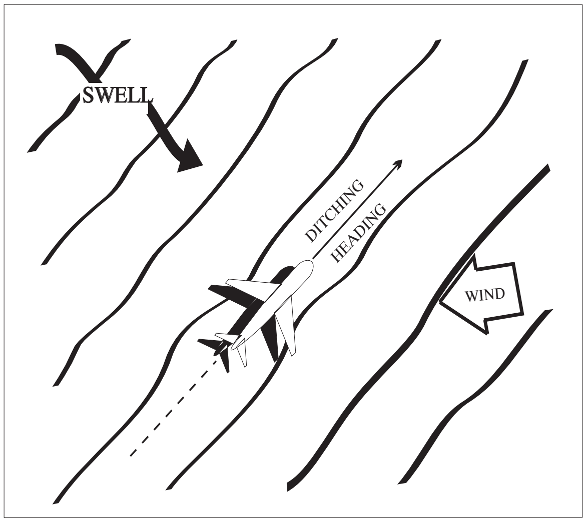


FIG GEN 3.6−19

Double Swell (15 knot wind)

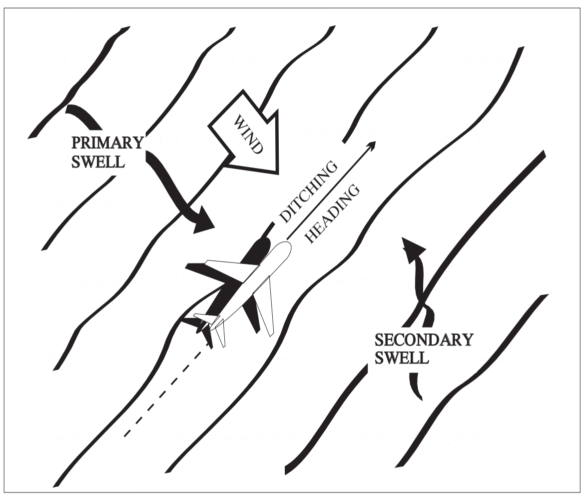


FIG GEN 3.6−20

Double Swell (30 knot wind)

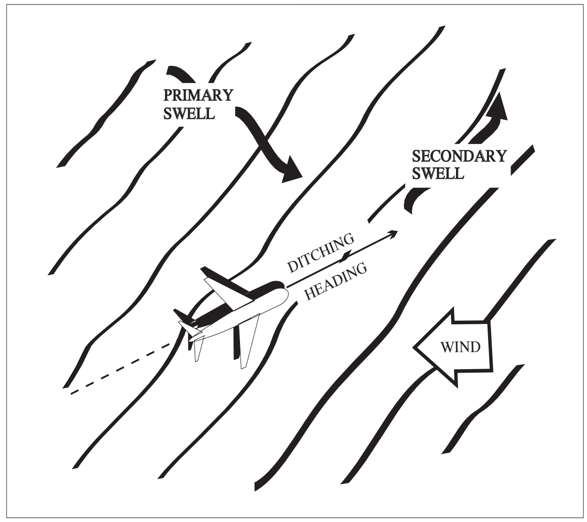
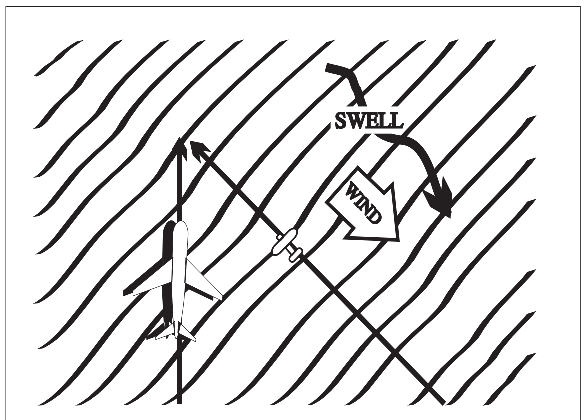


FIG GEN 3.6−21

(50 knot wind)



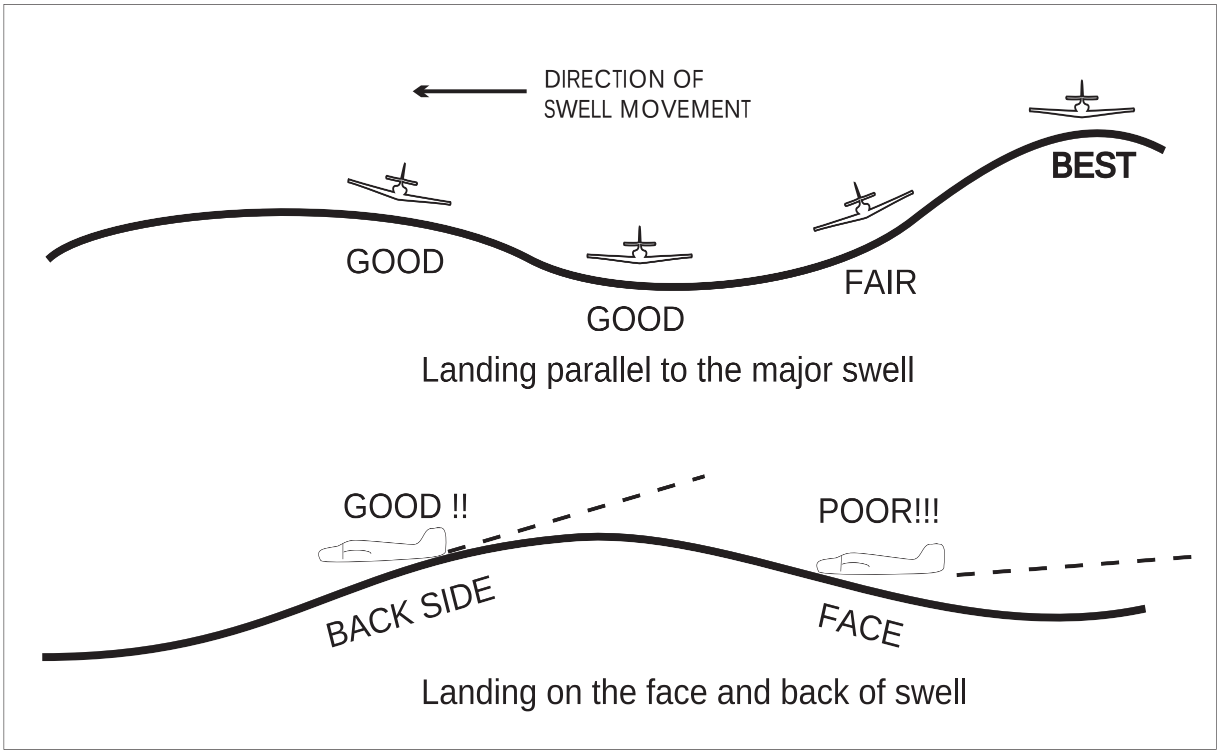
Aircraft with low landing speeds - land into the wind.

Aircraft with high landing speeds - choose compromise heading between wind and swell.

Both - land on back side of swell.

FIG GEN 3.6−22

Wind−Swell−Ditch Heading



18.3.2 In ditching parallel to the swell, it makes little difference whether touchdown is on top of the crest or in the trough. It is preferable, if possible, to land on the top or back side of the swell. After determining which heading (and its reciprocal) will parallel the swell, select the heading with the most into the wind component.

18.3.3 If only one swell system exists, the problem is relatively simple – even with a high, fast system. Unfortunately, most cases involve two or more systems running in different directions. With many systems present, the sea presents a confused appearance. One of the most difficult situations occurs when two swell systems are at right angles. For example, if one system is 8 feet high, and the other 3 feet, a landing parallel to the primary system, and down swell on the secondary system is indicated. If both systems are of equal height, a compromise may be advisable – selecting an intermediate heading at 45 degrees down swell to both systems. When landing down a secondary swell, attempt to touch down on the back side, not on the face of the swell. Remember one axiom **– AVOID THE FACE OF A SWELL.**

18.3.4 If the swell system is formidable, it is considered advisable, in landplanes, to accept more crosswind in order to avoid landing directly into the swell.

18.3.5 The secondary swell system is often from the same direction as the wind. Here, the landing may be made parallel to the primary system, with the wind and secondary system at an angle. There is a choice of two headings paralleling the primary system. One heading is downwind and down the secondary swell; and the other is into the wind and into the secondary swell. The choice of heading will depend on the velocity of the wind versus the velocity and height of the secondary swell.

18.4 Wind

18.4.1 The simplest method of estimating the wind direction and velocity is to examine the wind streaks on the water. These appear as long streaks up and down wind. Some persons may have difficulty determining wind direction after seeing the streaks in the water. Whitecaps fall forward with the wind but are overrun by the waves thus producing the illusion that the foam is sliding backward. Knowing this, and by observing the direction of the streaks, the wind direction is easily determined. Wind velocity can be accurately estimated by noting the appearance of the whitecaps, foam and wind streaks.

18.5 Preditching Preparation

18.5.1 A successful aircraft ditching is dependent on three primary factors. In order of importance they are:

18.5.1.1 Sea conditions and wind.

18.5.1.2 Type of aircraft.

18.5.1.3 Skill and technique of pilot.

18.5.2 The behavior of the aircraft on making contact with the water will vary within wide limits according to the state of the sea. If landed parallel to a single swell system, the behavior of the aircraft may approximate that to be expected on a smooth sea. If landed into a heavy swell or into a confused sea, the deceleration forces may be extremely great − resulting in breaking up of the aircraft. Within certain limits, the pilot is able to minimize these forces by proper sea evaluation and selection of ditching heading.

18.5.3 When on final approach the pilot should look ahead and observe the surface of the sea. There may be shadows and whitecaps − signs of large seas. Shadows and whitecaps close together indicate that the seas are short and rough. Touchdown in these areas is to be avoided. Select and touchdown in any area (only about 500 feet is needed) where the shadows and whitecaps are not so numerous.

18.5.4 Touchdown should be at the lowest speed and rate of descent which permit safe handling and optimum nose up attitude on impact. Once first impact has been made there is often little the pilot can do to control a landplane.

18.6 Ditching

18.6.1 Once preditching preparations are completed, the pilot should turn to the ditching heading and commence letdown. The aircraft should be flown low over the water, and slowed down until ten knots or so above stall. At this point, additional power should be used to overcome the increased drag caused by the noseup attitude. When a smooth stretch of water appears ahead, cut power, and touchdown at the best recommended speed as fully stalled as possible. By cutting power when approaching a relatively smooth area, the pilot will prevent over shooting and will touchdown with less chance of planing off into a second uncontrolled landing. Most experienced seaplane pilots prefer to make contact with the water in a semi−stalled attitude, cutting power as the tail makes contact. This technique eliminates the chance of misjudging altitude with a resultant heavy drop in a fully stalled condition. Care must be taken not to drop in a fully stalled condition. Care must be taken not to drop the aircraft from too high altitude, or to balloon due to excessive speed. The altitude above water depends on the aircraft. Over glassy smooth water, or at night without sufficient light, it is very easy for even the most experienced pilots to misjudge altitude by 50 feet or more. Under such conditions, carry enough power to maintain 9● to 12● noseup attitude, and 10● to 20● over stalling speed until contact is made with the water. The proper use of power on the approach is of great importance. If power is available on one side only, a little power should be used to flatten the approach; however, the engine should not be used to such an extent that the aircraft cannot be turned against the good engines right down to the stall with a margin of rudder movement available. When near the stall, sudden application of excessive unbalanced power may result in loss of directional control. If power is available on one side only, a slightly higher than normal glide approach speed should be used. This will insure good control and some margin of speed after leveling off without excessive use of power. The use of power in ditching is so important that when it is certain that the coast cannot be reached, the pilot should, if possible, ditch before fuel is exhausted. The use of power in a night or instrument ditching is far more essential than under daylight contact conditions.

18.6.2 If no power is available, a greater than normal approach speed should be used down to the flare−out. This speed margin will allow the glide to be broken early and more gradually, thereby giving the pilot time and distance to feel for the surface − decreasing the possibility of stalling high or flying into the water. When landing parallel to a swell system, little difference is noted between landing on top of a crest or in the trough. If the wings of the aircraft are trimmed to the surface of the sea rather than the horizon, there is little need to worry about a wing hitting a swell crest. The actual slope of a swell is very gradual. If forced to land into a swell, touchdown should be made just after passage of the crest. If contact is made on the face of the swell, the aircraft may be swamped or thrown violently into the air, dropping heavily into the next swell. If control surfaces remain intact, the pilot should attempt to maintain the proper nose attitude by rapid and positive use of the controls.

18.7 After Touchdown

18.7.1 In most cases drift caused by crosswind can be ignored; the forces acting on the aircraft after touchdown are of such magnitude that drift will be only a secondary consideration. If the aircraft is under good control, the "crab" may be kicked out with rudder just prior to touchdown. This is more important with high wing aircraft, for they are laterally unstable on the water in a crosswind, and may roll to the side in ditching.

NOTE−
This information has been extracted from the publication "Aircraft Emergency Procedures Over Water."

19. Fuel Dumping

19.1 Should it become necessary to dump fuel, the pilot should immediately advise ATC. Upon receipt of advice that an aircraft will dump fuel, ATC will broadcast or cause to be broadcast immediately and every 3 minutes thereafter on appropriate ATC, FSS, and airline company radio frequencies the following:

EXAMPLE−
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT−FUEL DUMPING IN PROGRESS−OVER (location) AT (altitude) BY (type aircraft) (flight direction).

19.2 Upon receipt of such a broadcast, pilots of aircraft affected, which are not on IFR flight plans or special VFR clearances, should clear the area specified in the advisory. Aircraft on IFR flight plans or special VFR clearances will be provided specific separation by ATC. At the termination of the fuel dumping operation, pilots should advise ATC. Upon receipt of such information, ATC will issue, on appropriate frequencies, the following:

EXAMPLE−
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT−FUEL DUMPING BY− (type aircraft) TERMINATED.

20. Special Emergency (Air Piracy)

20.1 A special emergency is a condition of air piracy, or other hostile act by a person(s) aboard an aircraft, which threatens the safety of the aircraft or its passengers.

20.2 The pilot of an aircraft reporting a special emergency condition should:

20.2.1 If circumstances permit, apply distress or urgency radio − telephony procedures. Include the details of the special emergency.

20.2.2 If circumstances do not permit the use of prescribed distress or urgency procedures, transmit:

20.2.2.1 On the air−ground frequency in use at the time.

20.2.2.2 As many as possible of the following elements spoken distinctly and in the following order.

a) Name of the station addressed (time and circumstances permitting).

b) The identification of the aircraft and present position.

c) The nature of the special emergency condition and pilot intentions (circumstances permitting).

d) If unable to provide this information, use code words and/or transponder setting for indicated meanings as follows:

Spoken Words
TRANSPONDER SEVEN FIVE ZERO ZERO
Meaning
Am being hijacked/forced to a new destination
Transponder Setting
Mode 3/A, Code 7500

NOTE−
Code 7500 will never be assigned by ATC without prior notification from the pilot that the aircraft is being subjected to unlawful interference. The pilot should refuse the assignment of this code in any other situation and inform the controller accordingly. Code 7500 will trigger the special emergency indicator in all radar ATC facilities.

20.3 Air traffic controllers will acknowledge and confirm receipt of transponder Code 7500 by asking the pilot to verify it. If the aircraft is not being subjected to unlawful interference, the pilot should respond to the query by broadcasting in the clear that the aircraft is not being subjected to unlawful interference. Upon receipt of this information, the controller will request the pilot to verify the code selection depicted in the code selector windows in the transponder control panel and change the code to the appropriate setting. If the pilot replies in the affirmative or does not reply, the controller will not ask further questions but will flight follow, respond to pilot requests, and notify appropriate authorities.

20.4 If it is possible to do so without jeopardizing the safety of the flight, the pilot of a hijacked U.S. passenger aircraft, after departing from the cleared routing over which the aircraft was operating, will attempt to do one or more of the following things insofar as circumstances may permit:

20.4.1 Maintain a true airspeed of no more than 400 knots and, preferably, an altitude of between 10,000 and 25,000 feet.

20.4.2 Fly a course toward the destination which the hijacker has announced.

20.5 If these procedures result in either radio contact or air intercept, the pilot will attempt to comply with any instructions received which may direct him/her to an appropriate landing field.

21. FAA K−9 Explosives Detection Team Program

21.1 The FAA's Office of Civil Aviation Security Operations manages the FAA K−9 Explosives Detection Team Program, which was established in 1972. Through a unique agreement with law enforcement agencies and airport authorities, the FAA has strategically placed FAA−certified K−9 teams (a team is one handler and one dog) at airports throughout the country. If a bomb threat is received while an aircraft is in flight, the aircraft can be directed to an airport with this capability.

21.2 The FAA provides initial and refresher training for all handlers, provides single purpose explosive detector dogs, and requires that each team is annually evaluated in five areas for FAA certification: aircraft (wide body and narrow body), vehicles, terminal, freight, (cargo), and luggage. If you desire this service, notify your company or an FAA air traffic control facility.

21.3 FAA Sponsored Explosives Detection Dog/Handler Team Locations

TBL GEN 3.6−5

Airport Symbol	Location
ATL	Atlanta, Georgia
BHM	Birmingham, Alabama
BOS	Boston, Massachusetts
BUF	Buffalo, New York
CLT	Charlotte, North Carolina
ORD	Chicago, Illinois
CVG	Cincinnati, Ohio
DFW	Dallas, Texas
DEN	Denver, Colorado
DTW	Detroit, Michigan
IAH	Houston, Texas
JAX	Jacksonville, Florida
MCI	Kansas City, Missouri
LAX	Los Angeles, California
MEM	Memphis, Tennessee
MIA	Miami, Florida
MKE	Milwaukee, Wisconsin
MSY	New Orleans, Louisiana
MCO	Orlando, Florida
PHX	Phoenix, Arizona
PIT	Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania
PDX	Portland, Oregon
SLC	Salt Lake City, Utah
SFO	San Francisco, California
SJU	San Juan, Puerto Rico
SEA	Seattle, Washington
STL	St. Louis, Missouri
TUS	Tucson, Arizona
TUL	Tulsa, Oklahoma

21.4 If due to weather or other considerations an aircraft with a suspected hidden explosive problem were to land or intended to land at an airport other than those listed above, it is recommended they call the FAA's Washington Operations Center (telephone 202−267−3333, if appropriate) or have an air traffic facility with which you can communicate contact the above center requesting assistance.

GEN 3.7 Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting Communications

1. Discrete Emergency Frequency

1.1 Direct contact between an emergency aircraft flight crew, Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting Incident Commander (ARFF IC), and the Airport Traffic Control Tower (ATCT) is possible on an aeronautical radio frequency (Discrete Emergency Frequency [DEF]) designated by Air Traffic Control (ATC) from the operational frequencies assigned to that facility.

1.2 Emergency aircraft at airports without an ATCT (or when the ATCT is closed) may contact the ARFF IC (if ARFF service is provided) on the Common Traffic Advisory Frequency **(CTAF)** published for the airport or the civil emergency frequency **121.5 MHz.**

2. Radio Call Signs

Preferred radio call sign for the ARFF IC is "(location/facility) Command" when communicating with the flight crew and the FAA ATCT.

EXAMPLE− *LAX Command.*
Washington Command.

3. ARFF Emergency Hand Signals

In the event that electronic communications cannot be maintained between the ARFF IC and the flight crew, standard emergency hand signals as depicted in FIG GEN 3.7−1 through FIG GEN 3.7−3 should be used. These hand signals should be known and understood by all cockpit and cabin aircrew, and all ARFF firefighters.

FIG GEN 3.7−1

<u>RECOMMEND EVACUATION</u> - Evacuation recommended based on ARFF IC's assessment of external situation.

Arm extended from body, and held horizontal with hand upraised at eve level. Execute beckoning arm motion angled backward. Nonbeckoning arm held against body.

NIGHT - same with wands.

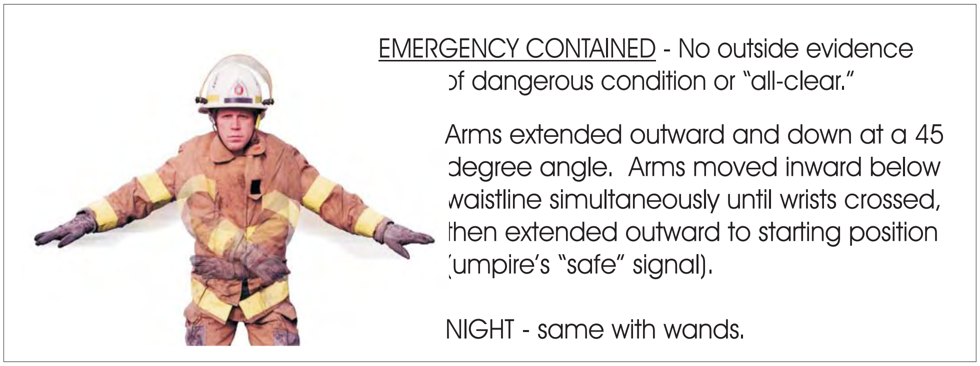
FIG GEN 3.7−2

<u>RECOMMEND STOP</u> - Recommend evacuation in progress be halted. Stop aircraft movement or other activity in progress.

Arms in front of head -
Crossed at wrists.

NIGHT - same with wands.

FIG GEN 3.7−3


EMERGENCY CONTAINED - No outside evidence of dangerous condition or "all-clear."
Arms extended outward and down at a 45 degree angle. Arms moved inward below waistline simultaneously until wrists crossed, then extended outward to starting position (umpire's "safe" signal).
NIGHT - same with wands.

GEN 4. CHARGES FOR AERODROMES/HELIPORTS AND AIR NAVIGATION SERVICES

GEN 4.1 Fees and Charges

1. General

1.1 Charges for services and facilities vary from aerodrome to aerodrome, and information concerning such charges may be obtained at the aerodromes. Unless alternative arrangements have been made, all charges for the use of the aerodrome, such as landing fees, passenger service charges, cargo charges, storage charges, and the like, are payable on demand or before the aircraft departs the aerodrome. All such charges are established by and payable to the various administrative authorities of the various aerodromes.

1.2 A private aircraft will be charged a processing fee of $25 once every calendar year. This will be charged the first time the aircraft arrives from a foreign place in the calender year or may be paid in advance. This fee is charged to the aircraft, not the pilot, and the receipt should be kept with the aircraft.

1.3 Commercial aircraft operators will be charged a processing fee of $5 per paying passenger for each arrival from foreign to the U.S. This fee will not be charged for passengers arriving from Canada, Mexico, and certain nearby Caribbean countries.

2. Charges for Inspection Services

2.1 Generally speaking, free service is provided at airports during regular business hours (usually 8 a.m. to 5 p.m.), Monday through Saturday, and from 8 a.m. to 5 p.m. on Sundays and national holidays. However, tours of duty at airports are based on the need for services and are altered at some ports to coincide with schedule changes and peak workloads.

2.2 Overtime charges may be imposed, in certain cases, for Immigration and Naturalization Services and Public Health Service quarantine inspection of aircraft whose operations are not covered by published schedules. Information concerning such charges may be obtained from the Immigration and Naturalization Office and the Public Health Service Medical Officer in Charge at, or nearest, the intended place of landing.

3. Penalties for Violations

3.1 Since the law provides for substantial penalties for violations of the Customs regulations, aircraft operators and pilots should make every effort to comply with them.

3.2 A $5,000 penalty will be assessed for common violations such as:

3.2.1 Failure to report arrival.

3.2.2 Failure to obtain landing rights.

3.2.3 Failure to provide advance notice of arrival.

3.2.4 Failure to provide penetration report on southern border.

3.2.5 Departing without permission or discharging passengers or cargo without permission.

REFERENCE−
19 CFR 122.161.

NOTE−
1. *Importation of contraband, including agricultural materials, or undeclared merchandise can result in penalty action and seizure of aircraft, which varies according to the nature of the violation and pertinent provision of law.*

2. *The above penalties are double to $10,000 for a second offense. Seizure of aircraft may occur at any time depending upon the circumstances behind the violation.*

3. *If a penalty is incurred, application may be made to the customs officer in charge for a reduction in amount or cancellation, giving the grounds upon which relief is believed to be justified. If the operator or pilot desires to petition further for relief of the penalty, he/she may appeal to the appropriate district Director of Customs. If still further review of the penalty is desired, written appeal may be made to the proper regional Commissioner of Customs and, in some cases, to Customs Headquarters.*

3.3 Any person violating any provision of the Public Health Service regulations shall be subject to a fine of not more than $1,000 or to imprisonment for not more than 1 year, or both, as provided in section 368 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 271).

GEN 4.2 Air Navigation Facility Charges

The Federal Aviation Administration does not charge for the use of Federal air navigation facilities or telecommunications services.

INDEX

[References are to page numbers]

A

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

F

G

H

I

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

W